THE HISTORY OF THE LIFE OF *PETER I.* EMPEROR of *RUSSIA.*

In THREE VOLUMES.

By JOHN MOTTLEY, *Esq;*

LONDON:

Printed for J. READ, in WHITE-FRYARS.

M.DCC.XXXIX.

THE

HISTORY

OF THE

LIFE

MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

7 Fg



To His GRACE THE DUKE of *LEEDS*.

My Lord,

I HAVE many Reaſons for begging your Grace's Patronage to this Hiſtory of the Life of Peter the *Great*; but when

DEDICATION.

I am to addreſs my ſelf to a Perſon of your GRACE's Character, it will, I fear, be a difficult Task to form a Style, that may not ſeem either deficient of that Reſpect which is ſo much your Due, or Savour of what I account the loweſt of all Vices, I mean Flattery; though there can hardly be any Encomiums made upon the Duke of LEEDS, that will be thought Flattery by any but your ſelf; but, my Lord, that Modeſty which, among a Crowd of other Virtues, makes your GRACE ſhun the Applauſes of the World, will, even in Spite of your ſelf, oblige Mankind ſtill the more loudly to proclaim their Admiration of him, who

is

is more desirous of being *Good* and *Great*, than of being told how much he is thought so.

The History of PETER the *Great*, seems naturally to claim the Protection of your GRACE, whose Grandfather, of all our Nobility, was the Person that this mighty Emperor, when in *England*, expressed the greatest Esteem and Friendship for.

I dare say, my Lord, I may venture to affirm, that never any young Nobleman, at his first Appearance in the World, gave greater Expectations than your GRACE does at this Time of doing Honour to himself and Country;

DEDICATION.

and therefore, by taking this Liberty of prefixing your GRACE'S *Name* to this Work, I cannot be without Hopes of preſerving from Oblivion *That* of,

My Lord,

Your Grace's

moſt obliged

and moſt obedient

humble Servant,

JOHN MOTTLEY.

CONTENTS

OF THE

FIRST VOLUME.

BOOK I.

A *Short Account of the Country of* Muſcovy *in General. The Death of* Alexis Michaelowitz, *the Czar* Peter's *Father. The Death of his eldeſt Brother* Theodore. *A Relation of the Rebellion raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia, *in Favour of her Brother* John. John *is proclaimed Czar, with his younger Brother* Peter. *A ſecond Rebellion, raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia; *and the End of her Regency.*

BOOK II.

The Riſe and Character of General Le Fort. *The Riſe and Character of Prince* Menzikoff. *A Deſcription of* Siberia. *The Siege of* Azoph. *The Death of the Czar* John. Peter *becomes ſole Monarch of* Ruſſia.

BOOK III.

The Czar takes Azoph. *Builds a Fleet. Determines to Travel. A Conſpiracy againſt him; happily diſcovered. His Journey to* Holland *and* England. *Another Conſpiracy againſt him, while he is abroad. His Return to* Moſcow. *Puniſhes the Rebels. Settles his Army and Navy. Inſtitutes the Order of* St. Andrew. *Declares War with* Sweden. *An Account of the* Muſcovite *Religion, Ceremonies, and Superſtitions. The Czar reforms the Abuſes in his Revenues.*

BOOK IV.

The Siege and Battle of Narva. *The* Muſcovites *Beards ſhaved, by the Czar's Order. Regulations in the Dreſs,*

Dreſs, Equipages, and ſeveral Cuſtoms of the Muſcovites. *An Interview between the Czar and King* Auguſtus. *The Battle of* Cliſſaw. *A falſe Rumour of the King of* Sweden's *Death of great Service to* Auguſtus.

BOOK V.

The Swedes *beaten in* Livonia. *The Czar takes* Nottebourg *and* Mariembourg. *The Birth and Riſe of the Empreſs* Catharine. *The Czar's publick Entry into* Moſcow. *Builds* Petersburgh. Auguſtus *King of* Poland *depoſed. The Czar's Letter to the Primate and Senators of the Republick of* Poland *on that Account. He takes* Narva. *Builds* Cronſlot. *The Battle of* Gemaurthoff. *The Czar's Manifeſto upon his entering* Poland. *The* Swedes *make two fruitleſs Attempts on* Petersburgh *and* Cronſlot. *The Czar ſubdues all the Provinces of* Courland *and* Lithuania.

BOOK VI.

King Auguſtus *comes to* Grodno, *meets the Czar, Inſtitutes the Order of the White-Eagle. The Czar made a Colonel*

Colonel in his own Army. Leaves Grodno. Patkul *arreſted by Order of* Auguſtus *at* Dreſden. *The Battle of* Fravenſtad. Charles XII. *enters* Saxony. *The Treaty of* Alt-Ranſtadt. *The Battle of* Caliſh. *The Story of the unfortunate* Patkul. *An Aſſembly of the Poliſh Nobility at* Leopold. *The Czar writes to ſeveral Potentates complaining of the Behaviour of* Auguſtus. *The Aſſembly of* Lublin. Staniſlaus *comes into* Poland. *The Action of* Holowzin. *The King of* Sweden *marches into the* Ukrain. *The Battle of* Lezno. *The Revolt and Sentence of* Mazeppa. *The Czar's Ambaſſador arreſted in* London. *Proceeding on that Account. The Siege of* Pultowa. *The Deciſive Battle fought near that Place. The King of* Sweden's *Flight to* Bender *in* Turky.

A

LIST

OF THE

NAMES

OF THE

SUBSCRIBERS.



HIS Royal Highneſs the Prince of WALES.

Her Royal Highneſs the Princeſs of WALES.

His Royal Highneſs the DUKE.

Thoſe

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

*Thoſe marked thus * have ſubſcribed for Royal Paper.*

A

**HIS Grace the Duke of* Argyll.
His Grace the Duke of Atholl.
His Grace the Duke of Ancaſter.
The Moſt Hon. the Marquiſs of Annandale.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Albemarle.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Abercorne.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Ancrum.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Arran.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Abergavenny.
The Hon. Richard Arundel, *Eſq;*
Sir Robert Abdy, *Bart.*
Sir John Aſtley, *Bart.*
Brigadier-General Armſtrong.
John Abery *of* Reading, *Eſq;*
Thomas Adams, *Eſq;*
William Aiſlabie, *Eſq;*
Richard Aldworth, *Eſq;*
The Rev. Mr. Allen *of* Lambeth.
Mr. Thomas Allen.
Joſeph Andrews, *Eſq;*
Henry Archer, *Eſq;*
Thomas Archer, *Eſq; of* Whitehall.
Mr. John Archer.
Charles Areskine, *Eſq;*
Richard Arnold, *Eſq;*
Mr. William Arnold. *Two Sets.*
Arthur Arſcot, *Eſq;*
Thomas Aſhby, *Eſq;*
* Joſeph Wyndham Aſhe, *Eſq; Two Sets.*
Robert Aſhton, *Eſq;*
The Rev. Dr. Aſtry, *Treaſurer of St.* Paul's.
Mr. Samuel Atkins.
Mrs. Atkins.
Mr. Auſtin.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

B

His Grace the Duke of Bedford.
* *Her Grace the Dutcheſs of* Buckingham.
* *The Right Hon. the Earl of* Burlington.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Berkeley.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Bute.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Viſcount Bateman.
* *The Rt. Hon. the Lord* Bruce.
The Right Hon. the Lord Byron.
Sir Roger Burgoyne, *Bart.*
Sir Roger Bradſhaigh, *Bart.*
Sir John Buckworth, *Bart.*
Sir William Billers, *Alderman.*
The Rev. Mr. Barton, *Rector of St.* Andrew's, Holborn.
The Rev. Dr. Bland, *Dean of* Durham. *Three Sets.*
Joſhua Baker, *Eſq;*
John Bance, *Eſq;*
Henry Banks, *Eſq;*
Joſeph Banks, *Eſq;*
Henry Barker, *Eſq;*
Theodore Barlow, *Eſq;*
Mr. Robert Barnes.
James Bateman, *Eſq;*
Julines Beckford, *Eſq;*
Stephen Beckingham, *Eſq;*
Mr. Richard Bennet.
Mr. Reginald Benſon.
Edward Benton, *Eſq;*
William Berners, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Berry.
Thomas Beſley, *Eſq; of* Norfolk-Street, *Two Sets.*
William Betts, *Eſq;*
Mr. Charles Betts.
Mr. George Bickham, *jun.*

Nathaniel

Nathaniel Blackerby, *Esq;*
Walter Blacket, *Esq;*
Dr. Blinman, *Physician to the late* Czar.
Mr. William Blizzard, *of* Lambeth, *Surgeon.*
* John Bonnell, *Esq;*
Daniel Boone, *Esq;*
John Bosworth, *Esq; Chamberlain of the City of* London.
George Bowes, *Esq;*
Elerker Bradshaw, *Esq;*
Thomas Bramston, *Esq;*
John Bridges, *Esq;*
Henry Bromley, *Esq;*
James Brooke, *Esq; one of the Sheriffs of* London *and* Middlesex.
John Browne, *Esq; of* Lincoln's-Inn.
William Brown, *Esq; of the* Middle-Temple.
Mr. Charles Brown. *Two Sets.*
Mr. John Budd, *of the War Office, Two Sets.*
Thomas Budgen, *Esq;*
Jasper Bull, *Esq;*
Edward Bulstrode, *Esq;*
Josiah Burchett, *Esq; of the* Admiralty-Office.
Mr. Charles Burd, *of* Symonds-Inn.
Thomas Burgoyne, *Esq;*
Peter Burrel, *Esq;*
Mr. William Burroughs.
Mr. John Burrough *of* Chelsea.
Mr. Burton.
John Butler, *Esq;*

C

The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Chesterfield.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Clarendon *and* Rochester.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Cardigan.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Cholmondeley.
The Right Hon. the Lord Carteret.

The

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

The Rt. Hon. the Lord Craven.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Caſtlemain.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Carpenter.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Charles Cavendiſh.
The Right Hon. the Lord Chief Baron Comyns.
The Hon. Colonel Cholmondeley.
The Hon. John Chicheſter, *Eſq;*
Major-General Churchill.
Brigadier-General Cornewall.
Brigadier-General James Campbell.
Sir Robert Salusbury Cotton, *Bart.*
* *Sir* William Courtenay, *Bart.*
Sir Nathaniel Curzon, *Bart.*
Sir John Chicheſter, *Bart.*
Sir William Carew, *Bart.*
Sir John Croſſe, *Bart.*
Sir George Cooke.
Sir George Caſwall.
Sir George Champion, *Alderman.*
Sir Robert Cater, *Alderman.*
Thomas Carew, *Eſq;*
Charles Carkeſſe, *Eſq; of the Cuſtom Houſe.*
John Carr, *Eſq; of the* Stamp-Office.
Mrs. Carr.
Mr. Carter.
Thomas Cartwright, *of* Ayno, *Eſq;*
Mr. Thomas Carver.
Peter Champion, *Eſq;*
Richard Chandler, *Eſq; one of the Commiſſioners of the Cuſtoms.*
Anthony Chute, *Eſq;*
* Francis Chute, *Eſq; of* Lincoln's-Inn.
William Cheſelden, *Eſq; of* Chelſea-College.
Mrs. Colſton, *of* Bedford-Row.
Colonel Conyngham.
Thomas Cooke, *Eſq;*
Mrs. Cooke.

Mr.

Mr. Charles Cook.
Mr. George Copland.
Thomas Coſter, *Eſq;*
John Couraud, *Eſq; Under Secretary of State.*
Kelland Courtenay, *Eſq;*
Henry Courtenay, *Eſq;*
Raphael Courteville, *Eſq; Two Sets.*
Mr. James Couſins, *of the* Inner-Temple.
Mr. John Couzens.
Mr. Richard Cox.
Mr. John Crawley, *of* Glouceſter.
Richard Crowle, *Eſq; of the* Inner-Temple.
Ambroſe Crowley, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Crump.

D.

His Grace the Lord Arch-Biſhop of Dublin.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Derby.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Dunkerron.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Dillon.
The Right Hon. the Lady Ducie.
The Right Hon. Sir Conyers Darcy, *Knight of the* Bath.
The Hon. William Dalrymple, *Eſq;*
The Hon. John Dawney, *Eſq;*
Sir Jermyn Davers, *Bart.*
Sir James Daſhwood, *Bart.*
Sir Francis Daſhwood, *Bart.*
The Rev. Dr. Denne, *Archdeacon of* Rocheſter.
Mr. Dalling, *of* Vauxhall.
Joſeph Damer, *Eſq;*
Richard Dawſon, *Eſq; of* Vauxhall.
Mr. William Daye.
Simon Degge, *Eſq;*
Peter Delme, *Eſq;*
Thomas Deniſon, *Eſq; of* Lincoln-Inn

Mr.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. John Dew.
Mr. William Dicey, *Printer.*
James Douglas, *Esq;*
Mr. Dowse.
Mr. Draper.
Mr. Andrew Drummond, *Banker at* Charing-Cross.
Thomas Lee Dummer, *Esq;*
Mr. Thomas Dummer.
Thomas Duncombe, *Esq;*
Mr. Dutton.

E.

The Right Hon. the Earl of Essex.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Effingham.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Egmont.
The Hon. James Erskine *Esq;*
The Hon. George Evans, *Esq;*
Lieut. General Evans, *Governor of* Chelsea-College.
Sir John Evelyn, *Bart.*
Sir Richard Ellys, *Bart.*
Sir John Eyles, *Bart.*
Sir Joseph Eyles.
John Eaton, *Esq;*
James Eckersall, *Esq;*
* *Mrs.* Mary Edwards, *of* Kensington.
John Ellys, *Esq;*
John Essington, *Esq;*
Mr. Everard.
Edward Eyre, *Esq; of* Chelsea-College.

F

The Rt. Hon. the Lord Viscount Fauconberg.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viscount Falkland.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viscount Fitz-Williams.
The Right Hon. the Lord Foley.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

The Right Hon. the Lord Charles Fitzroy.
The Hon. Charles Fane, *Eſq;*
The Hon. Mr. Juſtice Forteſcue Aland.
The Hon. Gilbert Fleming, *Eſq; Lieutenant-General of the* Leward-Iſlands.
Sir Cordell Firebrace, *Bart.*
Sir John Frederick, *Bart.*
Chriſtopher Fawcet, *Eſq;*
Mr. Peter Fenoulhet, *of the* Exciſe-Office.
Robert Fenwick, *Eſq;*
Thomas Fiſher, *Eſq;*
Auſtin Fitzgerald, *Eſq;*
* Charles Fletewood, *Eſq;*
Colonel John Folliott.
William Foreſter, *Eſq;*
Arthur Forſter, *Eſq; Six Sets.*
Mrs. Forſter.
Mr. Anthony Forſter. *Two Sets.*
Mr. William Forſter.
* Thomas Fountayne, *Eſq;*
Francis Forcer, *Eſq;*
Mr. Charles Fowler.
George Fox, *Eſq;*
* Henry Fox, *Eſq;*
Stephen Fox, *Eſq;*
Mr. Richard Franklin, *Bookſeller.*
Aaron Franks, *Eſq;*
Thomas Frederick, *Eſq;*
Colonel Fuller.
Mr. Samuel Fuller.
Richard Fydell, *Eſq;*

G.

His Grace the Duke of Grafton.
The Moſt Hon. the Marquiſs of Graham.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Grantham.

The

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

The Right Hon. the Earl of Godolphin.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Viſcount Grimſton.
The Right Hon. the Lord Gower.
The Right Hon. the Lord Grey.
The Right Hon. the Lady Elizabeth Germain.
* *His Excellency Don* Thomas Geraldino, *Envoy Extraordinary from the King of* Spain.
The Hon. William Leveſon Gower, *Eſq;*
* *Lieutenant-General* Gore.
Sir John Guiſe, *Bart.*
Sir Robert Groſvenor, *Bart.*
Sir James Grant, *Bart.*
Sir Robert Godſchall, *Alderman.*
Robert Garden, *Eſq;*
Thomas Garnier, *Eſq; two Sets.*
Mr. Charles Garnier *of the* Exciſe-Office. *Two Sets.*
Francis Gaſhry, *Eſq;*
Mr. Roger Gathorne *of* Chelſea-College.
Mr. Samuel Gibbons.
Mr. Henry Giffard.
William Goſſelin, *Eſq;*
King Gould, *Eſq;*
Mr. Duncan Grant, *Merchant, of* Inverneſs.
Edward Green, *of the* Middle-Temple, *Eſq;*
Mr. Brudenel Greenwood *of the* Exciſe-Office. *Two Sets.*
Colonel Guiſe. *Six Sets.*
Henry Guiſe, *Eſq; of* Glouceſter. *Two Sets.*
Mrs. Guiſe.
Mrs. Elizabeth Guiſe.

H.

* *His Grace the Duke of* Hamilton.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Hartford.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Huntington.
The Right Hon. the Lord Hervey.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Harcourt.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

The Right Hon. the Lady Archibald Hamilton.
The Hon. Nicholas Herbert, *Esq*;
The Hon. Thomas Hervey, *Esq*;
Lieutenant-General Honywood.
Brigadier-General Handasyd.
Sir Robert Henley, *Bart.*
Sir John Heathcote, *Bart.*
Mr. William Haite.
Guise Hall, *Esq*;
William Hall, *Esq*;
Benjamin Hall, *Esq*; *of the Middle Temple.*
Chester Moor Hall, *Esq*;
Thomas Haly, *Esq*;
William Hanmer, *Esq*;
Mr. Harris.
John Harrison, *Esq*;
Michael Harvey, *Esq*;
Thomas Hawes, *Esq*;
Mr. Hawkins.
John Hay, *Esq*; *deceased.*
Mrs. Hay, *deceased.*
John Healy, *Esq*;
Samuel Heathcote, *Esq*;
Robert Henley, *Esq*;
Henry Arthur Herbert, *Esq*;
John Hervey, *Esq*;
Mrs. Hewer.
Peter Hinde, *Esq*;
Mr. John Hobbes, *Bookseller in* High-Wickham.
* Richard Honywood, *Esq*;
Edward Hooper, *Esq*;
Mr. Charles Hooper.
Jacob Houblon, *Esq*;
Richard Howard, *Esq*;
William Hucks, *Esq*;
Mr. Hughes. *Two Sets.*
Alexander Hume, *Esq*;

Mr.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

Mr. Humphreys.
Mr. John Hunter, *of* Eſſex-ſtreet.
Mr. William Hunter.
Colonel Huske.
Mr. Hyde.

J.

The Right Hon. the Earl of Jerſey.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Irwin.
Sir William Irby, *Bart. Chamberlain to her Royal Highneſs the Princeſs of* Wales.
The Rev. Dr. Henry Johnſton, *Chancellor of* Landaff.
Mr. Gabriel Johnſton, *of* New-Inn, *Gent.*
Edward Jackſon, *Eſq;*
Mr. Francis Jackſon.
Mr. John Jackſon, *of the* Cuſtom-Houſe.
Nicholas Jefferies, *Eſq;*
Edward Jeffreys, *Eſq;*
Mr. Charles Jenkins.
Ralph Jeniſon, *Eſq;*
Charles Jennens, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Johnſon.
Mr. Jordan.
Mr. Thomas Jordan.
Robert Iſaacſon, *Eſq;*
Juſtinian Iſham, *Eſq;*

K.

* *His Grace the Duke of* Kingſton.
The Rt. Hon. the Lord Viſcount Killmorey.
The Right Hon. the Lord King.
The Hon. Major-General Ker.
Sir John Liſter Kaye, *Bart.*
Mr. Jonathan Kendall.

A List *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

Coghill Knapp, *Esq*;
Thomas Knight, *Esq*;

L.

His Grace the Duke of Leeds.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Lincoln.
The Right Hon. John, *late Earl of* Leicester.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viscount Lymington.
The Hon. Henry Legge, *Esq*;
Sir Berkeley Lucy, *Bart.*
Sir Henry Liddel, *Bart.*
Sir Philip Parker Long, *Bart.*
Matthew Lamb, *Esq*; *of* Lincoln's-Inn.
Henry Lambton, *Esq*;
William Lambton, *Esq*; *of* Lincoln's-Inn.
Mr. Lane.
Henry L'Apostre, *Esq*;
Edward Lawrence, *Esq*;
John Lawton, *of* Lawton *in* Cheshire, *Esq*;
John Lawton, *Esq*; *of the* Exchequer.
Harry Leigh, *Esq*;
Percival Lewis, *Esq*;
Mr. George Lilington.
Edward Lisle, *Esq*;
Richard Lloyd, *Esq*;
John Lloyd, *of the* Inner-Temple, *Esq*;
Richard Long, *Esq*;
Robert Long, *Esq*;
Henry Long, *Esq*;
Mr. Charles Long.

M

* *His Grace the Duke of* Marlborough.
The Right Honourable the Earl of Middlesex.
The Right Honourable the Lord Viscount Molesworth.

The

A List of the SUBSCRIBERS.

The Right Hon. the Lord John Murray.
Sir Robert Munro, *Bart.*
Sir John Morgan, *Bart.*
Mr. Gillies Macbean, *of* Inverneſs.
Mr. Alexander Macbean.
Mr. William Macbean.
Mr. William Macbean.
Mr. John Macbean.
Mr. John Macklean.
Mr. William Macklean.
Mr. James Macklean.
Mr. Daniel Macpherſon.
Roger Mainwaring, *Eſq;*
Major John Maitland.
Mr. Mallet.
Robert Mann, *Eſq; of* Chelſea-College.
Edward Mann, *ſen. Eſq;*
Edward Louiſa Mann, *Eſq;*
Mr. Galfrydus Mann.
Mr. Robert Mann, *jun.*
Mr. William Martin.
John Maſon, *of the* Middle-Temple, *Eſq;*
John Matthews, *Eſq;*
Captain John Mayo.
Dr. Mead.
Mr. William Meadows, *Bookſeller.*
Thomas Medlycott, *Eſq;*
Mrs. Anne Miller.
Henry Montague, *Eſq;*
Henry Moor, *Eſq;*
Henry Moore, *Eſq;*
Richard Morley, *Eſq;*
Mr. George Morley, *of* Tunbridge-Wells.
Mr. Morris.
Mr. John Morton.
Thomas Motley, *Eſq; of* Beckingham.
John Munro, *of* Milton, *Eſq;*

Mr. Robert Munro, *Surgeon.*
Mr. Murray.
* John Myddelton, *of* Chirk-Caſtle *in* Denbighſhire, *Eſq;*

N

His Grace the Duke of Norfolk.
* *His Grace the Duke of* Newcaſtle.
The Right Rev. the Lord Biſhop of Norwich.
The Right Hon. the Lord North *and* Guildford.
The Hon. Sir Michael Newton, *Bart. and Knight of the* Bath.
Sir John Norris.
Richard Naſh, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Neale.
Henry Needler, *Eſq; Accomptant General of the* Exciſe Office.
Mr. William Newland.
Mr. John Newton.
John Nicholas, *Eſq;*
William Noel, *Eſq;*
Bennet Noel, *Eſq;*
Charles Norris, *Eſq;*
Colonel Norton, *of* Chelſea-College.
Mr. William Norton.

O

The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Orrery.
The Rt. Hon. Arthur Onſlow, *Eſq; Speaker of the Houſe of* Commons.
Laurence Offley, *Eſq;*
George Ogle, *Eſq;*
Samuel Ongley, *Eſq;*
Mr. Thomas Osborne.
Thomas Owen, *of* Lincolns Inn, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Owen.

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

P

The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Pembroke.
The Rt. Hon. the Earl of Peterborow.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Preſton.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Palmerſtone.
The Right Hon. the Lord Petre.
The Rt. Hon. Henry Pelham, *Eſq;*
The Right Hon. Stephen Poyntz, *Eſq;*
The Hon. Mr. Juſtice Probyn.
The Hon. Mr. Baron Parker.
Sir Herbert Perrot Packington, *Bart.*
Colonel Paget.
Col. John Parſons.
Henry Parſons, *Eſq;*
Mr. William Parſons, *of the* Cuſtom-Houſe.
Mr. Philip Parſons, *of the* Exciſe-Office.
Mr. John Parſons.
Mr. John Parker.
Robert Pauncefort, *Eſq; Attorney General to his Royal Highneſs the Prince of* Wales.
Henry Peirſe, *Eſq;*
Mr. Stephen Penny *of the* Exciſe-Office.
Mr. William Pepys, *Banker in* Lombard-ſtreet, *two Sets.*
Mr. John Perkins.
William Perry, *Eſq;*
Mr. William Perry.
Mr. James Pitt, *of* Glouceſter.
William Plumer, *Eſq;*
John Plumptre, *Eſq;*
Fitz-William Plumptre, *Eſq;*
Edmund Morton Pleydel, *Eſq;*
Edward Popham, *Eſq;*
William Popple, *Eſq;*

Mr.

Mr. James Porteous.
* John Potter, *Eſq;*
Joſeph Pratt, *Eſq; of* Vaux-Hall.
Mr. John Price.
Richard Price, *Eſq;*
George Proctor, *Eſq;*
Walter Pryſe, *Eſq;*
Mr. Pugh.

Q

* *His Grace the Duke of* Queensberry.

R

The Right Hon. the Earl of Rockingham.
The Right Rev. the Lord Biſhop of Rocheſter.
The Right Hon. the Lord Romney.
The Right Hon. the Lord Raymond.
The Right Hon. the late Lord Chief Baron Reynolds.
The Lady Rich.
Sir Thomas Robinſon, *Bart.*
Sir William Rous, *Alderman.*
Sir Benjamin Rawlings.
Jonathan Raſhleigh, *Eſq;*
Jones Raymond, *Eſq;*
Abraham Reynardſon, *Eſq;*
Mr. William Richardſon, *of the* Cuſtom-Houſe.
Mr. Stephen Richardſon.
Mr. George Riggs *of* Vaux-Hall.
Thomas Ripley, *Eſq;*
Mr. James Robarts.
Mr. William Rogers.
Mr. Samuel Rowland.
Edward Rudge, *Eſq;*

A List *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

John Ruſh, *Eſq*;
Mr. William Ruſſel.

S

His Grace the Duke of St. Albans.
The Right Hon. the Counteſs of Sunderland.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Shaftesbury.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Scarborough.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Selkirk.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Strafford.
The Right Hon. the Earl Stanhope.
The Right Hon. the Lord Sundbury.
The Right Rev. the Lord Biſhop of St. Aſaph.
His Excellency the Baron Solenthall, *Envoy Extraordinary from the King of* Denmark.
The Right Hon. the Lord Charles Noel Somerſet.
The Right Hon. the Lord John Sackville.
The Hon. Sir William Stanhope, *Knight of the* Bath.
The Hon. John Spenſer, *Eſq*;
The Hon. Holles St. John, *Eſq*;
The Lady Skipwith.
Sir Thomas Style, *Bart.*
Sir Henry Slingsby, *Bart.*
Sir Miles Stapylton, *Bart.*
Sir Brownlow Sherrard, *Bart.*
Sir George Saville, *Bart.*
Sir Hans Sloane, *Bart.*
Thomas Sadler, *Eſq*; *of the* Exchequer.
Peter St. Eloy, *Eſq*;
Samuel Sandys, *Eſq*;
Dr. Sandys.
Charles Savage, *Eſq*; *of* Mark-Lane.
Jacob Sawbridge, *Eſq*;
Robert Say, *Eſq*;
Thomas Scawen, *Eſq*;

Auguſtus Schutz, *Eſq*;
Mr. John Scott.
Thomas Sergiſon, *Eſq*;
Mrs. Elizabeth Serocold *of* Hackney.
Francis Seymour, *Eſq*;
Mr. Sharpe.
Richard Shelley, *Eſq*; *one of the Commiſſioners of the* Stamp-Office.
Mr. John Shepherd.
Mr. Richard Shergold.
Colonel Sinclair
Matthew Skinner, *Eſq*; *Chief Juſtice of* Cheſter.
Henry Smith, *Eſq*;
Mr. George Smith. *Two Sets.*
Robert Snell, *Eſq*; Bencher *of the* Inner-Temple.
Mr. Ralph Snow.
Thomas South, *Eſq*;
George Speke, *Eſq*;
Harry Spencer, *Eſq*; *of* Gray's-Inn.
The Reverend Mr. Charles Spendelowe.
Mr. Peter Spendelowe, *Merchant*, *of* Hambourg.
William Stanley, *Eſq*; *Deputy Comptroller of the* Exciſe-Office.
John Stephens, *Eſq*;
Mr. Richard Stephens.
Mr. Samuel Stephens.
Edward Stephenſon, *Eſq*;
Benjamin-Hoskin Stiles, *Eſq*;
Richard Stockwell, *Eſq*;
Andrew Stone, *Eſq*; *Under Secretary of State.*
Mr. Richard Stone.
George Stovin, *Eſq*;

T

The Right Hon. the Earl of Thanet.
The Right Hon. the Earl of Tankerville.
The Right Hon. the Earl Tilney.

The

A List of the SUBSCRIBERS.

The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Torrington.
The Right Hon. the Lord Viſcount Tyrconnel.
The Right Hon. the Lord Talbot.
The Hon. Horatio Townſhend, *Eſq;*
The Hon. John Trevor, *Eſq;*
Sir John Thompſon, *Alderman.*
Joſeph Taylor, *Eſq;*
Robert Taylor, *Eſq;*
Mr. Francis Taylor.
John Temple, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Thomas.
Edward Thompſon, *Eſq;*
Richard Thomſon, *Eſq; Second Prothonotary of the* Common-Pleas
Mr. Thomas Thorn.
Robert Thornton, *Eſq;*
James Tillard, *Eſq;*
Jacob Tonſon, *Eſq;*
Joſeph Townſend, *Eſq;*
Robert Tracy, *Eſq;*
Samuel Trench, *Eſq;*
Mr. Joſeph Tully.
Mr. Jonathan Tyers, *of* Vauxhall.
Mr. Henry Turner.
Mr. William Turner.

V

Sir Peter Vandeput, *Bart.*
Charles Vanbrugh, *Eſq;*
Mr. Edward Vanbrugh.
Mr. Giles Vanbrugh.
William Vaughan, *Eſq;*
Thomas Vere, *Eſq;*
George Venables Vernon, *Eſq;*
Mr. William Vigor, *of* Petersburgh, *Two Sets.*
Robert Vyner, *Eſq;*

Mr.

Mr. Robert Vincent.
Mr. Untzellman.
The Reverend M. James Upton. A. M.
Mr. Serjeant Urlin, *Deputy-Recorder of the City of* London.

W

The Right Hon. the Earl of Weſtmorland.
The Rt. Rev. the Lord Biſhop of Wincheſter.
* *The Right Hon. the Lord* Walpole.
* *The Rt. Hon. Sir* Robert Walpole. *Two Sets.*
The Right Hon. Edward Walpole, *Eſq;*
The Right Hon. Sir John Willes, *Lord Chief Juſtice of the* Common-Pleas.
His Excellency Baron Waſner, *Envoy Extraordinary from the Emperor of* Germany.
General Wade.
Sir George Wynn, *Bart.*
Sir Robert Worſley, *Bart.*
Sir Thomas Webſter, *Bart.*
Thomas Walker, *Eſq;*
Charles Waller, *Eſq;*
Mr. Walton.
Colonel Wardour.
Peter Warren, *Eſq;*
The Rev. Mr. John Webb.
Mr. Nicholas Webb, *of* Glouceſter.
Mrs. Heſter Webb, *of* Glouceſter.
Wardel George Weſtby, *Eſq;*
Edward Weſton, *Eſq; Under Secretary of State.*
Bernard Whally, *Eſq;*
Mr. John Whithorne.
Colonel Francis Whitworth.
Mr. John Wiggs.
Mr. Thomas Wilcocks, *of* Glouceſter.
Andrew Wilkinſon, *Eſq;*

Charles

A LIST *of the* SUBSCRIBERS.

Charles Hanbury Williams, *Esq*;
Mr. Joseph Willis, *of* Chelsea-College.
James Worsley, *Esq*;
Mr. Richard Wotton, *of the* Excise-Office.
Edward Wright, *Esq*;
Martin Wright, *Esq*; *his Majesty's Serjeant at Law*;
Christopher Wyvill, *Esq*; *of the* Excise-Office.

Y

His Grace the Lord Archbishop of York.
* *The Right Hon. Sir* William Yonge, *Bart. and Knight of the* Bath. *Two Sets.*
Thomas Yates, *Esq*;
John Yate, *Esq*;

Z

Mr. Zollman.

ERRATA in the First Volume.

PAGE 7. line 2. for *Peterſbourg*, read *Peterſburgh*. p. 11. l. 9. dele the Point after *Nikititz*. p. 31. l. 25. for *Kouka* r. *Kourka*. p. 33. l. 21. for *Diſcouſe* r. *Diſcourſe*. p. 34. l. 26. for *Ralanſchek*, r. *Kalanſcheck*. p. 70. l. 7. for *Achmot*, r. *Achmet*. p. 101. l. 32. for *Debtford*, r. *Deptford*. p. 116. l. 19. for *Favourita*, r. *Favorita*. p. 127. l. 28. for *Razan*. r. *Reſan*. p. 128. l. 23. for *Rezan*, r. *Reſan*. p. 136. l. 17. dele the laſt o, in *Waivodoes*. p. 140. l. 1. for *Appaxin*, r. *Apraxin*. p. 163. l. ult. for *Succeſsful*, r. *Succeſsleſs*. p. 247. l. 13. for *Travanſtad*, r. *Fravenſtad*. p. 262. l. 10. for *Koniſting*, r. *Konigſtin*. p. 326. l. 8. for our, r. *your*.

Peter I-1-1

To -

Their Royal Highnesses ye Prince *and* Princess *of* WALES -

This GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION

of ye Empire of GREAT RUSSIA.

is most humbly Dedicated.

T. Spendelowe Sculp.

Werst or Russian Miles 120 in a Degree
100 200 300 400 500
Lü or Chinese Furlongs 250 in a Degree
250 500 750 1000 1250

R T H E R N O C E A N

Orange I.

NTAI KA

E S

Simonna Chetskoe

AGNESSIA

Chotanga Sim.

M. Ignimontes

Thesert.

JAKU TSKOI

Werchojanskoi

Ostrok Aldanskoi

R I A

Aldan R.

Oloi R.

Jana R.

Indigir R.

Alase R.

Nisnei Kolymskoi

Simonna

Kolyma R.

TZUCKZA

Anadirskoi Ostrog

Jasatnaia R.

Koreikorum

Plutorski Ostrog

Konstantinovskoi Ostr.

Pico

Channel

Oloi R.

Lena or Ussoi R.

Ostr Saygonska

Ussolskoi

Aldan R.

Olekminskoi

Izarinskoi

Simowi

Peledun

Spaskogo Monast.

Jakutskoi

Kondirskoi Simonna

Jenisseia R.

Tungus R.

Karopzianski

Jelimski

Ustkutskoi

Ustkan

Kanskoi Ostr.

Udinskoi Ostrok

Kamenka

Irkutski

Baikal

Udinski

Yunkinski

Selenginski

Verchoiansk

Aldan R.

Yana R.

Indigir R.

Alase R.

Nisnei Kolymskoi

Simonna

Kolyma R.

Anadirskoi Ostrog

Jasatnaia R.

Oklukoe

Ajma

Taut Ost.

Tatri

Ud R.

Ud Ostr.

Allasin

Karsoi

Mergen

Hingon L.

Aquita

Montiam L.

Hanching

Jeso

Tayma

Mino

Jedo

Lumpin

Peking

Yalo R.

Chasien

Pingyang

Honan

Nanking

Tchinian

Hoangcheu

Jungan

Kiring

Vla

Nirkrita

Burgan Kotan

Xamo

Sandy Desart of

great

The

Gans

Kuepan

Dejart

Tolai

Xixigar

Agunski

Argun

Baikalskoi

Kyrenskoi

Parusk

Ilimskoi

Ilimskaya Simonia

Lena R.

Olekma R.

Tungus R.

Ilga R.

Ilga R.

Olekma R.

Lena or Ussoi R.

Amoi or Amur R.

Ostr Saygonska

J

Petersl-1-1

To -
Their Royal Highnesses ye Prince and Princess of WALES -
This GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION
of ye Empire of GREAT RUSSIA
is most humbly Dedicated.

I. Spendelowe Sculp.

100 110 120 130 140 150 160 170 180

R T H E R N O C E A N

Weirst or Russian Miles 120 in a Degree
100 200 300 400 500
Lü or Chinese Furlongs 250 in a Degree
250 500 750 1000 1250

Orangel.

NTAIKA

E S

Simowa Chepkowa

AGNESSIA

Stanowoi Mts.

Thesert.

Vrndia Tunguska R.

Kondirskoi Simowia

OF MUSSOVIA

Spaskogo Monast.

JENISEIA

Turgus R.

JELIMSKI

KRASNOIAR

Sayanski Mts.

Baikal

Irkutski

Jakutskoi

Olekminskoi

Tzarevskoi

Simowi

Yeledun

Ribna

Kaiskoi

Kiyrenskoi

Ustkutskoi

Karopzanski

Jelimski

Ilimpeia R.

Ilimpeia

Ust Ilimpeia

Ilgar R.

Olekma R.

Aldan R.

Aldanskoi

Nitrok

Verchoiganskoi

Ostr. Saiganska

M. Ignivomes

Stanowoi

Alaseia

Nimi Kolymskoi

Simowia

Kolimsk

Anadirskoi Ostrog

Ostrog

Tzuckzi

Tzuckzi Nos

Tzuckzi Land

Kamtschatka R.

Kamtschatka Ostrog

Kamtschatka Nos

Kamtschatka Sea

Penschinskoi Gulf

Penschinskoi Ostrog

Penschinskoi R.

Tigil R.

Tigilskoi Ostrog

Tigil

Tigilskoi Nos

Okhotskoe

Syma

Okhotskoi Ostrog

Okhotskoi Sea

Ochotskoi R.

Ochotskoi

Ochotskoi Nos

Ochotskoi Ostrog

Och

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* I. CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK I.

The CONTENTS.

A ſhort Account of the Country of Muſcovy *in general. The Death of* Alexis Michaelowitz, *the Czar* PETER's *Father. The Death of his elder Brother* Theodore. *A Relation of the Rebellion raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia, *in Favour of her Brother* John. John *is proclaimed* Czar, *with his younger Brother* Peter. *A ſecond Rebellion, raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia; *and the End of her Regency.*

THE EMPIRE of *Ruſſia* or *Muſcovy*, which is partly in *Europe* and partly in *Aſia*, is bounded on the North, by the Frozen Sea, or Northern Ocean; on the Eaſt, by *Great*, or *Chineſe*, *Tartary*; on the South, by the *Calmucks*, *Cuban Tartary*, *Georgia*, the *Palus*

A ſhort Account of Muscovy.

THE HISTORY OF *PETER I.* CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK I.

The CONTENTS.

A ſhort Account of the Country of Muſcovy *in general. The Death of* Alexis Michaelowitz, *the Czar* PETER's *Father. The Death of his elder Brother* Theodore. *A Relation of the Rebellion raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia, *in Favour of her Brother* John. John *is proclaimed* Czar, *with his younger Brother* Peter. *A ſecond Rebellion, raiſed by the Princeſs* Sophia; *and the End of her Regency.*

THE EMPIRE of *Ruſſia* or *Muſcovy*, which is partly in *Europe* and partly in *Aſia*, is bounded on the North, by the Frozen Sea, or Northern Ocean; on the Eaſt, by *Great*, or *Chineſe Tartary*; on the South, by the *Calmucks*, *Cuban Tartary*, *Georgia*, the *Palus*

A ſhort Account of Muscovy.

Palus Meotis, *Tartary the Leſs*, the *Euxine* and *Caſpian* Seas; and on the Weſt, by *Poland* and *Sweeden*; from the Confines of which to thoſe of *China*, in the Eaſt, it is 1500 Leagues in Length; and from the *Euxine* Sea, in the South, to the known Parts of *Nova Zembla*, in the North, above 600 Leagues, extending from 47 Degrees of North Latitude to ſome Places beyond the Artic Circle.

Its Extent.

Its Name. This Country is called *Ruſſia*, as moſt Authors agree, from an Antient People of the Country, called *Roſſi*, or *Ruſſi*, ſo named from the Word *Roſſia*, which ſignifies *Diſperſion*, becauſe they lived antiently ſcattered up and down, without any ſettled Form of Government: And the Name of *Muſcovy* is ſuppoſed to be derived from *Meſech*, the Son of *Japhet*; but this laſt ſeems to be a mere Conjecture built on a very ſlender Foundation. The *Muſcovites* reckon the Creation of the World, which uſed to be their common *Æra*, to have been above 7200 Years ago, more than 1500 Years before the Time fixed by all other Chriſtian Nations, without being able to give any Manner of Reaſon for thus differing from them. They uſed alſo to reckon the firſt Day of their Year the firſt of the Month *September*, and kept it with great Solemnity, till forced to do otherwiſe, as we ſhall ſee hereafter: Their Notion was, that it was more likely that God created the World with the Fruits of the Earth in full Maturity and Perfection than at a Time when the Face of Nature was covered over with Ice and Snow, without conſidering that what is Winter with them is Spring, or Autumn in ſome other Parts of the Globe. The longeſt Day in the South Part of *Muſcovy* is fifteen

teen Hours and a half; and in the North, it may be ſaid, to be two Months, the Sun not ſetting in that Time when near the Summer Solſtice.

The ſharpneſs of the Air.

The Air in theſe Climates, in the Winter Seaſon, is ſo exceſſively cold, eſpecially towards the North, that many feel its Effects, by the Loſs of their Hands, Feet and Noſes; and this Misfortune is the more inevitable, if they come too haſtily near a Fire, the Cauſe of which, as my Lord *Bacon*, obſerves, is, "for that the "few Spirits that remain in thoſe Parts, are "ſuddenly drawn forth, and ſo Putrefaction is "completed: But Snow put upon the Part will "prevent this, becauſe it preſerveth thoſe Spi-"rits that remain till they revive". In this Part of the Country Water ſprinkled upwards with the Hand will freeze before it fall to the Ground; Birds, as they fly in the Air, will fall down and die, and Men, travelling in Sledges, come frozen to Death into the Cities and Towns; the Snow and Ice are on the Earth generally for nine Months of the Year; the Ice on the Rivers is above five Feet thick, and is not melted till ſome Time after the Snow is gone: This cold Weather begins in *Auguſt* and continues till *May*, during which Time every Body is wrapt up in Furs. The Land is very barren except on the South-Weſt Side near *Poland*, where they have ſeveral Sorts of Grain in great Plenty, and from the extreme Heat of the Summer, immediately following the Cold, they have their Harveſt in about two Months after their Land is ploughed, ſowing in *May* and reaping in *July*: The Soil needs no Dung, the Snow ſupplying the Place of that, and all other Manure. They have ſome

The Product of the Lands.

very good Fruits, eſpecially Melons. I cannot forbear taking Notice in this Place, of a moſt extraordinary Plant, which is mentioned by ſeveral Authors, and ſaid to be found near *Samara*, *Aſtracan* and *Caſan*, it grows in the Shape of a Lamb; they affirm, that the Graſs Withers near it, as if eaten by it, that when it is ripe the Stump grows dry, and the Fruit is covered with a certain hairy Skin, reſembling Wool, which, being prepared, makes a good Fur-Lining; the Wolves devour it, becauſe it is like a Lamb, therefore the *Muſcovites* name it *Bonnaretz*, that is, *little Lamb*, and others *Zoophyton*, or *Animal Plant*. *Julius Scaliger*, mentioning this Plant, * ſays the Fruit grows till the Graſs fails it, and that it dies not but for want of Nouriſhment. He adds that no Beaſt will feed on it, but the Wolf, and that it is uſed as a Bait to take him.

As to other Fruits, M. *Cornelius Le Bruyn*, in one Part of his Travels, ſpeaks of a kind of Gooſeberry, with which the Woods about *Moſcow* are full, it is called *Coſtenitſa*, and is of a very pleaſant acid Taſte, they are eaten with Honey, or Sugar like Strawberries; there is alſo another Sort of them, called *Bruſnitſa*, larger than the other, great Quantities of which are carried every Year to *Moſcow*, where the *Ruſſians* put them into Tubs and Caſks of Water, all the Summer, and then draw a Liquor from them, which is very refreſhing and pleaſant, eſpecially when ſweetened with Honey and Sugar. The ſame Author, in another Place, ſpeaks of an extraordinary Sort of Turnips, of various Colours, and ſurprizing Beauty, theſe he

he found among the *Samoïeds*, ſome were of a purple Colour, ſome grey and white, and ſome yellowiſh ſtriked with a red like Vermillion, and more pleaſant to the Sight than a Carnation.

The Country in general abounds with Foreſts, Marſhes, Lakes, Pools, and Deſarts; but theſe afford great Plenty of Wild-Fowl, Fiſh, and Furs of Wild Beaſts for Cloathing. There is, in this Country, a moſt prodigious Plenty of Wild Game, and the *Ruſſians* have particularly one Sort of Hares, in great Numbers, which have ſomething very wonderful in their Nature, and that is, that every Winter they turn as white as the Snow on the Ground, and in the Spring become of the ſame Colour with our Hares in *England*. Near *Petzora*, a Province in the Northern Part of *Muſcovy*, they take a Fiſh, called *Morſa*, with the Teeth of which they make Handles of Knives and Cymeters. Some of the Lakes in this Country, which are chiefly occaſioned by the melted Snows, are above Fifty Leagues long; thoſe of *Ladoga* and *Onega*, near *Finland*, are two of the largeſt in *Europe*. The numerous Swarms of Gnats and Flies, produced by the intenſe Heat of the Sun on theſe Pools and ſtanding Waters, make the Summer Seaſon, in *Muſcovy*, almoſt as troubleſome to Travellers as the Winter. The chief Towns in this vaſt Empire are, *Moſcow*, *Peterſburgh*, *Wolodimer*, *Novogorod*, *Smolenſko*, *Caſan*, *Bulgar*, *Aſtracan*, *Wologda*, *Pleſkow*, *Reſan*, *Jereſlaw*, *Pereſlaw*, *Arch-Angel*, and St. *Nicholas*.

Moscow, which was the principal City of *Muſcovy*, till the late Czar, PETER I. built *Peterſburgh*, communicates its Name to the whole

A Deſcription of *Moſcow*.

whole Country, and is ſituated in 55 Degrees 30 Minutes of North Latitude, on a gravelly Soil and in a wholeſome Air, almoſt in the Centre of the beſt Part of *Ruſſia*, on a River of the ſame Name, that falls into the *Occa*, it is divided into four Parts, named *Cataigorod*, where the Czar's Palaces ſtand; *Czargorod*, *Skerodum* and *Strelitza Slaboda*: The laſt ſo called becauſe in that Part were formerly the Quarters of the *Strelitzes*, who, when in being, were eſtabliſhed Forces, or Guards, like the *Janizaries* among the *Turks*, of which there were always wont to be about 20,000 quartered in *Moſcow*, for the Czar's Guard. Theſe four Parts are ſeparated and encompaſſed by three Walls, beſides that of the Imperial Palaces; the firſt of red Bricks; the ſecond is white; and the third of Earth, ſupported on each Side by Planks and Beams of Fir, which altho' 15 or 16 Miles in Circumference, is ſaid to have been raiſed in four Days, on a Report of the Approach of the *Cham* of *Crim Tartary*, and for this Reaſon has the Name of *Skerodum*, which in the *Ruſſian* Language ſignifies, *done in a hurry*. The City of *Moſcow* was founded in the Year 1334, and once conſiſted of 40,000 Houſes, but was taken, and almoſt burnt down by the *Tartars* in 1572; the *Polanders* took it alſo in 1611, it was again burnt in 1668, and ſuffered greatly by Fire in 1699, 1701 and 1707. * But it loſt the moſt Inhabitants by the great Numbers whom

* Since this was written, *viz.* on the 29th of *May* 1737 another Fire happened which conſumed half the City. But if we may believe the Accounts given in our publick Prints, there has been a Plan preſented to, and approved by her preſent Majeſty the Empreſs of *Ruſſia*, for rebuilding it with greater Magnificence than ever.



T. Spendelowe Sculp.t

To His Royal Highness Y^e DUKE
This PLATE is most humbly Dedicated.

whom the Czar PETER obliged to reſide at the new City of *Peterſbourg* when he built it. As the City now ſtands, from the vaſt Number of Churches, with Cupola's, Steeples, and Croſſes gilt and variouſly painted at Top, and the Gentlemens Houſes, every Perſon of Diſtinction having a Garden and Court-Yard belonging to his Houſe, altho' in the Heart of the Town, it has the Appearance, at a Diſtance, of one of the fineſt and moſt beautiful Cities in the World, but does by no Means anſwer the Traveller's Expectation when he comes within it, the Houſes being for the moſt Part very meanly built of Wood; the *Boyars* (by which Name the *Muſcovite* Noblemen are called) and a few Perſons of Condition, have indeed ſome handſome Houſes of Stone; but the Streets, inſtead of Stone Pavement, are laid with Fir Timber, and the Walls and Fences between the Streets and Houſes are likewiſe of Wood. Theſe wooden Houſes are moveable and ſold ready made; and indeed, from the many Fires that happen among them, often owing to their great Drunkenneſs, the reigning Vice of the *Muſcovites*, and their Negligence in putting out the many lighted Tapers, which they ſtick about among the Pictures of the Saints in their Chambers, not only here, but in every other Town in *Ruſſia*, they have too frequent Occaſions to go to Market. A certain *French* Author, in his Account of *Muſcovy*, ſays, that when he was at *Moſcow*, in the Year 1688, there were three thouſand Houſes burnt, but they were, in his Opinion, little better than the Hog-ſties in *France*. Our Countryman, Captain *Perry*, ſays, "it is common in *Moſcow*, when a Fire begins,

The frequent Fires there.

" especially in the Summer Season, when every " Thing is dry and ready to kindle, to have a " Fire spread on all Sides, and burn on so fu- " rious, that there is no standing before it; " and, in this Extremity, it is the Way of the " *Russes*, in Hopes to put a Stop to it, to pull " down the Houses and Fences that are made " of Wood, tho' they often have not Time " to carry them off, but as they lie on the " Ground together with the Wood with which " the Streets are lined, give a Train to the " Fire, so that he has known it, in less than " half a Day's Time, when there has been a " Gale of Wind, burn above a *Russ* Mile in " Length, and destroy many thousand Houses " before it has been quenched, and often with- " out giving the Inhabitants Opportunity to " carry off the tenth Part of their Goods. " This, continues he, has often brought many " People to the last Degree of Poverty, when " all that they have had has been burnt, and " it is one great Cause that the Houses appear " so poor in *Moscow*, when they cannot raise " Money to build them better, and by Reason " of their being very often, as soon as they are " built up, burnt down again to the Ground.

There are at least 1500 Churches and Mo- nasteries in and about *Moscow*, above forty of which are within the Wall that encompasses the two Imperial Palaces, for there are two, one of Stone for the Summer, and one of Wood for Winter; besides the Palace which was for- merly the Residence of the Patriarch, before that high Office was abolished, several Houses of the chief Lords of the Court; the *Precauses*, or Courts of Justice; the Public Offices of the

State

tate; and in the Midſt of a great Court, ſurounded with Buildings, is a lofty Tower called *wan Welike* or *Great John*, in which is the nonſtrous Bell, ſtill remaining where it fell, in he Fire in the Year 1701. It is reported to e the biggeſt in the World, weighing 336,000 ounds, is 19 Feet high, 23 in Diameter, 64 n Circumference, and two in Thickneſs. It ould not be raiſed by leſs than an hundred Men, and that uſed to be only on extraordiary Occaſions, as when the Czars, in old Times, hought fit to ſhew themſelves to their Peole, whoſe Ignorance made them imagine, that he Preſence alone of their Sovereign cauſed hat Agitation they felt in their Bodies, which was the mere Effect of the Motion the Air was ut into by this Bell. It is no uncommon Thing in Hiſtory, to meet with Princes whoſe ain-glorious Pride hath carryed them into the xtravagant Folly of endeavouring to paſs upon heir Subjects for ſomething more than Men; nay, even ſome who have been a Diſgrace to the human Species: Nor indeed have many of the Tyrants of the North done Honour to it, till the Time of PETER *the Great*. This Bell uſed alſo to be ſtruck upon formerly when the Czar went to Bed to the *Great-Dutcheſs*, to warn the People to pray for the Conception of a Prince, for they made but little Account of a Daughter.

The great Bell of *Moſcow*.

But to finiſh the Deſcription of *Moſcow*, the great Church of *Saboor*, is 96 Feet in Length, the Dome is ſupported by four large Pillars, and here they ſhew a Picture pretended to be painted by St. *Luke*, and alſo Chriſt's Garment upon which the Soldiers caſt Lots, concerning which they relate ſeveral idle Miracles. It would

would be endleſs to deſcribe every Church, among which, one was looked upon as ſo magnificent a Structure by *John Baſilowitz*, the Tyrant, that he ordered the Eyes of the Architect, who built it, to be put out, that he might never contrive ſuch another. If the City of *Moſcow* has in it a ſurprizing Number of Churches, it abounds no leſs in Brandy-ſhops, there being at leaſt 4000 *Cabacs*, or Houſes where that, with Wine and other ſtrong Liquors are ſold.

As to the Religion, Cuſtoms, Manners and Trade of the *Muſcovites*; I ſhall mention them hereafter, when I come to ſpeak of the great Reformation made in thoſe and all other Matters in the *Ruſſian* Empire.

The Hiſtory of this extenſive Country, which was a great Part of the antient *Sarmatia Europea*, and *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, is ſo clouded with fabulous Relations, and ſo deeply buried under the Ruins of Antiquity, and the profound Ignorance of its People, in Times paſt, who ſcarce held any Commerce with the other Parts of the World, nay, were forbad, on Pain of Death, to go out of their own Country or even converſe with Foreigners, without Leave of their Prince or Patriarch, that it is almoſt impoſſible to arrive at any Certainty with Regard to the antient State of it. Let it ſuffice, that they were formerly under the Government of ſeveral diſtinct Princes, as the Kings of *Aſtracan*, *Caſan*, *Siberia*, *&c.* and many petty Dukes, till reduced to the Obedience of one Monarch, at firſt ſtiled the *Great Duke*, afterwards *Czar*, and then *Emperor*.

Not

The preſent Imperial Family.

Not being to write the Hiſtory of the Country, but of one great Prince only, I ſhall go no farther back for an Account of the preſent Imperial Family of *Muſcovy*, named *Romanoff*, than to the Grand-father of the Czar *Peter* I. and Great Grand-father of her preſent Czarian Majeſty. His Name was *Michael Feodorowitz*, (or *Theodorowitz*) *Romanoff*, being the Son of *Feodore*, (or *Theodore*) *Nikititz. Romanoff*, Patriarch of *Muſcovy*, who was marry'd to a near Relation of *John Baſilowitz* the Tyrant, by whom he had this Son proclaimed Czar, in the Year 1613, who reigned 32 Years, and dying *Anno* 1645, was ſucceeded by his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz*, Father to the Prince, whoſe Life I have undertaken to give the Publick, ſeeing it has been ſo long, but vainly expected from the Pens of others, who might have been more equal to the Taſk.

1672

The Birth of *Peter* I.

Peter the Great was born on the 11th of *June* 1672, of *Natalia Carilowna Naraſkin*, ſecond Wife to the aforeſaid *Alexis Michaelowitz*, who a little before his Death, which was when *Peter* had ſcarce arrived at five Years of Age, declared General *Meneſius*, a Scotch-man, his Governor, a Perſon well qualified for that Employment, being thoroughly acquainted with all the Affairs of *Europe*, and ſpeaking perfectly well all the *European* Languages; but the Commotions raiſed, a few Years after, by the Princeſs *Sophia*, who not being able to make *Meneſius* abandon the Intereſt of this her half-Brother *Peter*, forced him to retire, and that Prince was thereby deprived of the Benefit he might have received from ſo able a Preceptor: Yet we ſhall ſee, in the Courſe of theſe Sheets,

Sheets, that from the Strength of his own natural Genius, unaſſiſted by Letters, or any of thoſe artificial Accompliſhments, which other Princes acquire by Education, he was able to ſurpaſs them all; to conquer foreign Countries, and, what is ſtill greater, to new form his own, and, unpoliſhed as he was at firſt himſelf, to poliſh others, that were but one Degree removed from Savages.

M. *Fontenelle* tells us, "that the Inclination "of this young Prince to Military Exerciſes "began to ſhew itſelf very early; he was plea-"ſed, in his Infancy, with beating the Drum, "and, what was much obſerved, he would not "amuſe himſelf, as a Child, with a vain "Noiſe, but to learn one of the Functions of a "Soldier, it was that which he endeavoured to "render familiar to him, which he did effec-"tually, in ſo much as ſometimes to give Leſ-"ſons to others.

1676 *Alexis Michaelowitz* left, at his Death, *Anno* 1676, two Sons, *Theodore* and *John*, and four Daughters, *viz. Sophia*, before-mentioned, *Catharine*, *Mary* and *Sediaſſa*, by his firſt Wife; and one Son and one Daughter, *viz. Peter* and *Natalia Alexowna*, by a ſecond Venter. *Theodore*, his eldeſt Son, ſucceeded him; but he being of a very weak Conſtitution, and ſoon falling into great Diſorders in his Body, every one believed his Reign and his Life would have but a ſhort Period. The Princeſs *Sophia*, a Lady of a Maſculine Spirit and great Penetration, foreſeeing this, contrived Means how to get out of the Convent in which ſhe was placed, notwithſtanding the ſettled Cuſtom, at that Time, which obliged the Female Iſſue of the Czarian Houſe

Houſe to paſs their Lives unmarried in ſuch Confinement. To obtain her Ends, ſhe pre-ended a more than ordinary Affection for her Brother, and complained vehemently of her Unhappineſs, in being reſtrained from viſiting Perſon whom ſhe loved ſo tenderly, and of ot having the Liberty to attend him in his ickneſs: When he was in the Fits of his Diſtemper, ſhe ſent every Moment to enquire ow he did; and let no Occaſion ſlip of teſti-ying her Love for him, and the great Grief he felt in being obliged to be abſent from him.

By theſe Methods, at length, having pre-ared the Way for what ſhe deſigned, ſhe left er Convent under Pretence of ſerving her Bro-her, and adminiſtring to him in his Sickneſs, hich ſhe did conſtantly with great Aſſiduity, nd ſeeming Tenderneſs, ſuffering no one to come ear him, or give him any Medicines but her-lf; for ſhe wiſely conſidered the more ſhe id for him, the more ſhe ſhould gain the Eſ-em not only of the Czar himſelf, but of every ody about him.

Thus ſhe inſinuated herſelf into the good pinion of the Grandees, whom ſhe treated in moſt obliging Manner; and won the Hearts f the People by her affable Behaviour, ſtu-ying to make her Conduct approved, and ex-uſe her leaving the Convent. It might be ppoſed ſhe would have contented herſelf with er Liberty, but, being reſolved never more to eturn to Confinement, ſhe concluded the beſt Way would be to make herſelf abſolute Miſ-eſs, which Deſign not being to be carried on ithout a conſiderable Number of Friends to pport her Intereſts and Authority, ſhe pitched upon

upon Prince *Basil Basilerwick Galliczin*, as the fitteſt Perſon to be the Chief of her Party.

Prince *Galliczin* choſen the Princeſs's Favourite.

Prince *Galliczin* was a Man of great Quality, deſcended from the laſt Duke of *Lithuania* of the Houſe of *Jagelon*: The Courtiers at firſt ſeemed well enough pleaſed with her Choice, imagining that he would only have the Name of Chief Miniſter, but ſhare the Power with them; but this Prince, who was as artful as his Protectreſs, and had more Cunning than half the Nobility of *Muſcovy* put together, found Way to manage all Affairs as he pleaſed, during the Reign of *Theodore*, who dying ſuddenly, in the 22d Year of his Age, *Anno* 1682, and leaving no Iſſue behind him, named *Peter*, his youngeſt Brother, tho' by a different Mother, his Succeſſor to the Throne, thinking his Brother *John*, who was greatly afflicted with the Falling-Sickneſs, and other Infirmities, unfit for Government. *Peter*, then not above ten Years of Age, was accordingly proclaimed Czar. The Princeſs *Sophia*, who had been allowed a large Share in the Regency, a little before the Death of her Brother *Theodore*, could not be well pleaſed to ſee her other Brother by the ſame Father and Mother, thus excluded the Throne; which ſhe looked upon as her Right; and, having engaged *Couvanſki* *, the Preſident, or General of the *Strelitzes*, and many others of the *Boyars* and Clergy to her Side, reſolved to ſet the Crown upon the Head of her Brother *John*.

The Death of the Czar *Theodore* *Peter*'s elder Brother. 1682

Peter proclaimed Czar.

* An Officer ſomewhat like the *Aga* of the *Janiſſaries* among the *Turks*, or the *Prefect* of the *Prætorian* Band under the *Roman* Emperors.

The more eaſily to accompliſh her Deſign, and bring the People into her Meaſures, a Report was induſtriouſly ſpread, that the Czar *Theodore* had been poiſoned by his Phyſicians at the Inſtigation of ſome chief Men at the Helm, whoſe Names were whiſper'd about; and, the more ſtrongly to exaſperate the *Strelitzes*, ſhe cauſed a Rumour likewiſe to go about, that a Deſign had been formed at Court, to have mixed Poiſon with the Brandy and Beer that was to have been given them at the Czar *Theodore*'s Funeral, if ſhe had not prevented it. *Couvanſki*, the General, and many of the principal Officers, commonly younger Sons of the greateſt Families in *Ruſſia*, being before thoroughly engaged in the Deſign, and the common Men thus incenſed, againſt the Courtiers, they ſoon took an Opportunity to give Vent to their Fury: Beginning firſt with the Murder of the two Phyſicians, who adminiſtered Phyſick to the deceaſed Czar; they cut in Pieces ſeveral of the chief Officers of the Crown, who were marked out to them for Deſtruction, and threw others over a Balluſtrade, on the Top of the Imperial Palace, upon the Soldiers Pikes, which they held upright on Purpoſe to receive them: And, in this Savage Manner, they continued their Outrages for ſeveral Days, till the People, to put a Stop to their Rage, and Barbarity, proclaimed *John*, Czar, in Conjunction with his Brother *Peter Alexowitz*.

1682

A Tumult raiſed by the Princeſs *Sophia*.

John proclaimed Czar jointly with *Peter*.

The Princeſs *Sophia* having now gained her Ends, and, both the Czars being very young, got the Adminiſtration of the Government into her own Hands, it was hoped that all Troubles

1683

1683 bles would ceaſe; but the Boyar *Couvanſki* continued to let looſe his *Strelitzes* to murder and plunder all that were not of his Party in *Moſcow*, from whence the Imperial Family were retired, for their Safety, into the *Troitſky*, or *Trinity Monaſtery*,* about 60 *Ruſs* Miles from the City, and whither Prince *Borice Galliczin*, a Relation of the afore-mentioned Prince *Galliczin*, had before carried the Czar *Peter*, to ſecure him till the Tumult was over. Princeſs *Sophia*, having Intelligence here of all that paſſed in the City, in Hopes of ſoothing this Madman *Couvanſki*, ſent her Compliments to him with Thanks for the Zeal he had ſhewn in revenging the Death of her Brother: But this had a quite different Effect from what ſhe expected, for *Couvanſki*, after all he had done, ravaging, plundering, and even maſſacring the moſt conſiderable *Boyars* with Impunity, or even without a Check to his inhuman Proceedings, and then receiving this Submiſſion, as he interpreted it to be, from the Princeſs, he imagined there was nothing that he might not attempt, even ſeizing on the Crown itſelf. He concluded, and perhaps he judged right, conſidering the Nature and Inclinations of this Sort of People, that the *Strelitzes* were at his Devotion to a Man, and ready to yield an implicit Obedience to whatever Commands he ſhould give them, ſome out of Gratitude for his having indulged them ſo long in plundering the City.

The Cruelty and Ambition of *Couvanſki*.

* In this ſpacious Building which has three large Gates in the Front; and the Church ſtanding in the Middle of the Square; the Czars have fine Apartments. The Abbot is ſo rich that he has ſixty thouſand Peaſants dependant upon him, beſides Maſſes, from whence great Profits are derived.

City, and others in hopes of making their Fortunes by a Revolution. He likewiſe endeavoured to raiſe in them a Contempt for both the Czars, for *John* on Account of his Infirmities, and for *Peter* on Account of his Youth, who, he ſaid, in all likelyhood, as he grew up, might be ſubject to his Brother's Diſtempers; and therefore there was no Proſpect of ſeeing a Prince on the Throne, who would have any Merit or Courage of his own, and conſequently not know how to encourage or reward them in others. He determined, in ſhort, to puſh his Fortunes, and thinking he ſhould be the better able to accompliſh his Deſigns, if he could make an Alliance with the *Czarian* Family, he propoſed a Marriage between his Son and the Princeſs *Catharine*, younger Siſter to the Princeſs *Sophia*; but this was looked upon as the Height of Inſolence and Preſumption. The Princeſs *Sophia* knew very well that ſuch an Alliance would not only endanger the Safety of the young Czars, but that her own Authority had more to fear from the Ambition of *Couvanſki* than from any of thoſe *Boyars* and great Men ſhe had already cauſed to be murdered, ſhe therefore thought it high Time he ſhould be diſpatched, and reſolved to have him puniſhed for all his Crimes at once, even thoſe which ſhe had conſented to herſelf. The more eaſily to get him within her Power, the Court came to a Reſolution of celebrating, in the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, the Feaſt of St. *Catharine*, whoſe Name the Princeſs bore, whom *Couvanſki* had caſt his Eyes upon for the Conſort of his Son, and by whom he flattered himſelf with vain 1683

1683 Hopes of fixing the Imperial Crown of *Ruſſia* in his own Family.

The Princeſs *Sophia* ordered Notice to be given every where of the intended Feaſt, and all the *Boyars* to be invited to Court, particularly the *Boyar Couvanſki*, who yet continued his Cruelties at *Moſcow*, which the Princeſs very artfully ſeemed to approve of. In the mean Time, ſhe and her Favourite Prince *Galliczin* had laid a Plot to rid themſelves of this bold Aſpirer to the Throne, and no Time was loſt in putting it in Execution; for two hundred Horſemen were immediately ordered to way-lay him in the Road to the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, who ſeized on him, according to their Inſtructions, and carried him into a Houſe, that was at Hand, where his Sentence was read to him, without any Manner of Examination or Delay, and both his own and his Son's Heads taken off at the ſame Inſtant.

The Puniſhment of *Couvanſki.*

When the *Strelitzes* firſt heard of this, they were all ſtruck Speechleſs with Aſtoniſhment, but ſoon recovering out of their Surprize, they grew enraged and furious, running up and down, and in every Place exclaiming againſt the Government, who had deprived them of their Chief, and Father, as they were pleaſed to call him: They proteſted ſolemnly and unanimouſly, that they would take Vengeance on his Murderers, and all their Adherents, of what Degree or Quality ſoever. They inſtantly poſſeſſed themſelves of the Arſenals and Ammunition, and ſeemed to threaten a general Deſtruction. The Court, perceiving the Danger the State was in, raiſed the other Forces, who always bore an implacable Hatred to the *Strelitzes*,

litzes, and commanded all the *German* Officers to repair immediately to the *Troitſky* Monaſtery. Every one readily obey'd his Orders, leaving their Wives and Children, to ſerve their Princes; nor was any Man deterr'd from doing his Duty, notwithſtanding they had great Reaſon to fear, their Families would be ill uſed by the *Strelitzes*, for their giving this Proof of their Loyalty. The *Germans* dwelt in the Suburbs of *Moſcow*, whither the *Strelitzes* immediately ran, in their Fury, reſolving to butcher all they met with; but were reſtrained by ſome of the oldeſt among them, who, very prudently, repreſented to them, that if they ſhould put the *Germans* Wives to the Sword, their Huſbands, as ſoon as they had drawn their Troops together, would think of nothing but Revenge. The *German* Officers, notwithſtanding they were, for the moſt Part, raiſed from private Centinels, were by much the better Soldiers; for the *Strelitzes*, tho' at all Times ripe for Civil Diſorders, were but a rude undiſciplined Mob, and little able to ſtand againſt any regular Force; and their Hearts now ſinking, ſeeing themſelves without a Leader, they began to make Offers to obtain Peace, which they found the Court readily diſpoſed to grant, having little Inclination to go into a new Broil. So the *Strelitzes*, firſt killing their Colonels and other Officers, ſent Meſſengers to Court to implore for Pardon, which they obtained without any great Difficulty. The Czars came immediately to *Moſcow*, accompanied by the Nobility and *German* Officers: And the *Strelitzes* meeting them, proſtrated themſelves upon the Ground, and begg'd for Mercy: The Czars ma-

1683

1684

1684 making a Sign that they forgave them, the Penitent Soldiers, raiſing themſelves up, conducted them to their Palace, pouring forth Tears of Joy, to ſee their Sovereigns returned to their Capital in ſo mild a Diſpoſition.

The ſame Day Prince *Baſil Baſilerwick Galliczin* was created Grand Chancellor, and *Wrenimienk*, or Temporary Miniſter of State; that is, Adminiſtrator of the Empire during a limited Time; in which Poſt never any Man in that Country, before him, governed with ſo great Authority. He was, without Diſpute, one of the ableſt, and moſt polite Men in *Muſcovy*, which he nobly deſigned ſhould make as good a Figure as the reſt of *Europe*. He underſtood the *Latin* Tongue well, and was pleaſed with the Company of Foreigners, as he was at all Times agreeable to them, being the only Man of Quality who would entertain, without forcing his Company to drink to Exceſs: Brandy, the Liquor which flowed at every other Table, was ſeldom ſeen at his, who never drank any himſelf, but took much Delight in rational and ingenious Converſation.

The Character of Prince *Galliczin*.

He had little Value for inſignificant Men of great Birth, regarding only Merit, and preferred none but thoſe he thought worthy of the Poſts they were to fill, and ſuch as he believed would be faithful to him, beſtowing thus moſt of the principal Offices of State without conſulting the Intereſts of particular great Families, he drew on himſelf the Hatred of many; but that did not hinder him from exerting his Authority, and ordering every Thing for his own Advantage and that of his Country, which by his prudent Adminiſtration, began to make a Fi-

Figure among other Nations. He adviſed, at this Time, a general Peace with *Sweden*, whoſe Ambaſſadors being preſent at *Moſcow*, had all their Demands granted. Some Time after the Concluſion of this Treaty, the *Imperialiſts* and *Poles* being engaged in a War with the *Turks*, the firſt endeavoured to get the *Muſcovites* to make a League with them, but their Embaſſy came to nothing. The *Poles* took Occaſion to propoſe a general Peace, at the ſame Time, and to get the *Muſcovites* on their Side, to which End they ſent an Embaſſy to *Moſcow*, where, after divers Conferences, they came to an Accommodation; the *Poles* gave up their Pretenſions to the *Ukrain*, the Dutchy of *Smolenſko*, and other Territories conquered by the *Muſcovites*, and the Czars obliged themſelves to make War upon the *Precops*, and oppoſe their Incurſions into *Poland*. 1684 1685

The *Muſcovites*, upon this, ſent Ambaſſadors to all the Courts of *Chriſtendom*, to animate them to a general League againſt the *Turks*; and they themſelves prepared to take the Field, and enter the *Crim*. Prince *Gallicin* named ſeveral Lords, as fit for the Command of General in this Expedition; but was told, on all Hands, that no one could be ſo capable to undertake it as himſelf. This was an Honour he would very willingly have been excuſed from accepting of, judiciouſly ſuppoſing that he ſhould find great Difficulties in the Enterprize, and that all the ill Succeſs would be laid at his Door, notwithſtanding he took the moſt Precaution imaginable; and knowing that the Army he was to command, tho' formidable in Numbers, yet was only a Multi- 1686

An Expedition into the *Crim* reſolved upon.

1686 tude of raw and undiſciplin'd Peaſants, with whom he could never undertake any daring Action to come off with Honour. The Prince too, being a greater Stateſman than Soldier, foreſaw that his Abſence might be more prejudicial than the Conqueſt of the *Crim* could be of Advantage or Glory to him, eſpecially as his commanding the Army could not raiſe him higher or give him more Sway in the Government: He ſaw beſides, that thoſe who inſiſted moſt on his taking this Charge did it only out of Jealouſy, and on purpoſe to ruin him, under the ſpecious Pretence of honouring him with the Title of *Generaliſſimo*, to which Poſt he was preferred by the Votes of a Majority of the *Boyars*.

An Account of the *Crim*. The *Crim* is a very fruitful Country, almoſt an Iſland, encompaſſed partly by the Waters of the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea*, and partly by thoſe of the *Palus Mæotis*. The *Tartars* of this Country, who are likewiſe poſſeſſed of a fine Tract of Land more toward the North, and Weſtward toward the *Neiper*, have for many Ages been in ſtrict Alliance with, or rather under the Dominion of, the Grand Signior, and tho' the *Cham* has the Title of Emperor among his own Subjects, yet is he little better than a Slave to the *Ottoman Porte*; but as much as they are Vaſſals themſelves, they had formerly ſubdued the *Muſcovites* ſo far as to oblige them to pay an annual Tribute to them, and had inſerted in the Articles of Peace theſe diſgraceful Terms, That the *Czar* ſhould hold the Stirrup of their *Cham*, and feed his Horſe with Oats out of his Cap, if they ſhould chance at any Time to meet.

T

The *Muſcovites* determining to ſend a numerous Army into this Country, and having provided Generals for all the Forces of *White-Ruſſia*, and the *Coſſacks* with their *Hettman*; the next Conſideration was how to raiſe Proviſions and Ammunition for them; to which End, every Houſe in this vaſt Empire was taxed at a *Rouble* * each, which amounted to an immenſe Sum. Prince *Galliczin*, having obtained the Favour of the Princeſs of making his Son Collegue with him in the Chancellorſhip, ſet out to join the Army. 1686 1687

The general Rendezvous was appointed in the *Ukrain*, in the Country of thoſe *Coſſacks* who are independent of the *Hettman*, and were commanded by *Polkowniks* or Colonels. The Forces of *Moſcow* were quartered at *Arteek*; thoſe of *Novogorod* at *Auſki*; thoſe of *Caſan* at *Rouplauſki*; thoſe of *Serene* at *Kraſtenakouſt*; and thoſe of *Belgorod*, who were to remain on the Frontiers, were poſted at *Belgorod*. The *Hettman* drew together his Troops at *Cartlich*, and, on the firſt of *May* 1687, they muſtered and took the Field with an Army of 300,000 Foot, and 100,000 Horſe, with which having no Succeſs, and not being able to paſs farther than *Kerchekeſa*, on Account of a Drought, which was ſo great that for 50 Leagues round they were informed the Sun had burnt up the Graſs, ſo that there was no Poſſibility of proceeding for want of Forage, they returned to the River *Samare*, and from thence to the *Marle*, where they waited for Orders from *Moſcow* to diſband their Army: But

* A *Rouble* is 100 *Ruſs Copecks*, worth about a Halfpenny *Engliſh* each.

1687 Prince *Galliczin*, to excuſe himſelf, threw all the Blame of this Miſcarriage upon the *Hettman*, *Juan Samuelerrick*, and accordingly wrote to Court for Orders to depoſe him, and chuſe another in his Place. The Order being come, *Galliczin* cauſed the *Hettman* to be ſeized at Midnight, by thoſe very *Strelitzes* which he had deſired for his Guard, being diſtruſtful of the *Coſſacks:* He was carried bound in Cords to a Place within the main Body of the Army, called *Chatra*, that is to ſay, the Tent of Juſtice, which in all the *Ruſſian* Armies is conſtantly pitched in the General's Quarters. In the Morning Prince *Galliczin* ſummoned all the Officers and Noblemen to attend him. The *Boyar* Generals took their Seats, and the unfortunate *Hettman* was brought before them; the Emperor's Order was firſt read to him, then they confronted him with the principal *Coſſacks*, who were taught their Leſſons, and accuſed him of holding Intelligence with the *Cham*, and directing him privately to burn up all the Forage. The poor General found his Fortune quickly changed, and he, who had been the Day before among the Rank of Princes, inſtead of *Vielmozny*, or moſt Puiſſant, was now ſaluted by the Name of *Scourwecin*, or Son of a Whore; nay, his own Servants loſt all Reſpect to him, and one of his Colonels named *Dimitrouki*, drew out his Sabre to kill him; but *Galliczin* prevented the Blow, and told him, the *Hettman* was brought there to be tried judicially, and not to be butchered. This Council of War being broke up, and the *Hettman* put under a ſtrong Guard, a Courier was diſpatched to *Levanti Romanorrick*,

The *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks* depoſed.

rick, General of the Forces of *Serene*, with Or- 1687
ders to ſecure the *Hettman*'s Son, who had been
ſent thither ſome Time before with a Detach-
ment of Men; but ſome faithful *Coſſacks* got to
him Time enough, to give him Notice to ſave
himſelf. *Romanorrick* could not eaſily come at
him, for he kept with his Troops perpetually
as far off as he could; but the principal *Coſ-*
ſacks being acquainted with the Order to ſeize
their Leader, the *Compachiks*, or Cavalry, agreed
to deliver him up; the *Sardouchiks*, or Infan-
try, encompaſſed his Tent, and would not per-
mit him to be taken at firſt; but they ſuffered
themſelves to be prevailed on at Length, and
ſo with a general Conſent the *Hettman*'s Son
was put into *Romanorrick*'s Hands, who, being
pleaſed with this Opportunity of repairing his
Credit, which he had very much hurt in a
late Skirmiſh with *Sultan Naradin* near *Kamiſ-*
ton upon the *Nieper*, returned with his Priſoner
to the Army.

While they were thus making ſure of the
Son, the *Boyar Generals* conſulted how to pu-
niſh the Father, and ſet up another *Hettman*.
Samuelerrick was ſent into *Siberia*, and the *Coſ-*
ſacks choſe one *Mazeppa*, *Piſtazy* or Secretary
of State, and proclaimed him *Hettman*: Of this
Mazeppa, Monſieur *de Voltaire*, in his Life of
Charles XII. of *Sweden*, gives the following
Account. " He was a *Poliſh* Gentleman, born
" in the Palatinate of *Podolia*, and had been
" brought up as one of the Pages of the King
" (*John Caſimir*) in whoſe Court he had got
" ſome Taſte of the *Belles Lettres*; but having,
" in his Youth, an Intrigue with the Wife of
" a *Poliſh* Gentleman, and being diſcovered,
" the

Another choſe in his Room.

1687 " the Huſband cauſed him to be ſeverely
" ſcourged, and afterwards tied naked on a
" wild, ungovernable Horſe, which was turn-
" ed looſe to go whereſoever it would. The
" Horſe being brought out of the *Ukrain*, re-
" turned thither, and carried *Mazeppa* with
" him, half dead with Fatigue and Hunger.
" Some Country-men gave him Succour, with
" whom he continued a long Time, and ſig-
" nalized himſelf on many Occaſions againſt
" the *Tartars*. The Superiority of his Un-
" derſtanding made him much regarded a-
" mong the *Coſſacks*; and his Reputation in-
" creaſing daily obliged the Czar to make
" him Prince of *Ukrania*.

Altho' Prince *Galliczin* thus ſucceeded in his Deſign, yet a great Party of *Coſſacks*, who were not invited to the Election, expreſſed their Diſlike of it; ſome Towns revolted, and ſome of the Colonels Houſes were pillaged in their Abſence: The new *Hettman*, being willing to quell theſe Diſorders, deſired ſome Troops of Prince *Galliczin*, who ordered Three Thouſand Foot of the Forces of *Smolenſko*, and a Thouſand Horſe to attend him to *Baturin*, the uſual Reſidence of the *Hettmans*.

Their Czarian Majeſties Order to diſband the Army ſoon arriving, with a Letter, it was read in the Preſence of all the Officers, who, after having done nothing, were very well pleaſed, tho' ſome of them almoſt aſhamed, to hear themſelves thanked for their good Services. Every General had a Gold Medal given him, with the two Czars Effigies on one Side, and the Princeſs on the other, faſtened

to

o a Chain of Gold, the whole worth about 1687
en Ducats; every Colonel had a Medal without
a Chain worth a Ducat; every Lieutenant Co-
lonel and Major, one of half a Ducat, and
every Soldier and *Strelitz* had a Copeck of
Gold, of about twenty five Pence Value.
Prince *Galliczin*, by Means of theſe Preſents,
which he obtained from the Czars, or rather
from the Princeſs, appeaſed the Murmurs that
were raiſed throughout the Army againſt him.
He likewiſe gained the chief Nobility, by be-
ſtowing Employments upon them that reim-
burſed their Expences; in ſo much that at his
Arrival at *Moſcow*, he found very few againſt
him; he was received by the Princeſs with all
the Marks of Favour he could wiſh, and took
the Management of the State upon him, with
as much Authority as ever.

In the mean Time the Friends and Relations of 1688
the Czar *Peter*, being apprehenſive of the Deſigns
of the Princeſs and this great Favourite, were con-
certing Meaſures how to counterplot them; but
finding they wanted ſufficient Power, they en-
gaged on their Side another Prince *Galliczin*,
Couſin to this, but who was deſpiſed by him
for his Drunkenneſs and Debauchery, and ſo
managed Matters that in a ſhort Time they
made him the young *Czar*'s Favourite. This
was that Prince *Borice Galliczin*, who firſt
carried *Peter* to the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, in the
Time of *Couvanſki*'s Rebellion, and who, for
that Reaſon perhaps, was the more readily re-
ceived into his Favour. When they had ac-
compliſhed this, the next Buſineſs was, under
Pretence of doing Honour to the great *Galliczin*,
to endeavour to oblige him to take upon him
the

1688 the Command of the Army a ſecond Time; but he perceiving, that *Peter*'s Party gathered Strength every Day, and thinking it might ſtill increaſe by his Abſence, uſed all the Means he could, under-hand, to get the Command beſtowed on ſome other: This he found impracticable, and ſo frankly offered himſelf, judging rightly, that it would be more to his Honour to propoſe it voluntarily than to ſtay till it ſhould be forced upon him; and againſt the opening of this Campaign he took ſuch Meaſures as he thought might make it more proſperous than the laſt. Having obtained whatever he pleaſed to demand, it was reſolved the Army ſhould take the Field ſooner than they had done before, ſo all the Forces were ordered to be at their Place of Rendezvous on the

1689 firſt of *February* 1689. The Troops began to march from all Parts in *December*, except from *Siberia*, the People of which Province were excuſed from ſending any Soldiers on Account of the War they maintained againſt their Neighbours, the Inhabitants of *Great Tartary*.

A ſecond Expedition into the *Crim.*

The Preparations for this Campaign were much greater than for the laſt, but the Taxes were no higher, which was only one *Rouble* for every Houſe. The Troops were, for the moſt Part, commanded by the ſame Generals as in the Expedition in 1687. They did not lie long in their firſt Quarters, but were all ordered to march, before the Froſt was broke, beyond the River *Marle*, which was prudently done, becauſe, when the Thaw happens, great Inundations are always made by the ſeveral Rivers they were obliged to croſs. The Foot encamped on the other Side the River at the

En-

Entrance of a Wood; the Cavalry was poſted in the Towns ſituated on the Banks. Prince *Galliczin*, being arrived, pitched his Tent on the fartheſt Side of the River, on the firſt of *April*, the Generals did the ſame; and on the 6th they marched towards the *Samare*, where all the Forces joined. 1689

The *Hettman Mazeppa* being come to the ſame Place, on the thirteenth they all paſſed the River without Delay, and, in a Month's Time, advanced as far as *Precop*. Every Soldier carrying with him four Months Proviſions, their Baggage hindered them from making long Marches in a Day, which were likewiſe much retarded by their Artillery, conſiſting of 700 Pieces of Cannon, and many Mortars. In their Way thither, at *Kairka*, upon the *Boryſthenes*, a Party having taken ſome *Tartars*, they learned that the *Cham* was not at *Precop*, but at *Bondgiac*, and had not the leaſt Suſpicion of ſo formidable an Army coming upon him. On *May* the 13th they had Word brought, by their Scouts, that the Enemy was at Hand, upon which they put themſelves in order to receive them; the Baggage, guarded by the Foot and the Artillery, marched on the Right, the Horſe were poſted on the Left of every Diviſion. The Forces of *Moſcow*, headed by Prince *Galliczin*, kept in the Middle, the Forces of *Novogorod* moved on the Right, the *Hettman* on the Left; and on the *Hettman*'s Left was *Dolga Kourka* and *Cherremittau*, who commanded the Forces of *Belgorod*; and *Romanorrick* made up the Rear. The *Tartars* charged the Vanguard of *Schein*, from thence, after ſome Skirmiſhes, they wheeled on a ſudden from right to left,

and

1689 and fell upon *Cherremittau*'s Forces, who being over-powered, were quickly put to the Rout: The Horſe fled, and the Enemy ran to the Baggage, which they had like to have carried off; but Prince *Galliczin* immediately ſending Succours to *Cherremittau*, the *Tartars* were forced to retire, and leave the *Ruſſians* a free Paſſage till they got to *Thorna d'Oliva*, where they encamped for the Convenience of Water, the Place being Marſhy, and five Leagues diſtant from *Precop*. A ſmall Body of *Tartars*, under Sultan *Garka*, advanced to diſcover their Enemies March; and, that they might learn wherein the Strength or Weakneſs of the Army lay, took ſeveral Priſoners, from whom they drew what Information they wanted. They afterwards carried them to the *Cham*, who then lay encamped at *Kalanſchek*, a little River about two Leagues from *Precop*, which runs into the *Palus Mæotis*; for, an Account being brought him that the *Muſcovites* had invaded the *Crim*, he was come from *Bondgiac*, with 4000 Horſe, to defend his Territories. On the 16th the Army decamp'd, and moved to *Zelona Dolina*, a League from *Thorna*; hither came the *Cham*, to meet the *Muſcovites*, with all his Forces, which amounted to thirty or forty thouſand Horſe, marching in ſeveral little Diviſions, and having inſenſibly ſurrounded the *Ruſſians*, they were obliged to halt.

The two Armies gazed upon one another for ſome Time without attempting any Thing, tho' certainly the *Muſcovites* ought to have began the Fight, but they were glad to keep themſelves out of Harm, fenced in with ſtrong Palliſadoes, which they had brought in their Wag-

Waggons. The Foot and Artillery defended his Camp ſo ſtrenuouſly, that the *Tartars*, could not break into it. The Horſe were not intrenched, which invited three or four Detachments of *Tartars*, of 1000 Horſe each, to charge them: They were no ſooner attacked but they fell into Diſorder; however they made their Baggage ſerviceable to them, for from hence the Cannon and ſmall Shot galled the *Tartars*, and laid three or four hundred of them upon the Ground, and with them ſeveral *Muſcovites*. On the other Side Sultan *Naradin*, with his Troops, charged the *Coſſacks* of *Sont* and *Akrerko*, who were commanded by *Emilian*, the *Dominidiak*, or *Ruſſian* Secretary of State; this Gentleman knew very litttle of the Art of War, and was ſo frightened, that he could not ſtand before the *Tartars*, who breaking in among the Baggage, and killing the Horſes, prevented the *Muſcovites* from drawing off their Waggons; they pierced in as far as the Center of thoſe Waggons, and carried off twenty Pieces of Cannon, which they found mounted upon Carriages, and Horſes harneſſed to them. In ſhort, if the *Boyar Kouka* had not advanced with his Troops, the *Coſſacks* had been entirely cut off. *Cherremittau* was attacked at the ſame Time by another Body of *Tartars*, who broke in as far as his Baggage, but he defended himſelf much better than *Emilian*, and forced the *Tartars* to retire. In theſe Skirmiſhes the *Tartars* being repulſed, tho' the Advantage and ſome Plunder fell to them, the *Muſcovites* moved forwards to get to ſome freſh Water; ſo the next Day they marched to *Kalanſchek*; the Cavalry were ordered to mix- 1689

1689. mix with the Waggons and Carriages, and all the Army, which till then had been divided, joined into one Body, and made a Square Figure, the Baggage was ſurrounded with the Cannon and Infantry, who carried their Palliſadoes upon their Shoulders to be the readier in planting them. The *Tartars* appeared again, while they were in this March; but having viewed the Army on all Sides, and finding the Horſe had ſecured themſelves, they forbore Action, and were content to keep the *Muſcovites* in Fear of them; but they ſoon withdrew, and went to defend *Precop*, which they thought would be attempted by the numerous Army of the *Muſcovites*, who that Day encamped at *Halanſchek*, and the next paſſed the River, where finding no *Tartars*, ſeveral of them were encouraged to leave the Baggage, and aſcend the Hill to diſcover *Precop*, which appeared to be all in Flames, for the *Tartars* had ſet Fire to the Suburbs leſt the *Muſcovites* ſhould have taken Poſſeſſion of them.

On the 16th they marched ſtraight on to *Precop*, and ſat down within Cannon Shot of the Town, having the *Black-Sea* on their right, and the Deſart on the left: They made no Shot from the Town, becauſe it was too far to do Execution, but they fired inceſſantly from a Tower that ſtood on the Shore of the *Black-Sea*. The *Muſcovites* thought of attacking the Town in the Night, but were ſtrangely ſurprized to receive Orders, in the Evening, to return: which was occaſioned by a ſudden Treaty ſet on Foot, by the following Accident.

The

1689.

The Army being encamped pretty near the Town, the *Nogays* and *Calmuck Tartars*, Subjects of *Muſcovy*, ſkirmiſhing often with the *Precopians*, a *Nogay*, who ſerved the *Cham*, ſaw by chance, a *Muſcovite* of his Acquaintance, and calling out to him, What do we contend for, ſaid he, there would be no Occaſion to fight if your *Boyar* would make Peace with our *Cham?* The *Muſcovite* replied, that if the *Boyar Galliczin* believed the *Cham* was that Way inclined, he might perhaps come into Meaſures with him: But if the *Cham* really deſired Peace, he ought to ſend and treat about it. Well, ſaid the *Precopian Nogay*, do you break the Matter to your General, and you may venture to aſſure him, that the *Cham* is willing to come to Terms. The *Muſcovite* went immediately to Prince *Galliczin*'s Tent, and having procured an Audience from him, acquainted him with all that had happened, and all the Diſcouſe that paſſed between him and the *Tartars*. The Prince, liking the Motion, cauſed a Letter to be wrote, in the Name of this *Muſcovite* to the *Precopian Nogay*, to this Purpoſe: *I have related to the General, Prince* Galliczin, *what paſſed between us; he is content to come to an Accommodation; it lies upon you to get ſome Perſon to be ſent to him with the* Cham's *Propoſals*. This Letter, being delivered to the firſt *Tartar* that appeared, was carried to the *Cham*, who having read it, ſent to aſk Prince *Galliczin* if it was wrote by his Order, and being anſwered that it was; he ſent a principal Perſon, *Suilech Murza*, and the *Muſcovites* ſent a Boyar, named *Eſmeyan*, in exchange for Hoſtages. In this Treaty, the *Muſcovites*

1689. propoſed the five following Conditions: That all the *Ruſſian* Slaves ſhould be reſtored. That the *Tartars* ſhould make no more Inroads into the Czars Dominions. That they ſhould quit their Claim to 80,000 *Roubles*, annually due to them from *Muſcovy*. That they ſhould not moleſt the *Poles*, nor aſſiſt the *Turks*. The *Murza* gave ſome Hopes of an Agreement, and ſpun out the Conference to keep them in Suſpence till next Day, well knowing ſo great a Multitude could not long ſubſiſt where they were without Forage and Water: But the next Day he anſwered, that the *Cham* would accept of Peace, on no other Terms than thoſe he was already engaged in with the Czars: That he inſiſted upon the Payment of the yearly Tribute, and expected to be paid 240,000 *Roubles*, that were in Arrear for the three laſt Years.

Prince *Galliczin* did by no Means like this Anſwer, he had loſt the Opportunity of forcing them to his own Terms, for his Army were no longer able to lie encamped on the ſandy Plain, and ſo he was forced to retreat; but, for fear of being purſued, he took the *Murza* along with him as far as *Ralanſchek*, and from thence ſent him back, and received his own Hoſtage. Thus ended Prince *Galliczin*'s ſecond Campain in the *Crim*. It was ſaid by ſome of his Enemies, that he was prevailed upon to leave the Country by a large Preſent of Ducats of Gold, and that the *Tartars* ſent them to him in Barrels, but had defrauded him of a great Share of what was agreed upon, by putting a large Number of Counters among them.

Afte

After this, they marched for three Weeks together to reach the *Samare*; where leaving all the heavy Luggage behind them, they paſſed the River, and in ſix Days more got to the River *Marle*. In the Mean while Prince *Galliczin* diſpatched Couriers to the Czars, and to the King of *Poland*, boaſting that he had beaten the *Tartars*, and driven them into their own Country. The Princeſs *Sophia*, upon this News, ordered publick Rejoicings throughout the Kingdom, and, according to Cuſtom, ſent an *Akalnik* with a Letter of Thanks and Commendations to all the Army, and golden Ducats for Rewards: In Concluſion, Orders for diſbanding the Army being come, the Boyar *Valenſki* was left at the River *Samare* with about 5 or 6000 Men. This mighty Succeſs had the *Muſcovites* in two great Expeditions in the *Crim*; which far from gaining them any Honour or Profit, on the contrary produced the greateſt Damage, the Nation could, at that Time, have ſuffered, in the Ruin of their General, which happened ſoon after. 1689.

The Czar *Peter* married.

During the Abſence of Prince *Galliczin*, the principal Perſons in the Party that oppoſed him, had married the Czar *Peter*, who was then in the 18th Year of his Age, to a young Lady named *Ottokeſa Federowna*, Daughter of the Boyar *Feoder Abrahamowitz*; this bold Stroke, which was entirely againſt the Inclinations of the Princeſs *Sophia*, greatly increaſed the Party of the Czar *Peter*; all the young Men, whoſe Fathers followed the Princeſs, declared for *Peter*. *Galliczin*, at his Return, found all his Meaſures broken, by the Marriage of the young Czar, whoſe Wife was ſoon after with

1689. Child. His Enemies had likewiſe learned the Truth of all that paſſed in his inglorious Expedition to the *Crim*, and had rendered him ſo odious to the Czar *Peter*, that he was denied Audience by him, and could hardly, by the Princeſs's Interceſſion, be admitted to kiſs his Hand; he underwent ſevere Reproaches, and could not ſay any thing in Juſtification of his Conduct. This Affair had but juſt Time to ſubſide, when the Princeſs began to raiſe freſh Uneaſineſſes, by propoſing an unſeaſonable Piece of Liberality; ſhe had a Mind to diſtribute conſiderable Preſents among the *Boyars* in Recompenſe of the good Services that they had done the Empire: But the Czars, *Peter* eſpecially, oppoſed this, and would enquire firſt into the Merits of theſe pretended Services, that the Rewards might be proportionable to them. The Princeſs could bear no Reſtraint, but found Means to get the Czars to comply with her Deſires. Upon which, ſhe gave Prince *Galliczin* 1500 Peaſants Houſes in ſeveral Villages, to other Commanders in the Army 300, and to all the Officers in Proportion to their Stations. Theſe valuable Preſents were very unuſual in *Muſcovy*, the Cuſtom of the Czars having been only to give a royal Veſt to thoſe whom they had a Mind to do Honour to.

Prince *Galliczin* now began again to govern with the ſame Power as before, and being ſupported by the Princeſs, undertook a bold Adventure. From the Time that the *Hettman* had been under the *Muſcovite* Dominion, they had never entered *Moſcow*. *Galliczin*, upon the Pretence of doing Honour to the *Hettman* and

nd preſenting him to do Homage to the 1689
Czars, ſo ordered it, that *Mazeppa* was brought
nto the capital City, with 500 of his princi-
al Officers, but was never admitted into the
Czars Preſence. The Deſign of introducing
his Number of Men into *Moſcow*, was to
ſſiſt a Plot, that the Princeſs and *Galliczin*
ere then contriving together againſt the Life
f *Peter*. The Princeſs foreſaw that this Bro-
her, if not timely prevented, would be one
Day the Ruin of her Authority, and a Bar to
ll her ambitious Views. And ſhe had like-
viſe terrible Apprehenſions that not only her
Power would be abridged, but that ſhe ſhould
e forced to return to her Convent; theſe
Thoughts made her repent that ſhe had liſtened
o the moderate Counſels of *Galliczin*, and
aving perſuaded him, that himſelf, his Fami-
y, and all his Friends would be involved in
er Ruin, ſhe brought him to conſent to put
n Execution the cruel Scheme ſhe had formed
o ſecure herſelf and him, by the Death of her
rother.

Another Conſpiracy of the Princeſs *Sophia*.

All the Meaſures being taken that ſhe
Thought proper, ſhe was now reſolved to give
he Blow; and pitched upon *Theodore Theke-
vitau* to be her principal Inſtrument in the
nterprize. He was Preſident of the Cham-
er of *Strelitzes*, to which Dignity he had
een raiſed, on the Death of *Couvanſki*, by the
rinceſs's Favour, and, in return, now pro-
niſed a punctual Obedience to all her Com-
ands. The Czar *Peter* was, at this Time, at
ne of his Country Houſes, called *Obrogenſko*,
tuated upon the River *Yarus*, a ſhort League
om *Moſcow*. *Theodore* having drawn toge-

1689. Child. His Enemies had likewiſe learned the Truth of all that paſſed in his inglorious Expedition to the *Crim*, and had rendered him ſo odious to the Czar *Peter*, that he was denied Audience by him, and could hardly, by the Princeſs's Interceſſion, be admitted to kiſs his Hand; he underwent ſevere Reproaches, and could not ſay any thing in Juſtification of his Conduct. This Affair had but juſt Time to ſubſide, when the Princeſs began to raiſe freſh Uneaſineſſes, by propoſing an unſeaſonable Piece of Liberality; ſhe had a Mind to diſtribute conſiderable Preſents among the *Boyars* in Recompenſe of the good Services that they had done the Empire: But the Czars, *Peter* eſpecially, oppoſed this, and would enquire firſt into the Merits of theſe pretended Services that the Rewards might be proportionable to them. The Princeſs could bear no Reſtraint, but found Means to get the Czars to comply with her Deſires. Upon which, ſhe gave Prince *Galliczin* 1500 Peaſants Houſes in ſeveral Villages, to other Commanders in the Army 300, and to all the Officers in Proportion to their Stations. Theſe valuable Preſents were very unuſual in *Muſcovy*, the Cuſtom of the Czars having been only to give a royal Veſt to thoſe whom they had a Mind to do Honour to.

Prince *Galliczin* now began again to govern with the ſame Power as before, and being ſupported by the Princeſs, undertook a bold Adventure. From the Time that the *Hettman* had been under the *Muſcovite* Dominion, they had never entered *Moſcow*. *Galliczin*, upon the Pretence of doing Honour to the *Hettman*

and

nd preſenting him to do Homage to the 1689
Czars, ſo ordered it, that *Mazeppa* was brought
nto the capital City, with 500 of his princi-
al Officers, but was never admitted into the
Czars Preſence. The Deſign of introducing
his Number of Men into *Moſcow*, was to
ſſiſt a Plot, that the Princeſs and *Galliczin*
ere then contriving together againſt the Life
f *Peter*. The Princeſs foreſaw that this Bro-
her, if not timely prevented, would be one
Day the Ruin of her Authority, and a Bar to
ll her ambitious Views. And ſhe had like-
viſe terrible Apprehenſions that not only her
Power would be abridged, but that ſhe ſhould
e forced to return to her Convent; theſe
Thoughts made her repent that ſhe had liſtened
o the moderate Counſels of *Galliczin*, and
aving perſuaded him, that himſelf, his Fami-
y, and all his Friends would be involved in
er Ruin, ſhe brought him to conſent to put
n Execution the cruel Scheme ſhe had formed
o ſecure herſelf and him, by the Death of her
rother.

Another Conſpiracy of the Princeſs *Sophia*.

All the Meaſures being taken that ſhe
Thought proper, ſhe was now reſolved to give
he Blow; and pitched upon *Theodore Theke-
zvitau* to be her principal Inſtrument in the
Enterprize. He was Preſident of the Cham-
er of *Strelitzes*, to which Dignity he had
een raiſed, on the Death of *Couvanſki*, by the
rinceſs's Favour, and, in return, now pro-
niſed a punctual Obedience to all her Com-
nands. The Czar *Peter* was, at this Time, at
ne of his Country Houſes, called *Obrogenſko*,
tuated upon the River *Yarus*, a ſhort League
om *Moſcow*. *Theodore* having drawn toge-

1689

Timely discovered.

ther 600 *Strelitzes*, all Men to be relied on, as he thought, and putting himself at their Head, he commanded them to follow him to *Obrogenſko*; but whilſt he was giving Orders, two of the *Strelitzes*, ſhocked at the Thoughts of ſtaining their Hands with their Prince's Blood, ſtole off privately and ran with all Expedition to advertize the Czar *Peter* of the Danger he was in. He, jumping out of Bed in a great Conſternation, ſent for his Uncles, the *Naraſkins*, his Mother's Brothers, and conſulted with them in all Haſte what was to be done. It was reſolved to ſend immediately to the City to enquire into the Certainty of this Intelligence; one of the Czars Uncles, and the young Prince *Borice Galliczin*, the Czars Favourite, were diſpatched on this Buſineſs; in their Way thither they met *Thekelavitau* at the Head of his *Strelitzes*, they took care to conceal themſelves while theſe Soldiers paſſed by them, and then haſtened back to ſave the Czar. *Peter* had but juſt Time enough to get into his Coach with his Mother, his Wife and her Siſter; and being followed by ſome of his faithful Servants, he fled toward the *Troitſky* Monaſtery.

The Conſpirators, on their Arrival, ſearched every where for the Czar, but the *Strelitzes*, then on Duty at *Obrogenſko*, knowing nothing of the Deſign, and ſurprized at his ſudden Departure, told their Preſident that his Majeſty was gone out a little before with all the Speed imaginable.

This Diſappointment was no ſmall Concern to the Princeſs, every Body was aſtoniſhed, at *Moſcow*, with the News of the Czar's Flight, no

one

one could gueſs the Cauſe of it; but in the Evening it was known that he had ſent to the Princeſs to reproach her with her Treachery. She abſolutely deny'd the Matter, and proteſted that they were much deceived in taking thoſe for Conſpirators, who came only to relieve the Guard; and that ſhe was extremely wronged to be thought capable of harbouring ſo black a Crime in her Breaſt, as that of being acceſſary to the Death of her Brother. In the Mean Time this Excuſe of pretending to relieve the Guard, which was always done in the Day Time, was looked upon as a very weak one. The Czar *Peter*, being now ſafe in the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, wrote to all the Boyars to repair thither inſtantly; he likewiſe wrote to all the Gentry in every Town to raiſe the Militia; and having publiſhed *Thekelavitan*'s Attempt, he had, in 2 Weeks Time, a numerous Body of Noblemen and Gentlemen about him. He ſent Orders to *Galliczin* to attend him, but he excuſed himſelf on Pretence of being withheld by the Czar *John*. Notwithſtanding it was ſaid they had alſo a Deſign upon him, if their Plot had not miſcarried on *Peter*. 1689

The Princeſs did all ſhe could to get the *Strelitzes* on her Side, and having ordered ſome of them to be planted at the Foot of the Stairs, the Czar *John* and ſhe, coming from Maſs, ſtood at the Top of the Stairs, from whence the Czar ſpoke to them to this Effect: *My Brother is retired to the* Troitſky *Monaſtery, for what Reaſon I know not, doubtleſs he intends to diſturb the Peace of the State, and, as I am told, has commanded you to attend him; but we*

1689 *forbid you, upon Pain of Death, to obey his Orders.*

The Princeſs repeated the ſame Thing, but the *Strelitzes*, little heeding what either of them ſaid, marched directly to the Monaſtery, where they aſſured the Czar *Peter* of their Fidelity. The Princeſs ſeeing this, and that moſt of the Boyars had joined *Peter*, reſolved, if poſſible, to make her own Peace with him. In Order to which ſhe ſent two of his Aunts to him, his Father's Siſters; for, by the Example of Princeſs *Sophia*, ſeveral other of the Princeſſes of the *Czarian* Houſe had now left their Convents.

The Ladies, being come into the Preſence of the Czar, beſeeched him not to give Credit to thoſe Rumours which had ſo much alarmed Him. They aſſured him that there was ſome Miſunderſtanding in the Affair; that they were maliciouſly ſpread to make a Breach between him and his Siſter; and that he might return to *Moſcow* with great Safety. The Czar anſwered them, that he had not fled in a Pannick only; that there was an apparent Conſpiracy to murder himſelf, his Wife, his Mother and Uncle; and laid ſo many Circumſtances before them, that they could not deny the Truth of it. The Princeſſes, with Tears in their Eyes, avowed their own Innocence, appeared ſhock'd at the horrid Deſign, and ſaid they would never return to *Moſcow*, but live and die with him.

The Princeſs *Sophia*, hearing of the bad Succeſs of this Negotiation, and not knowing what Courſe to take, apply'd herſelf to the *Patriarch*, and ſo wrought upon him with her Tears and Intreaties, that the good Man of-

fered

fered himſelf for a Mediator: He went the ſame Day to the Czar *Peter*, and telling him his Errand, uſed all the ſtrongeſt Arguments he could think of to perſuade him to a Reconciliation with his Siſter: But he was ſtrangely ſurprized, when he underſtood that he himſelf was to have been taken off, and that the Abbot *Sylveſter*, who was in the Plot, if it had not miſcarried, was to have been made *Patriarch* in his Stead. This new Diſcovery was a great and ſhocking Surprize to him, he judged it might not be amiſs for him to remain in the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, till the Affair was clear'd up, and Things better ſettled; at the ſame Time he publiſhed a Proclamation to apprehend the Traitors. 1689

The Princeſs, now in a worſe Condition than ever, called her Creatures together, and conſulted what to do; it was reſolved that *Thekelavitau* ſhould be ſecured in the Palace, and that the Abbot *Sylveſter* ſhould be ſaved; and then ſhe herſelf, accompanied by Prince *Galliczin*, and the Reſt of her Friends, went towards the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, with Hopes of appeaſing her Brother, who had ſent a ſecond Order to the *Strelitzes*, to come thither with Speed, and bring the Traitors with them. She was not got above half Way, before a *Boyar* met her, by the Czar *Peter*'s Order, who told her ſhe muſt go back again, for ſhe would not be received; ſhe knew it would be dangerous to diſobey, and ſo returned, as ſhe was ordered, to *Moſcow*. The next Day, the *Strelitzes* and *Germans* appeared at the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, and the *Boyars* being met, it was reſolved to ſeize the Traitors wherever they could be found,

1689 A Colonel with three hundred Men, was ordered to execute this Reſolution, who immediately marched to the Imperial Palace at *Moſcow*, and there loudly demanded that *Fiska Thekelavitau* ſhould be delivered to him; for after his Treaſon was diſcovered, he was no longer called *Feodor*, but by his Diminutive, or Nick-Name, which among the *Muſcovites* is a Mark of Contempt. The Princeſs made ſome Reſiſtance at firſt, but ſeeing the Colonel reſolutely bent to take him, and conſidering the ill Conſequences of her interpoſing too far, ſhe delivered up *Fiska* and his Adherents. The Criminals, loaded with Chains, were carried to the *Troitsky*.

Prince *Galliczin*, at this Time, ſeeing himſelf on the Brink of Ruin, reſolved to go likewiſe to the Monaſtery in Hopes of preſerving himſelf by his Submiſſion; he took with him his Son, and ſeveral of the greateſt Men, who were his Friends; but when they came there, they found the Gates ſhut againſt them; and Orders given to ſome of the Guards to go back with *Galliczin* and his Followers, and not to ſuffer any of them to ſtir out of their Houſes.

As ſoon as *Thekelavitau*, or *Fiska*, as he was now called, was brought to the Monaſtery, he was convey'd into the great Hall, where the Czar had called together the *Boyars*, and there kept four Hours under Examination, from thence he was carry'd to a Tower in the Monaſtery, and had the * *Knout* given him. This Puniſh-

* M. De la Motraye gives the following Account of this Puniſhment: The *Knout*, ſaith he, is a Whip, the Laſh of which is made of the Skin of an old Aſs, boiled

Puniſhment is for the moſt Part executed by the Hands of the common Hangman, who is likewiſe called the *Knoutavoit* Maſter. The Criminal is faſtened to a ſtrong Man's Back, and there receives two or three hundred Laſhes, as the Judge appoints, on his bare Back, with a tough thick Thong, made of a wild Aſs's Hide, and faſtened to a Stick about two Feet and a half long like a Flail. The Executioner is ſo dexterous that he ſeldom hits twice in the ſame Place, but running a Step or two back, and then ſpringing forward, at every Stroke draws Blood or raiſes a Wheal as thick as one's Finger. 1689

Thekelavitau, after he had undergone a few of theſe Strokes, confeſſed, that he was to have

boiled in Vinegar and Mare's Milk, and is about an Inch Broad. The Patient ſtrips himſelf to his Waſte, taking off his Shirt, and leaves nothing on but his Breeches; or if a Woman, nothing but her Petticoat: This done he aſcends a Sort of Scaffold, where his Feet are faſtened to the Floor; his Hands are put over the Shoulders of a ſtrong Man, who with his Hands holds him faſt to his Breaſt, ſo that he cannot ſtir; then the Executioner advances three or four Steps, as if he was running till he comes within Reach of the Offender, and gives him his firſt Stroke on the Middle of his Back; then he retreats three or four Steps, and comes forward again, always with the ſame Quickneſs as at firſt, ſtriking ſometimes one Shoulder and ſometimes another, and always with ſuch Dexterity, that he never gives two Strokes, upon the ſame Place: He repeats this Motion as many Times as there are Blows ordered to be given by his Sentence, the Blood running in Abundance all this while from the Patient's Back. This is the moderate *Knout*. When the Sentence orders the *Knout* between the moderate and the ſevere, one may ſee ſmall Pieces of Fleſh taken off at every Stroke of the Executioner; when it is ordered to be given with the utmoſt Severity, it is often mortal; for then the Executioner ſtriking the Flanks under the Ribs, cuts the Fleſh to the very Bowels.

1689 have killed the Czar, his Mother, and her three Brothers. Upon this they carry'd him back to Priſon, from whence he wrote to the Czar *Peter*, and acquainted him at large with all the Particulars of the Conſpiracy; pleaded that he was over-perſuaded to their cruel Enterprize, and named the Perſons who put him upon it. The *Czar*, tho' fully ſatisfy'd of the Treaſon and Barbarity of his Siſter, would not publickly expoſe a Princeſs of the Blood; but it was with great Difficulty that young *Galliczin* could ſave the Prince, his Couſin, from being executed to the Diſhonour of his Family.

Several others, who were to have been the Aſſaſſins, were afterwards examined, to whom they gave the *Queſtion*, or extraordinary Torture, which is a Puniſhment more ſevere than the other. The Offenders had their Heads ſhaved, and being then ty'd faſt, boiling Water was pour'd Drop by Drop on their Skulls, which put them to ſuch exquiſite and intollerable Pain, that they immediately acknowledged their Crime, and diſcovered their Accomplices, as *Theodore*, or *Fiſka* had done: Two Days were ſpent in conſulting how to puniſh the Criminals. Prince *Galliczin*, with his Son and Friends, were condemned to Baniſhment, and He, being brought to the Palace, had his Sentence read to him aloud; which was to this Purpoſe: "That he was ordered by the Czar, "to go to *Karga*, a Town under the *Pole*, and "to remain there as long as he lived, in Diſ"grace with his Majeſty; who, of his great "Goodneſs, nevertheleſs, allowed him three "Pence a Day for his Subſiſtence; but that "his

The Diſgrace and Baniſhment of Prince *Galliczin*.

" his Juſtice had ordained all his Goods to be 1689
" forfeited to his Treaſury.

The miſerable Prince being conducted to the Place of his Exile; a Secretary was diſpatched to *Moſcow* to ſeize upon his Palace, and make an Inventory of all the Riches and Furniture to be found in it. Among other Things a Trunk was diſcovered buried in a Vault, wherein were no leſs than a hundred thouſand Ducats, which were ſuppoſed to be the Spoils of the depoſed *Hettman Juan Samuelkrrick*, whoſe Misfortunes we have before related. Beſides theſe there were four hundred Veſſels of Silver, weighing forty Pounds each, and other Moveables of great Value. The Ladies of the Prince and his Son were baniſhed with them, but were allowed to take with them no more than thirty *Roubles* among them all. *Thekelavitau* had his Head cut off the next Day; two *Strelitzes* who were to have been Aſſaſſins, ſuffered the ſame Puniſhment. The Colonel that commanded the Detachment was whip'd, had his Tongue cut out, and was ſent to end his Days in *Siberia*, with an Allowance of a Penny a Day; five other *Strelitzes* had their Tongues cut out, and were ſent into *Siberia*, likewiſe to kill Sables.

The Czar *Peter*, when theſe Executions were over, deſired the Princeſs to leave the Palace, and retire into a Monaſtery, which ſhe had built at *Dewitz*, a little Way out of Town, but ſhe ſhewing ſome Reluctance to this, he commanded the Preſident of the *Strelitzes* to conduct her thither, if not willingly, by Force, to ſet Guards upon all the Avenues, and ſuffer no Perſon to come to her. Two Days after this

1689 this the Czar *Peter* returned to *Moſcow*, and made his Entry on Horſeback, attended by 18,000 *Strelitzes* armed for his Guard. His Wife and Mother followed ſoon after in a Coach. The Czar *John* ſtood to receive his Brother, at the Steps entering into the Palace; they embraced; *Peter* aſked *John* to be Friends, who anſwering that he was ſo, they each retired to their ſeveral Apartments.

The End of the Princeſs *Sophia*'s Regency.

Thus ended the Regency of the Princeſs *Sophia*, who had governed the *Ruſſian* Empire for ſome Years, but through a boundleſs Ambition, aiming at getting the whole Power into her own Hands, which ſhe had held in the Name of her Brothers, ſhe loſt not only that Authority, which they would readily have allowed her, but her Liberty alſo, being from that Time kept in cloſe Confinement till the Day of her Death, which did not happen till the Year 1704, Fifteen Years after; during which Time ſome Commotions were raiſed in her Favour, as will be ſeen hereafter.

The End of the Firſt BOOK.

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* I. CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK II.

The CONTENTS.

The Riſe and Character of General Le Fort. *The Riſe and Character of Prince* Menzicoff. *A Deſcription of* Siberia. *The Siege of* Azoph. *The Death of the Czar* John. Peter *becomes ſole Monarch of* Ruſſia.

AS the Czar *Peter* ſeemed to be now ſettled alone in the Government, for tho' his elder Brother *John* continued Czar, yet his Name was little mentioned but in the Beginning of their publick Acts: It is not to be thought ſtrange that his own neareſt Relations

1689

tions ſhould endeavour to get ſome Share in the Adminiſtration of Affairs. *Naraſkin*, his Mother's Brother, found no Obſtacle to his ambitious Views, but the Favourite, young *Galliczin*, whom he could not very eaſily deſtroy, having himſelf been the greateſt Cauſe of his Advancement; however, *Peter*, at that Time, giving no Preſages of being that great Prince he afterwards appeared, taking Delight in very idle and cruel Diverſions, and having but little of the Politician in him, was wrought upon by *Naraskin*, to believe that his Favourite muſt needs have been concerned in ſome of the Enterprizes of his Couſin the Great *Galliczin*, as might be judged from his zealous Endeavours to prevent his Execution; but the Czar *Peter*, at firſt, ſeemed very unwilling to ſuſpect a Perſon, who had no leſs than three Times ſaved his Life: However *Naraſkin*, at length accompanied by his Daughter and Sons, with Tears in their Eyes, declared to *Peter*, that if he did not remove this Favourite, he might as well recall the Great *Galliczin* from Exile: He yielded to them at laſt, and promiſed to confine his Favourite to live upon his own Lands; but *Galliczin*, being advertized of the Matter, withdrew thither, before any ſuch Orders were ſent him.

Peter, when young, gave no great Expectations of being the great Prince he afterwards ſhewed himſelf.

As ſoon as the Czar heard of it, he ſent Courier after Courier to him, to know the Cauſe of his Retirement: To whom he only anſwered, that ſince his paſt Conduct could not convince his Majeſty of his Fidelity, he deſired no more than to be allowed to live there without ever coming to Court. The Czar was ſo ſenſibly touched with this, that

that he ſent two Boyars to viſit him, and a few Days after, being impatient to ſee him, ſent two others to deſire him to return, which he did accordingly, and was very much careſſed by the Czar. This Turn ſo much alarmed the *Naraſkins*, and their Party, that they endeavoured by all Means to be reconciled to him. For ſome Time he made as great a Figure at Court again as ever, conferring Favours on all his Friends. He ſo far followed the Maxims of his Couſin the great *Galliczin*, that he cauſed many Grandees to be diſgraced, and gave their Places to his own Creatures; but then they were not ſuch as the other preferred, Men of Worth and Abilities; but Drunkards and Debauchees like himſelf. The *Naraſkins* were ſtill ſecretly contriving how to undermine him, and at length ſo far prevailed as to bring the Czar into an Opinion, that if he was truſted with ſo much Power as the Place of the late *Galliczin*, which was deſigned for him, would give him, he might attempt to releaſe the Princeſs *Sophia*, and therefore it was beſtowed on *Naraſkin*, his Mother's Father. This Place had been kept in Commiſſion ever ſince the Baniſhment of Prince *Baſil Baſilerwick Galliczin*, and being thus diſpoſed of at a Time when it was leaſt expected, determined all Sorts of People to follow the Party of the *Naraskins*, who were ſoon put into Places of the greateſt Truſt, among the reſt, old *Naraskin*'s eldeſt ſon was made Great Chamberlain, and young *Galliczin* turned out of that Place, which ſo much incenſed him, that he could not forbear expreſſing his 1689

1689

Prince *Borice Galliczin* disgraced.

Reſentment with very great Raſhneſs, and charged the Czar with Weakneſs; his Enemies could not but rejoice at having ſo good a Handle to accuſe him; and did his Buſineſs ſo effectually, that he was ſhortly after baniſhed in a moſt ignominious Manner. The *Naraskins* now took upon them to govern with ſo much Pride and Arrogance, that moſt People began to deplore the Loſs of the Great *Galliczin*, who had formed many Schemes for the Welfare of the *Ruſſian* Empire, he had built one large College of Stone, in which he had placed twenty Doctors, he brought many Books into the Country, and adviſed many of the Boyars to give their Sons ſome Learning, a Thing very little underſtood in *Muſcovy* at that Time; he permitted Strangers to come in and go out of the Nation, which was before prohibited. All theſe Things were ſet at nought by the *Naraſkins*, who again forbad all Foreigners to come into *Muſcovy*, and were again reducing all things a Pace to their antient State of profound Ignorance, and brutiſh Tyranny; but a new Favourite, the young Czar *Peter*, ſoon after, made choice of, one *Le Fort*, began to make Arts and Sciences revive in *Muſcovy*; to him was owing the firſt Foundation of the true *Ruſſian* Grandeur, and from him the Czar imbibed ſuch Notions of Virtue and Propriety as made him afterwards one of the moſt illuſtrious Princes that ever reigned, and truly deſerving the Name of *Peter* the Great.

This

1689

The Birth and Riſe of General *Le Fort.*

This * *Le Fort* was a Gentleman of a reputable trading Family at *Geneva*, who, from his Childhood, had a ſtrong Inclination to all military Affairs, but, at the Deſire of his Father, who more approved of Trade, was bred up in the Compting Houſe of *M. Franconis*, an eminent Merchant in *Amſterdam*. With this Gentleman he behaved ſo well that he loved him like his own Child, and *Le Fort*, having a Deſire to ſee other Countries, prevailed upon him to let him go to *Copenhagen* in a Merchant Ship he was going to ſend thither. His Maſter entruſted him with the whole Cargo, and he diſcharged his Commiſſion with great Faithfulneſs and Advantage, even beyond what could be expected from one ſo young and ſo lately brought into Buſineſs.

At the Sight of the *Daniſh* Troops in this Warlike Country, his Love of Arms began to revive. He made an Acquaintance with ſeveral Officers in the King of *Denmark*'s Army, and was much loved and reſpected by them, on Account of his Inclinations to, and Readineſs in learning, all Kinds of military Exerciſes. At this Time an Ambaſſador from *Denmark* being going to the Court of *Moſcow*, *Le Fort*, ſtill deſirous of ſeeing other Countries, got a Recommendation to go in his Retinue; he ſoon made himſelf Maſter of the *Ruſſian* Language, and ſerved the Ambaſſador for an Interpreter, who, for his great Genius, excellent Qualities, and fine Perſon, had a moſt extraordinary Value for him.

* *Le Motraye.* Vol. III. Chap. III.

1690 The Ambaſſador, being a Perſon of great Merit, was highly eſteemed at *Moſcow*, by both the Czars, eſpecially by *Peter*, who frequently did him the Honour to eat at his Table, and there firſt took Notice of *Le Fort*; finding he ſpoke the Language of the Country well, he aſked him ſeveral Queſtions, and was ſo well pleaſed with all the Anſwers he made him, that he at laſt aſked him, if he was willing to enter into his Service? M. *Le Fort*, in the moſt reſpectful Manner, reply'd, that whatever Ambition he might have to ſerve ſo great a Monarch, yet the Duty and Gratitude he owed to his Maſter, would not allow him to promiſe any thing without his Conſent. Well, ſaid the Czar, *I will aſk the Conſent of your Maſter*; But, I hope, ſaid *Le Fort*, your Majeſty will have the Goodneſs to make uſe of any other Interpreter than myſelf to aſk that Queſtion. The Czar, by one of his own Interpreters, taking Notice that *Le Fort* ſpoke good *Ruſſian*, the Ambaſſador anſwered, that he had a Genius to learn any Thing; when he came to me, about four Months ago, ſaid he, he ſpoke the *German* but ill, I have only two Perſons in my Train that ſpeak the *German*, and he now ſpeaks it as well as either of them; he did not know one Word of the *Sclavonian*, continued he, when he firſt came into *Courland*, and yet your Majeſty your ſelf ſays, he ſpeaks good *Ruſſian*. Young *Le Fort*, when he firſt heard the Commendations the Ambaſſador gave him, withdrew to a diſtant Part of the Room, which modeſt Behaviour did not a little increaſe the Czar's good Opi-

nion

nion of him, who ſoon after called to him to bring him a Glaſs of Wine; no more was ſaid on this Subject that Day; but the next Time the Ambaſſador came to Court, the Czar told him he had a Deſire to have *Le Fort* about him, and aſked if he would part with him: The Ambaſſador reply'd, that the Exchange was too advantageous to *Le Fort*, that he wiſhed him too well, and had too great a Regard to the Commands of his Majeſty, not to conſent to it. 1690

Le Fort, by the Czar's Order, went to him the next Day, was made his firſt Interpreter, and ſoon became ſo great a Favourite, that he was carried with him wherever he went. The Czar took Pleaſure in talking to him about the Courts he had ſeen, as *Savoy*, *France*, and *Denmark*: And diſcourſing one Day, among other foreign Affairs, of the King of *Denmark*'s Guards, he aſked him what he thought of his? which were the *Strelitzes* at that Time; and bad him ſpeak his Mind freely. He anſwered, that he thought the ſame of them as of all his Soldiers, that they were fine well made Men, who wanted only to be well diſciplined and properly cloathed; that the long Coats they wore were not at all becoming to Soldiers, but muſt needs be inconvenient and troubleſome. The Czar expreſſing a Deſire to ſee ſome that were more commodious, *Le Fort*, without looſing any Time, went to the *Daniſh* Ambaſſador's Taylor, and made him take Meaſure of him for a Suit of Cloaths for a Captain of the Guards, and another for a common Man; and two Days after appeared in the firſt at the

1690 Czar's Levee, who was ſurprized at his coming into his Chamber, and did not know him till he ſpoke to him; but, when he did, was much pleaſed with the Dreſs, and greatly commended his Diligence. Two Days after that, he appeared in the other Suit, with both which the Czar was ſo well pleaſed that he ordered the ſame Cloathing for a whole Company, who ſhould be diſciplined, he ſaid, after the Manner which *Le Fort* had mentioned of other Courts.

M. *Le Fort* ſent to all the Merchants of different Nations ſettled at *Moſcow*, and went to ſome himſelf, for all Things neceſſary to cloath this Company; taking all the Taylors he could find at the Ambaſſadors Houſes, and thoſe who ſerved the Merchants, he deſired an Order from the Czar to have Meaſure taken of thoſe among the *Strelitzes* who were of the beſt Shape and Stature. He then gathered a Number of Officers and other Strangers together, who had ſome Knowledge in the Military Exerciſe, and were willing to enter into the Czar's Service, or were already engaged in it; and had them cloathed according to the Poſts that were given them: At length he compleated and cloathed a Company of fifty Men, and, putting himſelf at their Head, marched, with Drums beating, before the Palace Gate, a little before the Time that the Guard of *Strelitzes* uſed to meet there. The Czar coming to the Window, was much ſurprized, but highly pleaſed with the Spectacle: *Le Fort* gave them here their firſt Leſſon of Military Exerciſe, in the Preſence of that Prince, who came down from his Chamber as ſoon as

it began, and when it was over, he ſaid, he would enter into the Company and learn the Exerciſe himſelf, whereupon he ordered a Suit of Cloaths to be made for him, as a common Centinel. *Peter*, altho' he condeſcended to wear this mean Habit, was not diſpleaſed, (as the late Czar *Theodore*, his Brother, had loved and encouraged Magnificence in Apparel, and Equipages) to find that the People, who had before been Strangers to all Kinds of Grandeur, were coming, by Degrees, to have ſome Taſte of it. He had indeed too exalted a Mind himſelf to give Way to Luxury and unmanly Pleaſures, but from this Time led an active Life, continually labouring for the Good of his Country. Nay, he even took the meaneſt Poſt in his Army, that of a Drummer, ſtrictly forbidding his Captain to remember he was Czar; he ſerved with all due Submiſſion, lived upon his Pay, and lay in the Tent of a Drummer, till promoted to the Degree of a Serjeant, which was not till he had deſerved it, in the Judgment of his Officers, whom he would puniſh if they judged too favourably of him. By this Procedure he gave his Nobility to underſtand, that Birth alone was not enough to entitle them to Military Preferments. The Hardſhips and low Employments he went thro' himſelf, ſeemed to give him the ſtronger Right to demand a ſtrict Obſervance of their Duty in his Subjects.

1690

The Czar makes himſelf a Drummer.

He frequently made Reinforcements to this Company, which M. *Le Fort* had raiſed, having them diſciplined in the *German* Way, and giving the Command to Foreigners, till, at length, he had a conſiderable Body of well

1690 well regulated Troops, which, for want of other Employment, he would engage in Parties againſt each other, in the Repreſentation of Mock-Sieges and Battles. The *Strelitzes*, who looked on theſe Sights as the diverting Amuſements of a young Prince fond of military Exerciſes, little ſuſpected how much their own Intereſt was concerned in them; for *Peter*, thinking they had to much Power, and were too ſtrongly attached to the Princeſs *Sophia*, reſolved to leſſen their Strength, and furniſh himſelf with Soldiers better diſciplined, and more to be depended on.

And now to the utter Extinction of all the Hopes his Siſter, and her Party, might have conceived of her returning to the Regency, after the Death of *Peter*, without Iſſue, his Wife was, this Year (1690) delivered of a Son, who, according to the *Muſcovite* Faſhion, of giving the chriſtian Name of the Father for the Sirname of the Son, was called *Alexis Petrowitz*, of whoſe unhappy End, before the Death of his Father, I ſhall give an Account in the third and laſt Volume of this Work.

The *Czarowitz Alexis* born.

The Foreigners which M. *Le Fort* had procured for the Czar's Guards, ſo highly pleaſed him, that he was reſolved to have a greater Number, and of ſuch as were ſkilled in different Profeſſions, that he might introduce Arts and Sciences into his Country, and make ſome Figure among the other Princes of *Europe*, who were more polite but leſs powerful than himſelf. M. *Le Fort* obſerved to him, that it would be impoſſible for him

M. *Le Fort's* Advice to the Czar with Regard to his Revenues.

him to ſucceed in this Deſign without a Regulation of his Finances, which were in as great Diſorder as his Troops, or any thing elſe had been; that his Revenues were not ſufficient to bear the Expences of what he propoſed, and ſupport that great Number of Foreigners he talked of, who would not be brought into his Service but on a Proſpect of Advantage, and being regularly paid. He made it appear to his Majeſty, that the Reaſon of his Revenues being ſo inconſiderable in ready Money, was the heavy Taxes on all Sorts of Goods, which made the Merchants contrive all the clandeſtine Ways they could to defraud him of his Cuſtoms, and which they did but too well ſucceed in. His Czariſh Majeſty, convinced of the Reaſon of what *Le Fort* told him, ordered his Duties to be lowered from 10 *per Cent* to 4 or 5, and inflicted ſevere Penalties on ſuch as ſhould attempt to commit any Frauds: He ſoon found the Benefit of this wholeſome Advice, and that his Revenues, the very firſt Year after, were increaſed near two Millions of *Roubles*. 1690

M. *Le Fort* having thus put it in the Power of the Czar to encourage Foreigners, and they finding it worth while to leave their own Countries, there ſoon appeared in *Ruſſia* an infinite Number of all Nations, eſpecially *Germans*, *Scots*, and *French*, not only Officers, and experienced Soldiers for his Army, but Men ſkilful and expert in every Profeſſion. He was the firſt who built a Stately Palace of cut Stone in *Moſcow*; which raiſed an Emulation in other great Men to do the

1690 the like for the Embelliſhment of that City, at that Time the Capital of the Empire.

This great and good Man, the worthy Favourite of the Czar, was beloved by all who knew him; he was generous and diſintereſted to that Degree, that he never accepted of any the leaſt Preſent, from thoſe he put into Employments, but yet, by his Merit, his Services, and other juſtifiable and honourable Means, acquired immenſe Riches, which he poſſeſſed without Envy from the *Ruſſians*, who looked upon him as their Father. He ſaved the Lives of an infinite Number of Boyars and other rich Perſons, to whom the Czar would have given the *Knout*, or beheaded with his own Hands: When he was going to do this, many times on trifling Occaſions, M. *Le Fort* would preſent his own Head or Shoulders to him, bidding him cut or ſtrike there, but ſpare the innocent Perſon. The Czar, being made ſenſible of his Barbarity, by ſuch generous Acts, would take him in his Arms, and kiſs him, and ſometimes the trembling Victim, whom he was the Minute before ready to ſacrifice to his wild Paſſion. M. *Le Fort*, in all Things ſtudied the Intereſt of his Maſter, and his Subjects, and, to take away all Jealouſy from the *Ruſſians* againſt the Foreigners he had introduced into their Country, he would recommend ſuch of the Natives to the Czar, for Preferment, whom he himſelf, or ſome of thoſe Foreigners, had taken Pains to qualify for the moſt profitable Employments. His own Merit was fix'd on the ſolid Baſis of ſuch Honour and Integrity that he feared no Rivals. A Proof of this

was

was, the Care he took to make *Menzicoff* fit for the great Poſts he afterwards enjoyed, who was juſt then taken into Favour, from the Dregs of the People; but *Peter* the Great and the generous *Le Fort*, were able to diſtinguiſh Merit, were few other Men ever look for it. 1690

The Riſe of Prince *Menzikoff*.

Alexander Menzicoff, when the Czar *Peter* firſt took Notice of him, had no higher an Employment than ſinging Ballads, and crying a Sort of Puffs and Cakes, made of minced Meat, and called in the *Ruſſian* Language, *Piragi Podovi*, about the Streets of *Moſcow*, but, from this low Degree, and from one of the pooreſt, in Time, he became one of the richeſt Subjects that ever was in *Ruſſia*, obtained the Title of a Prince, and built Palaces more magnificent than thoſe of the Czar himſelf. As to his Birth, Monſ. *de la Motraye* tells us, "that ſome Perſons, "who pretended to be well informed of it, "aſſured him, that his Parents were Vaſſals "of the Monaſtery of *Coſmopoli*, on the "weſtern Banks of the River *Wolga*. As "their Condition was very miſerable, they "could give him no better Education than "their own, and he could neither write nor "read any more than themſelves; but, be-"ing arrived at the Age of 13 or 14, he "left them without ſaying any thing to "them, to ſeek a Service at *Moſcow*, and "was taken into that of a Paſtry-Cook.

It happened one Day, as this fortunate Lad was crying his Paſtry about the Streets, that the Czar hearing, and being diverted with one of his Songs, ſent for him, and aſked

1690 aſked him if he would ſell his Pies, and his Baſket, and how much he would have for them? The Boy immediately reply'd, that he had Power to ſell his Pies, but for his Baſket, he muſt aſk his Maſter's Leave before he could diſpoſe of it to any Body elſe; but, as every thing belonged to his Majeſty, he needed only to lay his Commands upon him. This Reply pleaſed the Czar ſo much that he immediately ordered him to come to Court, and ſaid, he would make his Fortune.

He had at firſt a mean Employment given him, but the Czar frequently ſeeing him, and talking to him, was ſo much pleaſed with his Wit, that he thought fit to place him about his Perſon, and made him Groom of his Bedchamber, from whence he roſe to that high Pitch of honour we ſhall find him hereafter. He was very handſome in his Perſon, tall and well ſhaped; at his firſt coming into the Czar's Service, he liſted himſelf into M. *Le Fort*'s Company of Soldiers, and was inſtructed, by that General with Knowledge and Skill enough to command Armies, which he afterwards undertook with the greateſt Succeſs, and became one of the braveſt and moſt victorious Generals in the Czar's Service.

I have before taken Notice, that in the Expedition to the *Crim*, the Troops of *Siberia* were excuſed from being ſent thither on Account of the War they were forced to maintain againſt the *Chineſe Tartars*, with whom this Year [1691] a Treaty of Peace

was

was ſet on Foot, and ſoon brought to a happy Concluſion. 1691

I think it may not be improper, in this Place, to give ſome Deſcription of *Siberia*, a Country ſo frequently mentioned in this Work.

A Deſcription of *Siberia*.

The Country of *Siberia*, with the Provinces belonging to it, is reckoned one eighth Part of the *Ruſſian* Dominions, extending towards the South-Eaſt as far as the River *Argun*, which is within a few Days Journey of the famous Wall of *China*.

How firſt conquered.

This Country was conquered, about 150 Years ſince, in the Reign of *John Bazilowitz*, the Tyrant, by the Means of a certain Pyrate, named *Jeremak Timofeiewitz*, who having much harraſſed, and done great Damage to the Czar's Subjects, and then hearing the Troops of that Prince were coming againſt him, haſtened back again, and implored the Protection of one *Stroginof*, a very rich *Ruſs* Merchant, who had a great Number of flat bottom'd Veſſels, ſome of them carrying a thouſand Ton, which he conſtantly employed on the River *Wolga*, for the Tranſportation of his Merchandize, and not only maintained Factors at all the great Towns on that River, but at ſeveral Places on the eaſtern Rivers, which fall into it, and thereby extended his Commerce to the People bordering on the River *Oby*, exchanging his Goods for the rich Furs of *Siberia*. This Merchant, on the Pyrate's promiſe of ſubduing all the Country to the Power of the Czar, ſupply'd him with Veſſels, and what he wanted for the Expedition, and likewiſe promiſed to procure his Pardon.

1691 Pardon. With this Encouragement he and his Companions embarked, and went up the River *Serebrenkoi*, poſſeſſed himſelf of a ſtrong Fortreſs, ſlew all he met, and then returned to the Capital of *Siberia*, there killed the King, and brought his Sons away Priſoners to *Moſcow*, where, not many Years ſince, remained a Deſcendent of the Family, who had the Title of the *Siberſky Czarowitz*; he was allowed a ſmall Eſtate, and lived well eſteemed by the Czar and the *Ruſſian* Nobility.

The Pyrate, after this Succeſs, going down the River *Irtis*, was attacked in the Night by a Party of *Tartars*: In the Skirmiſh he loſt the beſt Part of his People, and endeavouring to ſave himſelf, by jumping out of one Veſſel into another was drowned. *Stroginof* had ſent to Court in the mean Time, and obtained his Pardon; he likewiſe ſent Troops to fortify the Places he had taken. Thus it was that this Country fell under the Dominion of the *Muſcovites*, which, before without a Name, they now call *Siberia*, a Word ſignifying in the *Sclavonian* Language, a Priſon; becauſe hither are ſent many Criminals condemned, ſome to perpetual Baniſhment, and ſome for a Term of Years, and are obliged to ſhoot for their Livings or ſtarve; they are to bring in a certain Quantity of Furs Weekly, or elſe are ſeverely puniſhed by Men ſent thither on Purpoſe to overſee them. They are forced ſometimes to lie all Night in the open Fields in the midſt of Winter, to perform this Taſk, but have then good Fires about them; they muſt take particular

particular Care that the fine Furs have no Holes in them, nor let them be ſtained with Blood, but are beaten if any ſuch Faults is committed, which makes them very dexterous in Shooting them with a ſingle Ball in the Head. 1691

The great Number of *Swedes* ſent hither after the famous Battle of *Pultova*, exerciſing various Kinds of Trades, and ſome ſetting up little Schools, has rendered the Country ſomewhat leſs Savage than formerly.

The River *Oby* runs quite thro' the Province, which is well ſtored with Sturgeon and Belluga's; the laſt is a Fiſh twelve or fifteen Feet long, large, and reſembles a Sturgeon, the Meat is whiter than Veal, and as delicious as Marrow; but indeed the *Wolga* is beſt ſtored both with this Fiſh and Sturgeon of any River in the North. One Thing is related of this Fiſh very remarkable, which is, that when the Floods come down from the Mountains, by the melting of the Snows, and the Streams grow very rapid, they will ſwallow very large Stones to make them the heavier, and better able to ſtem the Torrent, and throw them up again when the Waters abate, and the Current is not ſo ſtrong. It is of the ſoft Roes of the Belluga, and the Sturgeon together, that the People of *Aſtracan* make *Caviere*; they put the Roes in a heap of Salt, and when they have fermented a little, ſqueeze them, and barrel them up. The Belluga. Caviere.

In this Part of the Czar's Dominions are ſeveral Iron Works, and the Iron brought from thence is thought better, and ſells for a larger Price, than any other Iron in all *Muſcovy*.

1691 *covy.* There is alſo a Sort of Ivory, which is the Tooth of an amphibious Creature called a *Behemoth*, commonly found about the River *Lama* and the Lakes thereabouts. This Province brings a conſiderable Revenue into the Czar's Treaſury, and likewiſe not only maintains the Garriſons in the Country, but ſends conſtant Recruits to the Army of Soldiers, looked upon as good as any Troops in *Muſcovy:* Beſides theſe Advantages, it is by the Way of this Country that the *Ruſſians* carry'd on a beneficial Trade to *China*, a conſiderable Caravan of Merchants going thither every Year, who barter'd chiefly the Rich Furs of *Siberia*, ſuch as black Fox, Sable, Tiger and Ermin, and ſome ſmall Goods imported at *Arch-Angel*, for Tea, fine wove Silks, and a Sort of Linnen mixt with Cotton, which is much worn by the *Ruſſian* Women.

The eaſtern *Tartars*, who own the Protection of the Emperor of *China*, had for ſome Time carried on a War with the Czar's Subjects of *Siberia*, who had built a Fort on the River *Amur*; but this was relinquiſhed to the *Chineſe* this Year 1691, the Bounds between each Country ſettled to be at the Head of the River *Argun*, and a Peace concluded by the Negotiation of Count *Gollowin*, ſent by the Czars into *China* for that Purpoſe.

Peter repudiates his firſt Wife.

Having thus made Peace with a foreign Power, he was not yet without ſome Troubles at home, but was too much a Maſter of himſelf, and every Body about him, to ſuffer a Grievance to ſtick to him which could be removed; in ſhort, having ſome Suſpicion,

ion, as was pretended, of Diſloyalty in his Wife, he put her away, and had her ſtrictly confined all the Reſt of her Days. 1691.

The real Cauſe of this hard Treatment, was reported by ſome to be owing to ſome reproachful Language ſhe had, thro' Jealouſy, beſtowed on *Menzikoff*, complaining, that he carried her Huſband to viſit lew'd Women, who were formerly his Cuſtomers for Cakes. This Reflection upon his old Calling, raiſed in him ſo ſtrong a Reſentment that, not content to perſuade the Czar to be divorced from her, and ſhut her up thus cloſely in a Priſon, he purſued his Revenge upon the Son he had by her, even to his Deſtruction, prevailing upon *Peter* to uſe him as he did, ſo many Years after: This, I ſay, was reported by ſome, but it will be found in the Sequel of this Hiſtory, that the Czar had but too much Cauſe to proceed as he did againſt this bad Son, who was fully convicted of being in a Conſpiracy againſt his Life and Government. M. *de Voltaire* ſays, that one Cauſe of the Czar's ill Uſage of his Wife, was the Diſlike ſhe ſhewed to the Alterations he was about to make in his Country, which was to him the greateſt of all Offences: But there was more than that in it: She had joined in her Son's Rebellion.

In the Year 1692, Mr. *Iſbrant*, a *Daniſh* Gentleman, was ſent by the Czars *John* and *Peter* to confirm the Peace negotiated by Count *Gollowin*, and ſettle Articles of Commerce with *China*. Whoſe Journey, being the Rout from *Moſcow* to *China* through a Country wild and little known, it may be 1692

1692 some Pleaſure to the Reader to ſee an Account of it, and may give him an Idea not only of the great Extent of the *Ruſſian* Dominions, but of the different Sorts of People who inhabit the different Parts of that Empire, for which Reaſons I have placed it at the End of this Work, as it is to be found in M. *Le Bruyn*'s Travels, only ſomewhat abridged the Relation there given, and left out ſome trifling Particulars.

M. *Iſbrant* took Leave of the two Czars in the Month of *March* 1692, and left *Moſcow* with a Train of 21 Perſons, twelve of which were *Germans*, and the other nine *Ruſſians*; theſe were followed by Carriages for the neceſſary Proviſions and Baggage for ſo long a Journey. On the 8th of *October* 1693, he arrived at the famous Wall which

The *Chineze* Wall. ſeparates *China* from the *Mongul* Tartary. This Wall, in the Opinion of all who ſpeak

1693 of it after having ſeen it, far exceeds any of the ſeven Wonders, ſo much boaſted of by the Antients; it is at leaſt three hundred *German* Leagues in Length; is above thirty Cubits high, and from twelve to fifteen in Thickneſs; it is extended on the Tops of Mountains, and forms many Arches for Rivers to paſs under; it is entirely built of flint Stones, ſo well cemented, that it has now laſted near two thouſand Years; there are Towers on it at the Diſtance of two Bow-Shots from each other; it was formerly guarded by a Million of Soldiers, but has at Preſent only ſome Guards at the Gates of it. The *Chineſe* affirm, that when the Emperor XI. *Hoamli*, firſt built it, to ſtop the

Progreſs

Progreſs of the *Tartars*, he ordered the whole Empire of *China* to furniſh three Men out of every ten for the Work, and that this ſtupendious Wall, was finiſhed in five Years. 1693

M. *Iſbrant*, made his Entry into *Pekin* on the third of *November*, and on the fourteenth had Audience of the Emperor *Cum-hy*, who was then about forty five Years of Age, and received this Miniſter of their Czariſh Majeſties in a moſt gracious and diſtinguiſhed Manner, and, during his Reſidence there, ſhew'd him more Reſpect than is uſually paid to Strangers, which was chiefly attributed to the Influence that the Jeſuits had over him, who by this Means were in Hopes of obtaining ſome Privileges for their Society in *Ruſſia*, which had hitherto been always denied them.

M. *Iſbrant*, having met with all Succeſs in his Commiſſion, left *Pekin* on the 19th of *February* 1694, and took the ſhorteſt Rout to return to *Moſcow*, and found not ſo many Difficulties as in his Journey to *China*, for he arrived within 5 Werſts of *Moſcow* on the laſt Day of the ſame Year, ſo that he was but ten Months and ten Days, in his Return, whereas he had been more than nineteen Months going from *Moſcow* to *Pekin*. The Czar *Peter*, no ſooner heard that he was come to *Alexeche*, than he went to meet him, impatient to hear from his own Mouth a Recital of his long Voyage, and eſpecially to enquire what Diſcoveries he had made, and after ſuch Circumſtances as he thought might favour the Deſign he had of eſtabliſhing the 1694

1694 Trade of his Subjects on that Side, by which he hoped to have all those Commodities by Land from *China*, which the other Nations of *Europe* could not come at but by very long and expensive Voyages by Sea.

The Czar, during this Time, had presented his Subjects with a Scene entirely new to them. He had by chance taken Notice of a *Dutch* Yacht, that lay disused in a Canal belonging to one of his Houses of Pleasure, with which being wonderfully pleased, and having talked to his Favourite M. *Le Fort*, among other Things about Shipping, that ingenious Gentleman so strongly laid before him the Advantages that the maritime Powers of *Europe* reaped from their naval Affairs, that he, from that Instant, conceived a great Notion thereof, and was resolved to turn his Views that Way. Hereupon he immediately gave Orders to some *Hollanders*, who were then at *Moscow*, to build several small Vessels, and afterwards four Frigates of four Guns each, with which he would often divert himself with sailing upon the *Periſlauſky* Lake, and caused now and then Mock-Fights to be performed thereon, in which he acted and commanded as a Sea-Captain, and from thenceforward took that Title upon him.

What gave the first Rise to the Building of Ships in *Russia*.

The Time and Thoughts of the Czar *Peter* being taken up with the great Designs he had meditated for the Improvement of his Country, he had for a while neglected the War, began with the *Crim-Tartars*, who likewise avoided all Occasions of drawing the Arms of the *Russians* upon them; and the *Cham* had made

made no late Demand of the 80,000, annual *Roubles* which he before inſiſted on with great Exactneſs. On the other Hand, it was not at all for the Intereſt of the Czar to aſſiſt in any thing that might aggrandize the *Poles*, who were no ſooner favoured by Fortune, and able to ſupport themſelves without the Help of their Neighbours, than they treated them with inſufferable Pride, and began to revive thoſe Pretenſions which they renounced in the Time of their Adverſity. But the *Tartars*, having now nothing to fear in their own Country, committed many cruel Ravages in the Dominions under the King of *Poland*, which the Miniſters of that Prince repreſented to the Czars in the ſtrongeſt Terms, and took Pains to perſuade them how favourable an Opportunity there was at that Time to reduce the *Tartars* to ſuch a Condition as that they ſhould be never able to moleſt them again; they had been often beat in Rencounters with the *Poles*, and were much weakened by the long War they had been engaged in. 1694

The Czar's Council had too much Penetration not to ſee theſe Advantages, and therefore, at the Inſtance of the Emperor of *Germany*, the *Poles* and *Venetians*, *Ruſſia* likewiſe declared War with the *Turks* and *Tartars*. *Peter* commanded ſeveral Galleys and Veſſels to be built, and equipt on the River *Veronis*, which, with ſome open Boats of the *Coſſacks* who inhabit about 700 *Ruſs* Miles, on the *Tanais* or *Don*, he employed the next Year in beſieging *Azoph*, ſituated at the

The Czar beſieges *Azoph*.

1695. Mouth of the laſt mentioned River, where it falls into the *Palus Mæotis*.

The Year 1695 beheld the firſt Campaign of the two moſt formidable Monarchs of *Europe*, *Peter* I. Czar of *Muſcovy*, and *Muſtapha* II. Emperor of the *Turks*: This laſt ſucceeded his Uncle *Achmot* II. whoſe Conduct diſpleaſing him as much as his Father's, he was reſolved to take other Meaſures, and to know and do every Thing himſelf. He found both his Army and his Treaſury in a very mean Condition, but he knew how, by the Severity of his Diſcipline and cunning Management, to re-eſtabliſh them, deſigning to begin the War as it were afreſh, and reſolved, notwithſtanding all the Remonſtrances his Miniſters made againſt it, to march himſelf at the Head of an Army, he deſigned for *Hungary*. He had nothing to fear from the Side of *Poland*, from whence an Envoy was juſt then come as far as *Adrianople*, to propoſe a ſeparate Peace; but he was much alarmed at the News of the Preparations making by the Czar *Peter* againſt the *Tartars*, becauſe this obliged them to refuſe ſending him the Succours which he had rely'd upon; however, notwithſtanding all the *Cham* could ſay, he forced him to bring a Body of ſix thouſand Men, for it is an indiſpenſible Duty of the *Cham*'s to be preſent in the *Ottoman* Army whenever that Sultan himſelf commands it.

Muſtapha II. his Character.

This Circumſtance was very favourable to the Deſigns of the Czar, who in this Expedition entered himſelf as an Enſign only; but he had an Army of about eighty or nine-

ty

y Thouſand well diſciplined Men, divided 1695
nto two Bodies, one to attack the Town of
Azoph, the other to ſupport the *Donzki* The Siege
Coſſacks, and make Head againſt the *Tar-* of *Azoph*.
ars, if they ſhould attempt to raiſe the
iege or throw any Succours into the Town;
ut this the *Turks* were able to do by Wa-
er; and, making frequent Sallies, held out
reſolute Defence for above two Months;
uring which Time his Czariſh Majeſty
as every where, ſaw all Things done
imſelf, and made Remarks upon what
appened; the *Ruſſians*, whenever they ſkir-
niſhed with any of the Enemy, had the
etter of them, and now began to play
heir Battery on the Place with good Suc- Miſcarries
eſs; but the Progreſs they had made by the Trea-
as all render'd fruitleſs, by the Trea- chery of an
hery of one *Jacob*, a Foreigner, em- Engineer.
loyed in the *Ruſſian* Artillery, who, hav-
ng been ill uſed by the Boyar he ſerved
nder, and not receiving his Pay as he
xpected, nailed up the Cannon upon the
atteries he was intruſted with, and de-
erting, in the Night, to the Enemy, in-
rmed them of what he had done, in-
iting them at the ſame Time to make a
old Sally, which they did accordingly,
nd put the *Muſcovites* into ſuch Confu-
on, and committed ſo much Slaughter
mong them, that they were forced, ſoon
fter, to leave the Place for that Year,
nd turn the Siege into a Blockade. This
dden Change of Fortune deſtroyed all
opes of taking the City without purſuing

1695 other Meaſures, for which Reaſon his Czarish Majeſty returned to *Moſcow*, not doubting but he ſhould make his Advantage the nex Year of the Errors he had obſerved to b committed in this Campaign. It was a this Time, that he gave his Miniſter Proofs of that great Genius and Penetra tion which afterwards made all his Enter prizes eaſy to him.

The firſt Campain of the Czar *Pete* was talked of all over *Europe*, and th Accounts of whatever he performed him ſelf greatly exaggerated, which gave th World an Idea of him quite different fro what had been conceived of any of hi Predeceſſors, and began to raiſe thoſ Hopes of him which were afterwards fu ly accompliſhed; but Fame was ſome what too ſpeedy in her Flight when ſh carried through all Parts the News of th Reduction of *Azoph*, which Deſign miſcar ried at the very Inſtant that it was though ſecure.

1696

The Death of the Czar *John*.

Soon after his Majeſty's Return to *Mo cow*, *viz.* in the Month of *February* 169 dy'd his Brother, the Czar *John Alexowitz* of whoſe Infirmities I have before ſpoken which rendered him incapable of concern ing himſelf much with the Affairs of State but his Time was chiefly ſpent in Acts o Devotion. He was buried at *Moſcow*, i the Church of St. *Michael*, where moſt o the Dukes and Czars of *Muſcovy* have bee depoſited, with a Tomb more Magnifi cent than any of the Reſt, being adorne wit

with a great Number of precious Stones. 1696
He left, at the Time of his Death, three Daughters, one of which is that illuſtrious Princeſs, ANNE JOANNOWNA, who ſways at Preſent the Imperial Scepter of *Ruſſia*.

The End of the Second BOOK.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* I. CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK III.

The CONTENTS.

The Czar *takes* Azoph. *Builds a Fleet. Determines to travel. A Conſpiracy againſt him; happily diſcovered. His Journey to* Holland *and* England. *Another Conſpiracy againſt him, while he is abroad. His Return to* Moſcow. *Puniſhes the Rebels. Settles his Army and Navy. Inſtitutes the Order of St.* Andrew. *Declares War with* Sweden. *An Account of the* Muſcovite *Religion, Ceremonies, and Superſtitions. The* Czar *reforms the Abuſes in his Revenues.*

THE Czar *Peter*, now ſole Monarch of *Ruſſia*; having employed ſeveral *Venetians* and others to build more Veſſels at *Veronis*, and finding them in a proper Condition to fall down the River *Don*, went this Year a ſecond Time againſt *Azoph*, 1696

1696

The Czar goes a ſecond Time againſt *Azoph*.

Azoph, and acting with great Boldneſs and Vigour aboard his own Fleet, when the *Turks* came before the Bar, as they did the laſt Year, by the Way of the *Black-Sea*, to have thrown freſh Succours into the Town, and ſupply them with Proviſions, Men, and Money, he laid an Ambuſcade behind a ſmall Iſland, and then making a Shew of retiring before them, when he had drawn them a little Way up the River, fell upon them, and took and ſunk ſeveral of their Veſſels; and upon their making a ſecond Attempt, with ſmall Veſſels and Boats, he beat them back over the Bar.

Takes and ſinks ſeveral *Turkiſh* Veſſels.

At the ſame Time that his Majeſty built the Veſſels before mentioned, he largely recruited his Army, which, under the Command of general *Gordon*, a *Scotch* Man, carried on the Siege with great Reſolution. The Enemy, finding themſelves diſappointed of the Relief they expected, and every Way diſtreſſed by the extraordinary Behaviour of the Czar and his Army, were obliged to ſurrender upon Condition of being allowed to march out of the Place without their Arms, and to deliver up *Jacob*, the treacherous Engineer, to be puniſhed according to his Crime.

Azoph ſurrenders.

He was carried to *Moſcow*, where he was broke alive upon the Wheel, after having been three times tortured on the *Pine*, * being told

* This Puniſhment is executed in the following Manner: The Criminal's Hands being tied together behind his Back, he is drawn up by a Rope faſtened to them, having a large Weight hanging at his Feet; his Shoulders being

old, at the ſame Time, that when he found himſelf aggrieved he ſhould have had Recourſe to his Majeſty for Juſtice, and not have acted ſo traiterouſly. 1696

His Czariſh Majeſty gave Notice to all the Princes of Chriſtendom of the Succeſs of his Arms, on which Occaſion his Miniſter at the Court of *Vienna* obſerved to his Imperial Majeſty that, after what his Maſter had done for the common Cauſe, it would be very injurious to make Peace without him, for that in ſuch Caſe the whole Strength of the *Ottoman* Arms would be turned againſt him. The Czar himſelf likewiſe, after his Return to *Moſcow*, took care to let the Emperor know, that the *Cham* of *Tartary* had ſent Propoſitions to him, but that he was ſo far from liſtening to them, that he had ordered his Ambaſſadors to be told, that he muſt apply to the Emperor of the *Romans*. The Sincerity of this Behaviour engaged his Imperial Majeſty to enter into a Treaty of Alliance, offenſive and defenſive, with the Czar, for three Years, on Condition, that he ſhould not make Peace without the other. The *Venetians* alſo, who had reap'd conſiderable Advantages from what paſſed in the Black-Sea, and being informed of the favourable Diſpoſitions of his Czariſh Majeſty

being turned out of Joint, and his Arms coming over his Head, the Executioner is then to give him ſo many Strokes as the Judge has ordered in his Sentence; between while a Subdiackſhick, or Writer, examines the Offender, concerning the Crimes he is accuſed of, which being done, his Arms are put into Joint again by the Hangman, and he is either diſmiſſed or ſent back to Priſon.

1696 jeſty, ſent full Powers to their Ambaſſador
Vienna to conclude an Alliance, offenſive an
defenſive, with the Miniſter of *Ruſſia*, engag
ing to furniſh his Czariſh Majeſty with
neceſſary Succours; and the King of *Swede*
Charles XI. offered the ſame, notwithſtan
ing the Provinces of *Sweden*, bordering
Ruſſia, eſpecially *Livonia*, were at that Tim
in a miſerable Condition.

The Reduction of ſo important a Pla
as *Azoph*, by which he opened a Paſſag
into the Euxine or Black-Sea, could n
but be very pleaſing to the Czar; wh
he returned to *Moſcow* he received the Com
pliments of all the Boyars upon his Victor
who laid the whole Succeſs on his Majeſty
great Conduct on Board the Fleet, by whi
he prevented any Supplies being carried
the Eenemy; and finding, by the Experien
he got in this Action, the great Advanta
of a maritime Force, he reſolved to eſt
bliſh a Navy, that ſhould not only ſecu
his Conqueſts, but enable him to meet a
oppoſe the *Turks* in the Black-Sea;
therefore immediately commanded th
Workmen ſhould be ſent for from *Holla*
to build Ships, and from *Venice*, and oth
Parts of *Italy*, to build Galleys, determ
ning to have a Fleet of forty Men of W
ten ſtore Ships and bomb Veſſels, twen
large Galleys and Galleaſſes, and thir
half Galleys and other Veſſels, built a
equipt with all things ready to put to Se
within the Space of three Years.

The Czar reſolves to build a Fleet.

The Courſe he took to inſtruct himſelf a
his Subjects in the Art of Navigation, is
ver

very ſurprizing, that it is a Part of Hiſtory that will hardly gain Credit with Poſterity. Beſides the uſual Taxes paid for the Support of the War, he obliged ſeveral of his richeſt Boyars to build each of them a Ship at his own Expence; but allow'd them the Honour of giving their own Names to the Veſſels ſo built. The Monaſteries, Cities and Towns, the Merchants and Gentlemen in every Diſtrict throughout his Dominions, were to pay their Proportion towards the Charge of this Undertaking; and every one's Proportion was to be doubled if it was not completed by the Time he had fixed for it. They were allow'd to appoint Deputies to carry on the Work; and to hire and employ Men to get it done in the beſt Manner they could, ſeveral *Dutchmen* were accordingly made the Agents in this Affair, and every Thing was performed with all the Expedition that the Czar required; but he, reflecting on the Inconvenience of having no Veſſels but from Strangers, or thoſe built by ſuch in his own Dominions, reſolved on a Way to remedy that for the future; and declared his Intentions to travel while his Fleet was preparing. He likewiſe appointed ſome of the Prime of his young Nobility, and the Sons of others to travel into different Parts of *Europe*; and, as he was a good Judge of all Sorts of Men, and their Capacities, gave them Inſtructions particularly what they ought to ſtudy that was moſt ſuitable to their Parts and Genius. Some of theſe Gentlemen obeyed with a very ill Will, and it is ſaid, that one of them locked himſelf up in his Houſe at *Venice* for four Years, that, at his Return, he might

1696

The Method he took to defray the Expence of it.

Obliges the young Nobility to travel.

1696 might have the Satisfaction of not having ſeen or learnt any Thing.

The Czar, it is thought, beſides the Deſign of improving theſe young Gentlemen, had another View in thus diſperſing them, which was to prevent any Dangers from their meeting together in his Abſence; but notwithſtanding all his Precaution, he found a great Number of Malecontents who cauſed great Diſturbances both before and after his Departure.

The *Muſcovites* were great Enemies to all Innovations, and this Ship-building was a Thing entirely new to them, who had never ſeen a Ship till his Time; but, above all, their being put to the Expence of it, and their being forced to ſend their Sons to travel, were looked upon as moſt terrible Acts of Oppreſſion, and occaſion'd great Uneaſineſſes, which were not a little fomented by the Prieſts, who took Care to inſinuate among the People, that this would be a great Means of corrupting the young Nobility in the Principles of their Religion. Nay, they poſitively affirm'd it to be contrary to the Laws of God, who had forbid the Children of *Iſrael* to have any Communion with the Nations that were round about them, that they might not partake of their Idolatry. Not even the Envoys ſent to Foreign Courts, were allowed, in former Times, to take their own Sons with them, and, as I have before-mentioned, it was forbid, upon Pain of Death, that any *Muſcovite* ſhould go out of his own Country without eſpecial Leave from the Czar or *Patriarch*. It is no Wonder that People with theſe confined

and

nd narrow Notions ſhould murmur at the 1696
Czar's ſhewing ſo great a Regard to Stran-
gers, going daily to their Houſes, admitting
hem freely to his Converſation, and now pre-
aring to leave his own Country. He had
likewiſe form'd another Project, which he had
entioned to ſome of his Boyars, and had ac-
ually employed a Perſon about it; this was
o make a navigable Canal between the *Volga*
nd *Tanais*, by which he might convey Pro-
iſions and Materials for a Fleet at *Azoph*;
ut this Deſign, as grand and uſeful as it was,
ome of the indolent and ſtupid *Ruſſians* re-
reſented as a Piece of Impiety, being, as they
aid, to turn the Streams one Way, which Pro-
idence had directed another.

The dreadful Apprehenſions the People had
f the ill Conſequences that would attend theſe
Things, gave a good Opportunity to the diſ-
ontented Party among the Boyars, who were
till in the Princeſs *Sophia*'s Intereſt, to at-
empt ſomething that might give a Turn to
he Affairs of State, and put the Government
gain in their own Hands. With theſe Views
Conſpiracy was formed, wherein it was A Conſpi-
greed to fire ſome Houſes near the Czar's racy againſt
Palace, and to aſſaſſinate him, when, accor- the Czar.
ing to Cuſtom, he ſhould come out to aſſiſt
n extinguiſhing the Flames. That is, they
ere to murder him, at the very Inſtant that
e was ſhewing the tender Regard he had for
he Lives of his Subjects. They reſolved next
o releaſe the Princeſs *Sophia* out of Priſon,
nd put the Crown on her Head; after
hich they were to reſtore the *Strelitzes*,
ho had been removed from their Poſts, on

1696 Account of the Rebellion, headed by *Cou-vanſki*, at the Time of the Czar *Theodore's* Death. And next they were to maſſacre all Foreigners, and the Czar's new Favourites; who, they imagined, put him upon taking theſe extraordinary Meaſures.

Three great Lords, one Colonel of the *Don-Coſſacks*, and ſeveral Officers of the *Strelitzes* were engaged in this Plot, which was to have been put in Execution on the 2d of *February* 1697, but the very Day before, two Captains of the *Strelitzes*, diſcourſing together, and being each touched with a Remorſe of Conſcience, reſolved to diſcover the whole Deſign; accordingly they went and threw themſelves at his Majeſty's Feet, at the Houſe of his Favourite M. *Le Fort*, and made an ample Confeſſion of the whole Buſineſs, and gave in the Names of the principal Perſons concerned in it.

1697

Happily diſcovered.

The Czar immediately roſe from Table without diſcovering any Surprize in his Countenance, and, taking only a few Perſons with him, went himſelf and ſeized on the Chiefs of the Conſpirators, among whom he found one of his own Privy Council; they were preſently put to the Torture, and, having confeſſed their Crimes, were ſoon after executed; each of the Criminals had firſt his right Arm and left Leg cut off; then his left Arm and right Leg; and afterwards his Head ſevered from his Body, and ſtuck, with the reſt, on Spikes at the Top of a Column erected, for that Purpoſe, in the great Market Place before the Gates of the Caſtle, their Legs and Arms hanging like Trophies about the Column and

The Puniſhment of the Conſpirators.

and their Bodies left expoſed in the Market Place, without Burial, till the Froſt broke, and then to prevent their being offenſive, by their Stench, to the Inhabitants, they were flung into a Pit among the executed Bodies of common Thieves and Malefactors. 1697

The Czar begins his Travels.

The Czar, having puniſhed the Heads of this Conſpiracy, began to prepare for his Journey; he ſent M. *Le Fort*, now made a Lieutenant General in his Army and Admiral of his Fleet, together with Count *Gollowin* General and Governor of *Siberia*, and M. *Woſrifetſtyn*, Privy Counſellor and Secretary of State, his Ambaſſadors Extraordinary to the *States General* of *Holland*, and went himſelf *incognito* in their Train, that he might have the better Opportunity of making his Obſervations, without being embarraſſed with the Ceremonies he was to expect, if he had made himſelf known; he likewiſe took with him ſome of his particular Favourites, among whom were the Son of the Prince *Sibirſky* and young *Menzikoff*, and ſome young Gentlemen, whom he deſigned to have inſtructed in the Art of Ship-building; to gain a perfect Knowledge in which was the chief Deſign of his Travels.

Settles the Government for the Time of his Abſence.

During his Abſence, he left the Adminiſtration of the Government to three of his Boyars. The firſt was his Uncle *Naraſkin*, his Mother's Brother; the ſecond, Prince *Galliczin*, who was again reſtored to Favour; and the third, the Lord *Peter Procoroſſky*; to theſe three Lords he intruſted the Management of all his Affairs at Home, and the Care of his Son, the Czarewitz *Alexis*. He

1697 ordered an Army of about 12,000 Soldiers, commanded by General *Gordon*, moſt of the Officers of which were Foreigners, to be quartered about the Suburbs of *Moſcow*, to keep that City in awe. He ſent the ſuſpected *Strelitzes* to the Frontiers of *Turky*, under the Command of General *Schein*, who had the Management of the War on that Side.

Having thus ſettled the Government at Home; in the Month of *May* 1697, he began his Journey, and ſet out with the Grand Embaſſy. The firſt Place, of any Note, that they came to, was the City of *Riga*, the principal Town, and Key to the whole Country of *Livonia*.

Comes to *Riga*.

This City, built at the Mouth of the River *Duna*, is large, having nine Gates, the chief of which, called *Carle-Port*, is adorned with the Buſto of *Charles* the Eleventh, King of *Sweden*. At this Entrance, on the left Hand, is a Range of Caſerns, for Soldiers to lodge in, a hundred Paces in length, which are Bomb-Proof; the whole Town, then in the Hands of the *Swedes*, is regular and well fortified; and the Citadel ſtrong and well built.

The Governor here paid great Reſpect to the Embaſſy, but refuſing to ſhew the Fortifications to *Menzikoff* and General *Le Fort*, with whom the Czar intended to have ſatisfied his own Curioſity, he was ſo much incenſed, that he ſaid to his Favourites: *He hoped he ſhould ſee the Day, when he ſhould be able to refuſe the ſame Thing to the King of* Sweden *himſelf*. And this was afterwards, in a Manifeſto he publiſhed, given as one Rea-

Reaſon, tho' certainly no very good one, for declaring War with the *Swedes*; but, when Princes have an Inclination to quarrel, the lighteſt Pretexts are ſufficient, while the real Motives are not proper to be divulged. 1697

Koningsberg.

His Czariſh Majeſty came next to *Koningſberg*, in the Dominions of the King of *Pruſſia*, then only Elector of *Brandenbourg*. This City is divided into three Parts, called *Koningſberg*, *Kniphoff*, and *Lobnitz*, in all which are nine Churches, beſides Chapels. The Cathedral is large; here is an Academy, which has produced conſiderable Men in every Science; and a Library well repleniſhed with Books. The Town is defended by a good Caſtle, that commands the Harbour, and in which there are never leſs than a whole Regiment in Garriſon.

The Grand Embaſſy's Entry into *Koningsberg.*

The Ambaſſadors, with a Train of three hundred Perſons, firſt ſtopt at *Laut*, within a Mile of the City, to which Place the Elector of *Brandenbourg* immediately ſent M. *Dankleman* to compliment them in his Name, and accompany them into the City. After Dinner, M. *Beſſer*, the Maſter of the Ceremonies arrived at the ſame Place alſo, with a great Company of Nobility to conduct them.

About four in the Afternoon, their Excellencies, in one of the Elector's Coaches, with Meſſieurs *Dankleman* and *Beſſer* made their publick Entry in the following Manner.

Firſt his Electoral Highneſs's led Horſes, to the Number of forty.

Secondly, an Officer attended by the Kettle-Drums of the Guards, and three Troops of the Body Guards cloathed in Red.

1697 Next, the chief Nobility of *Prussia*, in twenty-six Coaches, and six Horses.

Then, two of the Elector's Coaches, and one of the Margrave *Albert*'s. After these, the King's Pages two and two, with a Page of the Ambassadors between them; in red Liveries, laced with Gold. Next, the Chief Ministers and Officers of the Elector's Household in thirty-six Coaches. Seventhly, the first Kettle-Drum, and the first Trumpet belonging to his Electoral Highness, followed by the Ambassadors Foot-Guards, clad in Green, with each a Silver Battle-Axe upon his Shoulder. Then, thirty of the Ambassadors Horse-Guards in the same Livery, but without Battle-Axes. Ninthly, the State Coach wherein their Excellencies were seated: And lastly, the March was closed with twelve Coaches filled with *Muscovite* Gentlemen and *Brandenburghers*. Their Excellencies were conducted in this Manner to a magnificent Lodging provided for them in the *Kniphof*, the Burghers being drawn out, and lining the Streets, in a double File, all the Way. The Garrison of the City stood to receive them at the Entrance into their Lodging, while they were saluted by a triple Discharge of the great Guns. As soon as they alighted they were conducted to their Apartment; which was guarded by twenty-four Soldiers; and then the Lords of the Court, together with M. *Dankleman*, and the Master of the Ceremonies, left them; and the Ambassadors waited on them back to the Stairs-head.

Four Days after, the Ambassadors had the Publick Audience of the Elector, to which

hey were conducted by M. *Dankleman*, and he Maſter of the Ceremonies, before-named, with a Train of thirty Coaches; and thirty Perſons went before their Excellencies carrying he Czar's Preſents to the Elector. The Amaſſadors, richly habited in Cloth of Gold and Silver, embroidered with precious Stones, en-er'd the great Hall of the Caſtle, where the Elector was ſeated on a Throne, attended by he principal Lords of his Court; they made heir Bows, and after they had every one in heir Order complimented his Electoral Highneſs, in ſhort Speeches, they delivered him he Preſents, and a Letter, in which the Czar old him, that he had ſent that Embaſſy to aſſure him of his Deſire to improve the Affection and good Correſpondence which had always been, as well between his Electoral Highneſs and himſelf as between their illuſrious Anceſtors. That the ſame Embaſſy eing from thence to proceed to the Court of *Vienna*, in order to farther Conſultations and Propoſitions for the Continuance of the War gainſt the *Turks* and *Tartars*, his Czariſh Majeſty therefore requeſted the Elector to aſiſt them in their Journey; withal returning is Electoral Highneſs Thanks for the Engieers and Bombers which he ſent him the laſt Year, and which had been ſo uſeful to him n the Siege of *Azoth*.

1697

To all which, the Elector anſwered, that e was much obliged to the Czar for the Aſſurance of his good Intentions, and the ſplendid Embaſſy he had ſent to him. And hen M. *Dankleman* returned an Anſwer more t large, and very obligingly, to the Compli-

1697 ments of the ſeveral Ambaſſadors, who were after that re-conducted to their Lodgings with the ſame Ceremonies, and treated with a very magnificent Repaſt at the Elector's Expence. The ſame Evening, they were alſo entertained with a Show of Fire-Works, which laſted till Midnight. The Preſents they brought the Elector of *Brandenbourg* conſiſted of Sables, Ermins, and other rich Furs, ſeveral flower'd Silks and Tiſſues of Gold and Silver, and other precious Rarities, valued, in all, at ſeventy-five thouſand Crowns.

In this City his Czariſh Majeſty had all the Reſpect paid to him that he deſired, and having diſcovered himſelf to the Elector, his Yachts were ordered to attend him, and nothing was deny'd to him that he had an Inclination to ſee or have, either to ſatisfy his Curioſity or afford him any Convenience or Pleaſure, and having ſo agreeable an Opportunity to indulge himſelf in a Recreation which he much delighted in, he ſtaid here ſome Time, and diverted himſelf with ſailing on the *Haff*, a Lake of about 30 Leagues in Length, lying between *Koningsberg* and *Dantzick*.

It was in his Way to *Koningſberg*, that his Majeſty received an Expreſs, with Advice that the Elector of *Saxony* was choſen King of *Poland*, but that the Cardinal Primate had proteſted againſt the ſaid Election, in Favour of the Prince of *Conti*, who, with a Squadron of *French* Men of War, then lay before *Dantzick*, in a threatning Manner, notwithſtanding which, the Town declared for his Rival King *Auguſtus*. The Czar, as ſoon as he received

the

this Advice, ſent Orders to his Ambaſſadors, then reſiding in *Poland*, to maintain the Right of Election; and to aſſure King *Auguſtus*, that he had 60,000 Men in Readineſs to ſerve him, and ſupport his juſt Pretenſions to the Crown. He likewiſe ſent Orders to his Troops in the Ukrain, and about *Smolenſko*, to advance towards the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, to keep that great Duchy in his Intereſt. The favourable Interpoſition of ſo powerful a Prince as the Czar, it is thought had a very great Influence on the *Poles* at this Time; but was a Step that the Court of *France* could never forgive. However, he had good Reaſon for what he did, for *France* being in Alliance with the *Turk*, if their Party had prevailed, and they could have given a King to *Poland* it was very probable that he would not only have made Peace with the *Porte*, but have turned his Arms againſt the Czar. 1697 The Czar's Kindneſs to King *Auguſtus*.

Taking leave of *Koningſberg*, the next Place his Majeſty arrived at was *Dantzick*. This City is the Capital of *Poliſh Pomerania*, and diſtant 145 Miles from *Warſaw*. It lies about four Miles from the Sea, upon a Branch of the *Viſtula* or *Weiſſel*, and is accounted one of the chief *Hans* Towns, and greateſt trading Cities in *Europe*. It is encompaſſed by a Wall ſo broad, that Coaches can eaſily go round upon it, and the Fortifications are of a vaſt Extent; but, being commanded by two Hills on the South-Weſt, cannot hold out a briſk Siege. The chief Trade of the City is in Corn from *Poland*, and it is computed that they export, one Year with another, about *Dantzick*.

1697 bout 730,000 Tons of Wheat. It is the Granary of *Holland* and the Northern Countries. They have a great Number of Mills for grinding Corn, which bring in great Profits to the City and the Proprietors of them. The Number of Inhabitants in this City were uſually reckon'd 200,000. Their conſtant Number of Soldiers in Pay is only 200, but they can eaſily maintain 12000, and have ſometimes had an Army of 60000 Men. One of the Suburbs here is called *Scotland*, and inhabited by *Scots*, all of that Nation being allowed to be Freemen of the City, and have greater Privileges than other Foreigners, in Conſideration of the great Service they formerly did the Place, under the Conduct of one of the Family of *Douglas*, at the Time of a Siege, in Memory of which are the Arms of *Scotland* ſet over the Gate from whence they ſallied upon the Enemy. The eſtabliſhed Religion of the City is Proteſtantiſm, but they tolerate Roman Catholicks. The Houſes are ſtately, the Churches, of which they have twenty four in Number, generally magnificent, the chief of them is ſo large that it has forty eight Altars, and three thouſand ſeven hundred twenty two Windows. The Harbour is not deep enough to admit Ships of very great Force to come up to the City, but ſome of four hundred Tons and forty Guns have been ſometimes known to lie there.

In this, and moſt other maritime Places, his Czaiſh Majeſty had very handſome Preſents made to him under the Shew of doing it to the Ambaſſadors, who were complimented

mented with all the higheſt Marks of Reſpect that could be imagined, but his Majeſty would ſuffer no Ceremony to be paid to himſelf: He went round the Towns privately to view them, attended by the Governor, or ſome few of the moſt conſiderable Perſons, but without any Guard, or other Attendance. He had ſo great a Deſire to be in *Holland*, that he tarry'd not long at any of the Sea-Ports in the *Baltick*, and but a few Days at *Hamburg*, which is ſo fine a City, and notwitſtanding the Citizens, who carry on a great Trade to *Arch-Angel*, were very deſirous of an Opportunity of rendering their Services acceptable to him. 1697

He travelled not to ſatisfy a vain Curioſity; to admire the Splendour of foreign Courts; or, like the *Petit Maitres* at Preſent, to ſhew the Gayety of his own Dreſs and Equipage, nay, ſo far from the firſt, he commonly went about in the Jacket of a *Dutch* Skipper, that he might the more eaſily mix with the Sea-faring People, and get among the Shipping, without being taken Notice of.

Czar comes to *Holland*.

When his Majeſty approached the Frontiers of the united Provinces, the States General appointed Deputies to receive the Embaſſy, with very conſiderable Preſents, and the higheſt Marks of Honour that could be ſhewn upon ſuch as Occaſion. The Cannon was fired from the Ramparts of all the great Towns through which they paſſed, the Soldiers were all drawn out, and the Magiſtrates, went in all their Formalities to pay their Compliments. The Streets and Windows at

Amſterdam

1697 *Amſterdam* were crowded with Spectators, when the Ambaſſadors enter'd that City, conducted by a great Number of Perſons who went out on Horſeback and with ſplendid Equipages to meet them; at Night there were Illuminations, and fine Fireworks before the Houſe prepared for the Ambaſſadors, whoſe Expences the States took upon themſelves to defray. The *Dutch* did all this, and a great deal more, to give the Czar *Peter* a favourable Impreſſion of their Country, and uſed all Methods to induce him to believe them Maſters of thoſe Arts that he was moſt particularly deſirous to learn, that they might prevent his entring into Engagements with other Nations, who were their Rivals in the *Ruſſian* Trade.

Before the Ambaſſadors arrived at *Amſterdam*, the Czar had left them, and enter'd that City *incognito* accompanied only by a few Merchants, whom he had known at *Moſcow*, and who, having private Notice of his coming, went out to meet him. The Magiſtrates, alſo having ſome Intimation of it, deputed ſome conſiderable Perſons to wait upon him, with offers of all Things neceſſary and ſuitable to his Dignity. They alſo prepared a magnificent Houſe for his Reception; but he was not to be perſuaded to accept of it, chooſing a little Houſe on the *Eaſt-India* Company's Wharf or Ship-yard, where he entered himſelf as a common Carpenter and enrolled in the Liſt of their Workmen, by the Name of *Peter Michaelhoff*. Here he lived ſeveral Months, with two or three of his Favourites, whom he took to be

Enters himſelf among the Ship-Carpenters.

be Partners with him in learning the Art of Ship-building, but was obſerved to be more induſtrious, and work with greater Aſſiduity than any of his Companions, who, as M. *Fontenelle* obſerves, had indeed not any Motives comparable to his, which was to increaſe the Wealth and Glory of his Country. He worked for the greateſt Part of the Day with a Carpenter's Broad Ax among the Dutchmen, wearing the ſame Sort of Habit that they did, for the better diſguiſe; and at other Times he would divert himſelf with ſailing and rowing upon the Water: ſtrict Orders were given, wherever he was, that all Sorts of People ſhould be forbid to diſturb or gaze upon him, which was, of all Things, what gave him the greateſt Uneaſineſs. 1697

Notwithſtanding this great Reſervedneſs, he would ſometimes admit of private Viſits from ſome of the moſt conſiderable Perſons in *Amſterdam*, and would go ſometimes in one Habit and ſometimes in another to private Entertainments there, particularly to Burgomaſter *Whiſton*'s, a Gentleman who was vaſtly rich in Shipping, and famous for his Love of Arts, having ſent Perſons abroad, at his own Expence, to make Diſcoveries in all Parts of the World; and had likewiſe been at great Charge in fixing large Teleſcopes for obſerving the celeſtial Bodies. For this Gentleman his Czariſh Majeſty had a great Value, and with him and two or three more would be very free and merry.

On the 27th of *September* the Ambaſſadors made their publick Entry at the *Hague*, and

1697 and, after having had an Audience of King *William* III. as Stadtholder, on the 5th of *October* they went to *Utrecht*, where they were introduced to a publick Audience of the States General; two of the Deputies went to conduct them from their Houſes, and two more received them without the grand Hall. General *Le Fort*, the chief of the Embaſſy produced their credential Letters, and made a Speech to their High Mightineſſes; Count *Gollowin* ſpoke likewiſe; the Audience laſted above half an Hour, during which the Ambaſſadors, and the States General, contrary to the uſual Cuſtom, ſtood all the Time.

The Plenipotentiaries of the Emperor, of *Spain*, *Sweden*, *Denmark* and *Brandenburg* paid viſits, which were returned by the *Ruſſian* Miniſters, but thoſe of *France*, irritated by his Czariſh Majeſty's having ſo warmly eſpouſed the Intereſts of King *Auguſtus* againſt the Prince of *Conti*, thought to revenge themſelves by not paying them that Reſpect which ſeemed their Due. The Embaſſy remained at the *Hague* till the 30th of *October*, having had their Audience of Leave on the 28th before their Departure for *Amſterdam*: But the Czar himſelf continued at the *Hague* till the 7th of *November*, that he might have a particular Interview with the King of *England*, on the Deſign which he had formed of going to *London*, and that Prince did not return thither, from his Country Seat at *Loo*, till that Time, which was at the Concluſion of the Peace of *Ryſwick*.

During

During the Time that his Czariſh Majeſty was in *Holland*, he received the agreeable News of his Army's having obtained a Victory over the *Turks* and *Tartars*. General *Schein* being arrived before *Azoph*, and having joined the other Generals, their Troops together made up an Army of ſeventy or eighty thouſand Men: They were hardly aſſembled but they received Advice, that the *Tartars*, joining the *Turks*, and thinking themſelves ſuperior to the *Ruſſians* in Numbers, were marching towards them, with Intent to give them Battle. The Sultan *Galga* appeared, on the 30th of *July*, at the Head of the *Hordes* of *Crimea*, *Nogai*, *Ediſſanſki* and *Cuban* to attack the Army; the General fell upon them immediately, without giving them Time to deliberate; they ſuſtained the firſt Shock with a good deal of Vigour, but after the Battle had laſted ſome Hours they were entirely routed, and drove as far as the River *Halianka*, which they endeavoured to croſs in ſuch Diſorder and with ſo much Precipitation, that the greateſt Part of their Army was loſt by the Slaughter they received at the Hands of the *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks*, eſpecially the latter, and by the Numbers that were drowned, wounded and taken Priſoners. This Battle laſted above ten Hours, and was the more glorious to the Arms of his Czariſh Majeſty in that he loſt but few Men, and had not above twenty or thirty Officers of any Diſtinction wounded. 1697

This Victory was preceded by another Advantage gained at Sea. The *Tartars*, thinking

1697 thinking to ſurprize *Azoph*, had ſent a large Number of Half-Galleys, with other Veſſels full of Troops to execute their Deſign: But they found the Governor upon his Guard, as were the vigilant *Coſſacks*, who gave them a quite different Reception from what they expected, and the Ships that were under this Fortreſs, chaſing the *Turkiſh* Squadron, took ſeveral of their Veſſels and ſunk others.

The Body of Troops that were on the Side of the *Nieper* made good Progreſs likewiſe, and beat the *Tartars* every Time they came to attack them, which made them ſo terrible through all the little *Tartary* and even to the *Crimea*, that the *Cham* was reſolved to uſe his utmoſt Efforts to be delivered from them: For which Reaſon he hazarded another Battle near *Kaſſikermen*, in which the *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks* had the ſame Advantages as in the Firſt; and it coſt the *Cham* the Life of one of his Sons, ſeveral of the *Turkiſh* Baſhaws were likewiſe ſlain in the Battle. Theſe Advantages were followed by the taking and pillaging many little Places belonging to the *Tartars*, which left General *Schein* at Liberty to ſend a large Detatchment of Men to aſſiſt at the Canal that was now making between the *Don* and the *Volga*, for a Communication between the *Caſpian* and *Black-Sea*.

The *Turks* beat in *Hungary*.

This Year was every where fatal to the *Turks*, for, beſides theſe Loſſes on the Side of *Azoph*, and in *Tartary*, the Sultan received the greateſt Blow he had felt during his long War in *Hungary*, by the Loſs of the famous Battle of *Zenta*, where, in two Hours

Hours Time, the Imperial Army, under the Command of Prince *Eugene* of *Savoy*, gave him a total Defeat. The Grand Signior commanded his Armies in Perſon, and lay encamped on each Side of the *Thieſſe*, having laid a Bridge over the River; Prince *Eugene* marched up to him, and attacked his Camp, on the Weſt-Side the River, and, after a ſhort Diſpute, broke in, made himſelf Maſter of it, and forced all, who lay on that Side, over the River, whither he followed them. In the Action the *Germans* had not above four hundred Men killed, and about one thouſand ſix hundred wounded; but above twenty thouſand *Turks* were killed in the Field, among whom were the Grand Vizier and the Aga of the Janiſſaries; ten or twelve thouſand were drowned in the *Thieſſe*, and ſix thouſand wounded and taken Priſoners, in the Number of the laſt were twenty ſeven Baſhaws, and ſeveral Aga's. 1697

Death of *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden*.

At the ſame Time that his Czariſh Majeſty received this News, he had an Account of the Death of *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden*, in the forty ſecond Year of his Age and thirty ſeventh of his Reign, with whom he had lived in good Friendſhip. This Prince, at his Death, left but one Son, the Hope of his People, and two Daughters, one of whom was marry'd to *Frederick* the fourth, Duke of *Holſtein Gottorp*, and the youngeſt, the preſent Queen of *Sweden*, was then but in the ninth Year of her Age. *Charles* XI. by his laſt Will, put off the Majority of his Son *Charles* XII. to the Age of eighteen, and appointed his Mother Regent of the

1697 Kingdom, during the Minority of her Grand-
ſon; but, as the Laws of *Sweden* had fixe
the Majority of their Kings to the Age o
fifteen, which the young King was alread
arrived at, the States aſſembled at *Stockholm*
thought proper to change this Diſpoſition
and the King's Majority being declared, h
was crowned the ſame Year.

The Czar continued at *Amſterdam*, till th
middle of *January*, and then embarked, a
Helvoetſluys, for *London*. While his Ma-
jeſty was in *Holland*, he had ſeen ſeveral
Engliſh built Ships, whoſe Beauty and Pro-
portion pleaſed him much better than th
Dutch Ships, and underſtanding likewiſe tha
the *Engliſh* worked by Plan and Rule, whi
the People of *Holland* knew very little o
the Theory of Ship-building, he reſolved t
come over hither, that he might improv
his Knowledge therein to the utmoſt Perfec
tion. Upon an Intimation of this Intention
King *William* preſently ſent him his Com-
pliments, and ſeveral Cooks and other Ser-
vants were appointed to attend him and h
Retinue, who were all honourably entertaine
at the King's Charge, the whole Time, whic
was ſome Months, that he ſtaid in *England*
and alſo in his Paſſage over from *Holland*
and back again. A handſome Houſe wa
provided for him at the Bottom of *York*
Buildings near the Water-Side; he had ſe
veral Interviews with the King, and her M
Majeſty, then Princeſs *Anne* of *Denmark*
and ſeveral of the *Engliſh* Nobility; but h
was more pleaſed with the Converſation o
the then Marquiſs of *Carmarthen*, afterwar
Duk

Comes to *England*.

Duke of *Leeds*, than with any other, for the Inclinations of that Nobleman were in many Things agreeable to his own; like him he delighted in maritime Affairs, and would row and ſail with him on the Water; and gave him all the Information he could into the Knowledge of Shipping. 1697

During his Stay in *England*, he went to ſee the Univerſity of *Oxford*; was once to pay a Viſit to the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, at his Palace at *Lambeth*, and went many Times to ſee our Cathedrals and Churches, to obſerve the Order of our eſtabliſhed Religion, and had alſo the Curioſity to view our Quakers and other Diſſenters Meeting Houſes in the Time of their Service. Biſhop *Burnet* * ſays, "he waited on him often, "and was ordered, both by the King and "the Archbiſhop and Biſhops, to attend upon him, and to offer him ſuch Informations of our Religion and Conſtitution as "he was willing to receive: I had good "Interpreters, continues the Biſhop, ſo I had "much free Diſcourſe with him. He is "a Man of a very hot Temper, ſoon inflamed, and very brutal in his Paſſion; "he raiſes his natural Heat by drinking "much Brandy, which he rectifies himſelf "with great Application; he is ſubject to "convulſive Motions all over his Body, and "his Head ſeems to be affected with theſe: "He wants not Capacity, and has a larger "Meaſure of Knowledge, than might be "expected from his Education, which was

Biſhop *Burnet*'s Character of him.

* Hiſt. of his own Times. Vol. II. Pages 221, 222.

1697 " very indifferent; a Want of Judgment,
" with an Inſtability of Temper, appears in
" him too often, and too evidently: He is
" mechanically turned, and ſeems deſigned
" by Nature rather to be a Ship-Carpenter,
" than a great Prince; This was his chief
" Study and Exerciſe, while he ſtayed here:
" He wrought much with his own Hands,
" and made all about him work at the
" Models of Ships; he told me, he deſigned
" a great Fleet at *Azoph*, and with it to at-
" tack the *Turkiſh* Empire; but he did not
" ſeem capable of conducting ſo great a De-
" ſign, though his Conduct in his Wars
" ſince this, has diſcovered a greater Ge-
" nius in him, than appeared at that Time;
" He was deſirous to underſtand our Doc-
" trine, but he did not ſeem diſpoſed to mend
" Matters in *Muſcovy*: He was indeed re-
" ſolved to encourage Learning, and to po-
" liſh his People, by ſending ſome of them
" to travel in other Countries, and to draw
" Strangers to come and live among them:
" He ſeemed apprehenſive ſtill of his Siſ-
" ter's Intrigues: There is a Mixture both
" of Paſſion and Severity in his Temper.
" He is reſolute, but underſtands little of
" War, and ſeemed not at all inquiſitive
" that Way. After I had ſeen him often,
" and had converſed much with him, I
" could not but adore the Depth of the Pro-
" vidence of God, that had raiſed up ſuch
" a furious Man, to ſo abſolute an Autho-
" rity over ſo great a Part of the World.

I ſhall go no farther, becauſe the good Biſhop's Zeal ſeems to tranſport him a little

ittle beyond the Bounds of ſound Judgment. 1697
There is no Occaſion to make any other Remarks on the Character he has here given of that great Prince than this, that Matters of Fact contradict Part of what he as ſaid, a Part he has contradicted himelf, even in the ſame Breath almoſt that he tters it, and the Reſt may be true.

His Czariſh Majeſty, while he ſtayed at *London*, went to view the Tower, where he eemed much pleaſed with our Armoury, nd with the Manner of coining Money. He was ſhewn the two Houſes of Parliaent, when Sitting; and was prevailed upon wice or thrice to go to the Play, tho' this as a Diverſion he had no Taſte for; yet it as whiſper'd about, that one of the Acreſſes, Miſs *Croſs*, had found the Way to leaſe him, and had been once admitted nto his Company. His Majeſty uſed to reſs after the *Engliſh* Faſhion, ſometimes ke a Gentleman, and ſometimes like a Saior; he went abroad with little Attendance, nd when the Mob had found out who he as, and began to gaze at him, he would lways quit the Place where he was.

A Houſe in *London*, eſpecially above ridge, being neither agreeable to his Huour nor the Deſign of his coming to *Engnd*, a very neat one was fitted up for him, elonging to Mr. *Evelyn*, with a back oor into the King's Yard at *Debtford*, where e would often take up the Carpenters Tools, nd work with them; he frequently conerſed with the Builders, who ſhewed him eir Draughts, and the Method of laying

1697 down by Proportion any Ship or Veſſel, of what Body ſoever they required, with the Rule for moulding and building a Ship, according as layed down in ſuch Draught; with which his Majeſty was wonderfully pleaſed, and this he found practiſed every where, in the Merchants, as well as in the King's Yards; ſeeing with how much more Skill our People worked than the Ship-Builders in *Holland*, he thought he had miſpent all the Time he was there, and uſed to ſay he ſhould never have learned his Trade if he had not come to *England*.

The King ſent admiral *Mitchel* along with him to *Portſmouth*, to put the Fleet out to Sea which lay at *Spithead*, and on Purpoſe to entertain him with a mock Engagement, which he had ſeen alſo in *Holland*, but not near ſo much to his Satisfaction as this; which gave him ſo great Pleaſure, that he declared he thought an *Engliſh* Admiral a happier Man than a Czar of *Muſcovy*. In ſhort, he approved ſo well of all he had ſeen in *England* relating to our Shipping, that he reſolved to have nothing but *Engliſh* built Ships in his Country, and thereupon took ſeveral *Engliſh* Ship-Builders and Artificers into his Service, to be employed in the Navy he was about to eſtabliſh. He likewiſe took other ingenious Workmen of different Kinds to be ſent into *Muſcovy*, among the Reſt Captain *John Perry* was recommended to him, by the Marquis of *Carmarthen* and others, as a Perſon capable of ſerving him in ſeveral of his Deſigns, particularly in that of making a Co

a Communication between the Rivers *Volga* and *Don*, before-mentioned. 1697

An Account of the Communication between the *Don* and *Volga*.

The Diſtance of this Communication is about one hundred and forty *Ruſs* Miles, by Way of two other ſmall Rivers, the one called the *Laſla*, which falls into the *Don*; the other the *Camiſhinſka*, which falls into the *Volga*; upon theſe two ſmall Rivers Sluices were to be placed to make them navigable, and a Canal, of near four *Ruſs* Miles, to be cut through the dry Land, where the two ſmall Rivers came neareſt to one another. When the *Ruſſians* are in Poſſeſſion of *Azoph*, this muſt be of great Advantage to their Country, eſpecially in Caſe of any War with the *Turks* or *Crim Tartars*, or with *Perſia*, or any of the Countries bordering on the *Caſpian Sea*.

The Work was firſt began by one Colonel *Breckell*, a *German*, who was a Colonel in the Czar's Army, and who had the Reputation of a very good Engineer as to Fortifications, and the like; but underſtanding very little of this Buſineſs, the firſt Sluice he placed blew up, therefore he came to *Moſcow*, and having obtained a Paſs, as for a Servant to be ſent for Materials for the Work, he made uſe of it himſelf, and ſo eſcaped out of the Country. The Czar had an Account of this while he was in *England*, and ſent Captain *Perry* before named, to examine if the Work was practicable or not; which proved ſo, and is ſince finiſhed; but *Azoph* having been retaken by the *Turks*, the great Uſefulneſs and Advantage from the Undertaking has not been ſo well known as perhaps they may be now,

1697 that her preſent Imperial Majeſty of *Ruſſia* has again made it a Part of her Empire.

Czar treats with the *Engliſh* Merchants, for a free Importation of Tobacco into his Dominions.

While the Czar was here, ſome conſiderable Merchants of *London*, entered into a Treaty with him, which was managed by *Menzikoff* and *Gollowin*, for a free Importation of Tobacco, into his Dominions; and they paid him twelve thouſand Pounds, immediately upon ſigning the Contract; but he made one Condition, that it ſhould be firſt licenſed by the Marquiſs of *Carmarthen*; this he did as an Acknowledgment of the Kindneſs he had received from him, and in Return for his obliging Converſation. The Benefit accruing to that Lord from this Agreement was five Shillings for every Hogſhead of Tobacco, which the Patriarch had before prohibited in *Ruſſia*, as an irreligious and unclean Thing, and to this Day no Prieſt will ſmoak, or come into a Room where Tobacco is ſmoaking.

At a Meeting which the Merchants before mentioned had with the Czar the late Sir *Gilbert Heathcote*, then Mr. *Heathcote*, Maſter of the *Eaſtland* Company, obſerved to him, that he feared the Averſion which the Prieſts had to Tobacco, would be a great Impediment to their Trade, to which the Czar anſwered, *That he would do well enough with them when he went home.*

Notwithſtanding Biſhop *Burnet* ſays, that *he did not ſeem diſpoſed to mend Matters* in Muſcovy, (in religious Affairs he means) yet this anſwer to Mr. *Heathcote* ſhews, that he had formed ſuch a Deſign, and it is very well known that he put it in Execution.

Whe

When the Czar left *England*, King *William* gave him leave to take any of his Subjects into his Service that he ſhould have Occaſion for; and made him a Preſent of a fine Yacht, called the Royal Tranſport, the beſt then in *England*, it carry'd twenty four Guns, and was contrived by the Marquiſs of *Carnarthen*, for the King to paſs between *England* and *Holland*, during the Time of the War. He took with him one Mr. *Ferghar-ſon*, an ingenious Mathematician, bred in the Univerſity of *Aberdeen*, and two young Mathematicians out of Chriſt-Church Hoſpital, who, with the Ship-Builders and ſeveral other Artificers were ſent to *Arch-Angel*, the greateſt Part of them in the fine Yacht. 1698

Leaves *England.*

His Czariſh Majeſty from hence went back again to *Holland*, and from thence to the Court of *Vienna*, where the next Day after his Arrival he had a private Audience of the Emperor *Leopold* at the Palace *de la Favorita*. He entered by a Pair of Back-Stairs, and his Imperial Majeſty received him at the Door of the Anti-chamber. After the firſt Compliments, the Emperor put on his Hat, but ſeeing the Czar refuſed to be covered, becauſe he was *Incognito*, his Imperial Majeſty uncovered alſo. No Body was preſent at this Interview, but the Count *de Valenſtein*, grand Chamberlain to the Emperor, and the Count *de Dietrichſtein* his grand Equerry, with General *Le Fort*, who ſerved as the Czar's Interpreter.

Goes to the Emperor's Court at *Vienna.*

A few Days after Count *Starenberg*, Camp-Marſhal General of the Emperor's Armies, and Preſident of the Council of War, gave the

1698. the Czar and his Ambaſſadors a magnificent Collation, accompany'd with a Concert of Muſick, and after that a noble Ball, where were preſent the principal Lords and Ladies of the Court. On the ninth of *July*, being the Feſtival of St. *Peter*, the Name which the Czar received in Baptiſm, he himſelf gave a great Feaſt and Ball in *Gunterſdorf* Houſe, where the Ambaſſadors were lodged. The Emperor ſent him his Muſick, and ordered large Fire-Works to be made ready, which were play'd off in the Evening. The ſame Day his Imperial Majeſty ſent a Preſent, of all Manner of Mathematical Inſtruments, to the Czar, who two Days after went to ſee the Armoury, the Library, the Pictures, and all the other Rarities of the Imperial Palace. About a Week after this, a great Feaſt was prepared at the *Favourita*, which began with a Ball, and a Concert of Muſick; afterwards a ſplendid Collation was given to the Company, and then followed another Ball, which laſted till Break of Day. Every Maſker was in the Habit of a different Nation, ſo that almoſt all the Countries of the World were there repreſented, and every Prince or Lord had a Lady by his Side, in anſwerable Habits, of rich Stuff, adorned with large Quantities of Jewels; ſo that a more magnificent Sight can hardly be imagined.

The Emperor, who repreſented an Hoſt, with two and thirty Pages habited like Butlers, drank in a curious Glaſs to the Country-man of *Oſt Friſe*'s Health, in which Character the Czar appeared, ſaying, at the ſame

ſame Time, that he knew well his extraordinary Zeal for the Czar of *Muſcovy*; and, on the other Side, the Country-man of *Oſt Friſe* drank the Health of the Hoſt in diſguiſe, ſaying, That he was not ignorant of his inviolable Affection for the Emperor of *Germany*. After which his Imperial Majeſty made a Preſent of the Glaſs to the Country-man of *Oſt Friſe*, deſiring him to preſerve it carefully in Memory of the Healths drank in ſuch good Company. 1698

Upon the 29th of *July* the Grand Embaſſy had their publick Audience; to which they were conducted in a very magnificent Manner, and were treated very ſplendidly at the Emperor's Expence.

Whilſt the Czar was thus on his Travels, conciliating to himſelf the Affections of the greateſt Powers of *Europe*; making Obſervations, and learning Arts for the Improvement of his Country, Intelligence coming frequently to *Moſcow*, that he was extremely pleaſed with what he met with in foreign Countries, eſpecially in *England*; that he was ſending a great Number of Officers, Artificers, and all Sorts of Strangers among them; and that he intended to make great Alterations in his own Affairs, as ſoon as he came home, the diſcontented Party, who were in the Intereſt of the Princeſs *Sophia*, took a Handle from thence to infuſe ſtrong Jealouſies into the Minds of the People, which were greatly fomented by the Prieſts, that his Majeſty would ſubvert their holy Religion; and, by bringing Foreigners among them, deſigned to oppreſs his

1698 Another Conſpiracy.

his natural Subjects, and quite change the antient Eſtabliſhment both in Church and State; Upon which a Conſpiracy was formed to declare the Throne vacant, by his Abſence, to ſet his Siſter free from her Confinement, and place her thereon in his Stead.

The *Strelitzes* knew very well that they had loſt the Czar's Favour, and about ten thouſand of theſe, ſent into winter Quarters on the Confines of *Lithuania*, about five hundred Miles from *Moſcow*, had agreed to join the Conſpirators, and the better to colour their Deſign, they were to make ſome Complaint concerning their Pay, and march away directly; but the Regency, appointed by the Czar at his Departure, hearing of their Motion, ſent at firſt ſeveral Perſons to endeavour to pacify them by fair Means, who offer'd them not only all their preſent Pay and Arrears, but ſix Months Pay advance, and uſed all Means to prevail with them to return and join the other Forces, who were very ſoon, the Time of the Campaign drawing near, to form an Army againſt the *Turks*: But they would liſten to no Propoſals, they ſaid, till they had been at *Moſcow*, to ſee their Friends, from whom they had been ſo long baniſhed, and would likewiſe inform themſelves what was become of the Czar, not knowing whether he was dead or alive.

Upon hearing an Account of this ill Succeſs of the Deputies, ſent by the Regency, the whole City was in a great Conſternation, many Perſons of Condition left *Moſcow*, and retired into the Country, dreading what might

night happen upon the Approach of theſe Troops, and the Revolt of others, and having ſeen the terrible Havock and Devaſtation that was made by theſe very *Strelitzes* in their Rebellion, but a few Years before; to prevent any Inſurrection, and put a Stop to the Dangers that were threatened, General *Gordon* was ordered to march againſt the Mutineers, with his Army; which had been many Times in Action with him, and which conſiſted of old Soldiers for the moſt Part, and foreign Officers. They came up with the Rebels about forty Miles from *Moſcow*, near the *Jeruſalem* Monaſtery, from whence the General ſent ſome Noblemen, who came out with him as Voluntiers, and ſeveral Officers, to offer them honourable Satisfaction, if they would return to their Duty; but they very obſtinately perſiſted in their firſt Reſolution of coming to *Moſcow*, to know, as they pretended, whether the Czar was living or dead; and declared, that if his General lead his Army againſt them, although it was double their Number, they would oppoſe him at all hazards. 1698.

General *Gordon*, receiving this Anſwer, ordered ſome Cannon to be fired over their Heads, to frighten them, and ſummoned them to ſurrender; but the Shot doing no Execution, the Prieſts took this Advantage to confirm them in their Reſolution, and declared, that it was a Miracle, and that the Shot had no Power to hurt them, who were going to fight for the Honour of God, and in Defence of their holy Religion. Thus, puffed up with the true Spirit of Enthuſiaſm, the Rebels

1698 Rebels gave a great Shout, and ran furiously upon the General's Army; whereupon a very sharp Engagement ensued, that lasted near two Hours. The Rebels now found, too late, that Miracles were ceased, and having two or three thousand Men killed on the Spot, surrendered themselves Prisoners. The General hang'd up every tenth Man, after the Manner of the *Roman* Decimation, when the Battle was over, and brought the Rest Prisoners to *Moscow*, where several of the Ring-leaders, being examined on the Pine, confessed their Crimes, and discovered the Principal Persons concerned with them: They owned, that they were to release the Princess *Sophia*, and put the Government into her Hands, to whom they thought of right it belonged.

The Czar receives an Account of the Rebellion.

When the first Account of this Rebellion came to the Czar, he was at the Court of *Vienna*, where the Emperor, with whom he was in Alliance, had entertained him most magnificently, as is before related; and from thence he was preparing to go to *Venice*, in which State, as well as at *Rome*, great Preparations were making for his Reception; but this News made him alter his Resolution, and set out directly for *Moscow*, by the Way of *Poland*, where he had a short Interview with King *Augustus*, and it was thought he concerted Measures with that Prince, at this Time, for the War that was soon after declared with *Sweden*, there being a Treaty of Peace then on Foot with the *Turks*, by the Mediation of King *William*.

The

The Czar ſet forward with a Train of thirty Perſons, among whom were General *Le Fort*, and Count *Gollowin*, but the Diack *Voſrifeſtyn* was left at *Vienna*, being to aſſiſt, as Plenipotentiary, at the Congreſs of *Carlowitz*. His Majeſty proceeded with ſo much Expedition and Secrecy that he arrived at *Moſcow*, to the great Joy of his faithful Friends and Subjects, and to the Terror and Confuſion of his Enemies, before it was known in that City that he was on his Journey: The very next Day after his Arrival, he ordered very handſome Rewards to be given to thoſe Soldiers who had been ſtedfaſt in their Loyalty, and fought faithfully in his Service; he likewiſe ordered the principal Agents and Contrivers of the Rebellion to be brought before him; and having fully examined them himſelf, before his Boyars, they were all ſentenced to Death. Among the Conſpirators were Prince *Colorin* and General *Romanodoſkowſki*, with ſeveral Ladies of Quality and many Prieſts of the firſt Rank, who had been great Incendiaries among the People, under Pretence of defending the Purity of their Faith and Doctrines. A great Number of the Conſpirators were beheaded, ſome broke upon the Wheel, and others buried alive; above two thouſand of the *Strelitzes* were executed, ſome had their Heads taken off in the Market Place, and others hang'd upon Gallowſes erected for that Purpoſe, at the Gates of all the Walls that encompaſs the City. Thoſe who were beheaded were laid in Ranks upon the Ground with their Heads by them, where they were left, as thoſe

1698

Returns to *Moſcow*.

1698 those hanging at the Gates were, all the Winter, and then taken away to prevent the Air's being infected by them. Other Gibbets were ſet up in the publick Roads leading to *Moſcow*, at about two Miles diſtance, upon which a great Number of the other Rebels were hang'd, and large Monumeents of Stone were erected near the ſame on the Roads, with an Account of their Crimes deeply engraven thereon, and ordered to be repaired, as occaſion required, to perpetuate the Memory of them. The very Houſes in which they lived were razed to the Ground, and the Name of *Strelitzes* were commanded, from henceforth, to be aboliſhed, and changed into that of *Soldatee*, or Soldiers. Such of the *Strelitzes* as were judged the leaſt guilty had their Lives ſpared, but were baniſhed to *Siberia*, *Aſtracan*, *Azoph*, and the fartheſt Parts of the Empire, with their Wives, their Families, and neareſt of Kin.

Eſtabliſhes his Guards.

His Majeſty, on his Return from his Travels, having puniſhed his Enemies, turned his Thoughts on reforming his Government and People. He began with eſtabliſhing his Guards, which were thoſe Regiments that were ſettled in the Room of the *Strelitzes*; he then put his whole Army on a new Footing, and directed a new Manner of diſciplining them, agreeable to what he had ſeen abroad. They were all regularly cloathed, with ſome ſmall Difference in the Colour and Trimmings of their Cloaths, as is the Cuſtom of other Nations; for till then every one had his Cloaths made after his own Fancy. He ordered an

Account

ccount to be brought him of all thoſe a- 1699
ong the Nobility and Gentry of conſide-
ble Eſtates, who had no Employments,
ut of whom he made choice of a great Num-
er; and commanded them to ſerve as Volun-
ers in his Army, or go to reſide in the
rontier Garriſons; and, having thus ordered
ffairs in Reſpect to his land Forces, he
ent down to *Veronis* to view the Ships and
allies himſelf, that were built by the *Dutch*
n his Abſence, and to haſten the Equip-
ent of his Fleet that he deſigned for the
lack-Sea.

The City of *Veronis* is ſituated upon a
igh Hill, ſurrounded with a wooden Wall,
nd divided into three Parts, in one of
hich, called *Jakatof*, the chief of the *Ruſ-*
an Merchants have their Abode; there is
great Rope-Walk in this City, and the
owder is kept in ſubterraneous Magazines
ithout the Wall. Upon the Side of the
Hill, along the River, there are ſeveral
Houſes, about four hundred Paces in extent,
he chief of them belong to the *Ruſſian*
dmirals; moſt of them are over againſt the
itadel, and thoſe of the Vice-Admiral and
ther Officers, on the Side of them, and be-
ind theſe are Streets for thoſe employed in
hip-building. The City ſtands on the Weſt-
ide of the River *Veronis*, whoſe Name it
orrows, and the Citadel is on the other
ide, to which there is a large Bridge of
ommunication. The Ditches about it are
ll of Water. The Citadel is a ſquare Build-
ng, with Towers at the four Angles; it
as large Apartments in it, and makes a

The City of *Veronis* deſcribed.

1699 grand Figure without. This is the chief Mag
zine, wherein are about one hundred and fif
Pieces of Cannon, though moſt of them witho
Carriages for the more ready tranſporti
them when wanted. The Citadel is defen
ed with Palliſadoes in ſeveral Places, a
filled with a pretty good Garriſon, as w
as the Country about, to withſtand the Ta
tars. The Conveniences for Ship-building a
on one Side, and the Store-houſe on the
ther, which is a great Building, three Stor
high, the two firſt of Stone, and the oth
of Wood. Here are many Places full of
Sorts of naval Stores, in each Place apa
even to the Sailors Cloaths, and every thi
elſe that they can have need of. The Sa
Houſe is on one Side of this Building, a
it is computed that there are ten thouſa
Souls in this Town.

As ſoon as his Czariſh Majeſty came hith
he made the *Engliſh*, he had brought ov
his chief Maſter Builders, except ſome fe
who were to finiſh Ships they had begu
He ordered that, for the Future, no Shi
ſhould be built but after the *Engliſh* Model
and, immediately upon his Arrival, put
fifty Gun Ship upon the Stocks, from
Draught he had made himſelf, and ſo co
trived, by an Invention of his own, that
the Keel ſhould be knock'd off, the Veſſ
would keep tight. When he had proceed
a little Way on this Ship, he left it to be c
ry'd on by two young *Ruſſian* Gentlem
who had travelled with him, and learn
the Art of Ship-building in his Compan
but ordered them to take Advice from t
Engl

Engliſh Ship-Builders when they had Occaſion. He alſo left Orders with Vice-Admiral *Cruſs*, and Rear-Admiral *Raes*, and ſome other Officers, at *Veronis*, whom he had taken into his Service in *Holland*, before he came over into *England*, to get thoſe Ships and Gallies that were now built, rigged and ready fitted to be carry'd down to *Azoph*, whither he intended to go with them in the Spring of the Year, with his Admiral M. *Le Fort*. 1699

Settles his Navy.

The Death of General *Le Fort*.

His Czariſh Majeſty had ſcarce ſettled the Affairs of his Navy at *Veronis*, before he was haſtened to *Moſcow*, by a Misfortune that befel him, and indeed it might be accounted ſo to his whole Country, and this was, the Death of his Favourite *Le Fort*. A Man who had highly deſerved all the Honours that he had, or could, confer upon him. The Czar was ſenſibly touched with this Loſs, and ordered the moſt magnificent Pomp to attend his Funeral Obſequies, at which he aſſiſted himſelf, crying with a loud Voice, *that he had loſt his Father*. This great Miniſter left, at his Death, which was but in the 46th Year of his Age, near a Million of *Roubles*, all acquired without Oppreſſion or Corruption; he married into a very rich Family, the Head of which he had ſaved, as he had ſeveral others, from the Rage of his Maſter. He was *diſintereſted*, *humane*, *juſt*, *ſober*, *generous* and *brave*. Never was Servant more beloved by his Prince or more deſerving it. And, what is not very common with Favourites, he gained his Maſter's Eſteem by his Merit only. Honours beſtowed on ſuch Men reflect Honour on the

1699 Prince who is ſo prudent in his Choice, ſo wiſe in his Diſcernment.

The Pomp of his Funeral. The Pomp that waited on the Funeral of this Great Man, was ſuch as had never before been ſeen in *Muſcovy*, on any the like Occaſion.

The Military Ceremonies were the ſame as were uſed in the more polite Parts of *Europe*. The Drums and Colours were all covered with Black, the Officers of the three Regiments, of 2500 Men each, who preceded the Hearſe, had black Scarves and their Pikes garniſhed at Top with Knots of black Ribbon, before whom went ſeveral Flutes and other ſoft Inſtruments of Muſick, playing the moſt melancholy Airs; the Czar himſelf led theſe three Regiments dreſs'd in deep Mourning, with his Pike in his Hand; before his Majeſty, was carried the Standard with his Arms; he was followed by a Colonel, who carried the General's Staff, and after that two Trumpeters, two Hautboys, and ſeveral others, ſilent on Horſeback; next came two Sumpter Horſes richly capariſoned; and then a Major General, before the Enſigns of Honour belonging to the deceaſed, laid on black Velvet Cuſhions embroidered with Gold: His Admiral's Pavilion was carried by two Officers of the Marines, with long black Scarves; and then four Major-Generals and four Colonels in deep Mourning were followed by the Scholars of all the Colleges and publick Schools; and five Proteſtant Miniſters, three of the Reform'd Religon and two of the *Augsburg* Confeſſion, went before the Corps, which was in a rich Coffin covered with black Vel-

vet adorned with Gold Lace and Fringe, and on the Sides with Silver Plates on which were he Arms of the Deceaſed, it was carried by wenty eight Colonels, who relieved one ano-her every quarter of an Hour. After the Corps ame Mr. *Peter Le Fort*, the Deceaſed's Ne-hew, in a black Cloak with a long Train, ccompanied by the Envoys Extraordinary of he Emperor, and the Elector of *Branden-ourg*, followed by four Pages; all the Ge-eral Officers marched next with 24 of the Princes and Dukes of the *Ruſſian* Empire; he principal Officers, and Captains of the Navy, the Reſidents of *Sweden*, *Denmark* nd *Brandenbourg*, with many of the chief Nobility all in long black Cloaks. After heſe came the Widow of the Deceaſed ſup-orted by two of the oldeſt Generals, accom-anied by twenty four Ladies led by Noblemen n deep Mourning. Thouſands of People at-ended the Proceſſion, which was regulated y four Maſters of the Ceremonies. The uneral Sermon was preached by one *Stom-hius*, who took, for his Text, Part of the Words of 8th Chap. of *Eccleſiaſtes*, ver. 8. *There is no Man hath Power in the Day of Death; and there is no Diſcharge in that War.* 1699

The Czar himſelf was preſent while the Fu-eral Sermon was preached, in one of the Reformed Churches, and afterwards went with he Body to the Place of Interment, where it as depoſited in a Vaulted Tomb, under a Diſcharge of forty Pieces of Cannon and the Muſkets of all the Regiments, followed by ſe-eral Pieces of ſolemn Muſick: Here the Fu-

1699 neral Oration was pronounced by Dr. *Stomphius* aforesaid, after which were repeated a second and third Salvo of the Artillery and Muskets, and then the Company returned, in the same Order they came, to the mourning Palace of the Deceased, where a magnificent Collation was prepared, according to the Custom of the Country.

This melancholy Office over, his Majesty now began to regulate the Affairs of his Government; he chose a new Set of Lords to be of his Council: And, that he might do Honour to some of those who had faithfully served him, he instituted the Order of St. *Andrew*, which was the first Order of Knighthood ever known in that Country; and it seemed, says M. *de la Motraye*, as if he intended it to be the Epoch, or Date, of those Projects he had in View, and which the World has since seen him put in Execution. He could not, says the same Author, have bestowed a more venerable and agreeable Name on this Order, to the *Russians*, because they have a standing Tradition, that the Apostle St. *Andrew* planted the Cross among them. The Collar of the Order is a blue Ribband, to which there hangs a Cross with the Image of that Saint, and these two Letters, S. A. surmounted by an Eagle, and the Sovereign's Name engraven thereon. Prince *Menzikoff* was the first on whom he conferr'd it.

The Order of St. *Andrew* instituted.

The Czar's Ministers, at the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, before this, had concluded a Truce with the *Turks* for two Years; but the Emperor, the King of *Poland*, and the *Venetians* having

The Czar makes a Truce with the *Turks*.

aving agreed on Preliminaries for a perpe- 1699
ial Peace, the Czar wrote to King *William*, who was Mediator at the ſaid Treaty, to get he Truce prolonged for him; he, accordingly, ſent Directions to the Lord *Paget*, his Ambaſſador at the *Porte*, to take the ſame Care of the Czar's Affairs as of the Reſt of he Princes of Chriſtendom, by which Means he Czar's Truce was prolonged for twenty ive Years, much to his Satisfaction: And he very next Day after the Ratification of , he declared War with the young King of *Sweden*: As, about the ſame time, had the Kings of *Poland* and *Denmark*, who were n Alliance with the Czar. It muſt be conſeſſed, that theſe three powerful Princes joining together to fall upon *Charles* XII. at one Time, who was then not eighteen Years of Age, had ſomething ſo ungenerous in it as ſeemed to juſtify the Revenge he afterwards ook upon them; but the Raſhneſs and Impetuoſity with which he purſued it, proved atal to himſelf and his Country.

Whatever the Czar's Pretences were for entering into this War, the true Motive was, the Hopes he had of recovering *Ingria*, which had formerly belonged to *Muſcovy*, till taken by the great *Guſtavus Adolphus*. The Czar, by poſſeſſing this Province, would be enabled to have a Port on the Eaſt Side of the Baltick, o compleat his great Deſign of opening ew Ways between that and the *Euxine* and *Caſpian* Seas, and from thoſe to the Northern Ocean, which was to be done by cutting Canals to unite the Rivers *Volga*, *Tanais* and *Dwina*. He had likewiſe Pretenſions to the

1699 Province of *Livonia*, which though he would not have liked to have ſeen in the Poſſeſſion of the *Poles*, yet he was willing to aſſiſt them to take it from the *Swedes*.

While the Czar's Army and Fleet were preparing for the enſuing War, he began his intended Reformation in the Church and State; in the Manners, Cuſtoms, and even the Dreſs of his People: But that the Reader may the better apprehend what he undertook, it may not be improper to make him acquainted with the former State of theſe Affairs.

The *Muſcovite* Religion.

The *Muſcovite* Religion is properly that of the *Greek* Church, in many Things differing from the *Roman* and reformed Churches. They receive the Euchariſt in both Kinds, obſerve four Lents, and have Service daily in their Churches. The great Devotion of the *Muſcovites* lies in aſſiſting at Maſſes, which the Prieſts begin at Midnight; they repeat the *Miſerere*, which they call *Hoſpidi Pomilio*, a hundred Times over, and the Prieſt who can ſay it ofteneſt in a Breath is looked upon as the beſt Man among them. Before the Time of *Peter* I. it was a very extraordinary Thing to meet with any one among the Clergy, who knew any Language but his own, nor was there any College for educating thoſe ſet apart for the Duties of Religion, the *Ruſſians* never regarding from whence they took their Prieſts, which they did ſometimes from the very meaneſt and most mechanical Trades. Nay, ſuch Enemies were they to Learning, that a Preſs with Letters being once ſent from *Poland* to *Moſcow*, a Printing-Houſe was erected by the

Appro

Approbation of one of the former Czars; but the Building was ſet Fire to in the Night, and burnt to the Ground, by the Procurement, as it was generally ſuppoſed, of the Prieſts, who looked upon all Books, but ſuch as treated of their own Hiſtory and the Miracles of their Saints, as dangerous as Witchcraft. 1699

The *Muſcovites* formerly very illiterate.

The *Muſcovites* love to build Churches, and whenever a Boyar built an Houſe he uſed to raiſe a Chapel, and maintain in it as many Monks as he could afford. They had many large Monaſteries poſſeſſed by Monks and Friars, which had conſiderable Revenues in Land and Houſes belonging to them. They paid Adoration to many Saints, had a great Number of Holidays, and much of their Religion conſiſted in Ceremonies.

And of Conſequence very ſuperſtitious.

Of all their Saints, St. *Nicholas* was in greateſt Veneration among them, and to him they paid the ſame Reſpect as to God himſelf, often crying, a Thing will happen ſo or ſo if it pleaſe St. *Nicholas:* But the moſt abſurd of all Miracles that ever was invented, was what they attributed to St. *Anthony*, who, as they ſaid, came all the Way from *Rome* to *Novogorod*, by Water on a Mill Stone, ſailing down the *Tyber* to *Civita Vechia*, from thence paſſing through ſeveral Seas to the Mouth of the *Neva*, then went up that, and, croſſing the Lake *Ladoga* into the *Volcoff*, arrived at the City before named. Beſides this extraordinary Voyage, he wrought ſeveral other Miracles as ſoon as he landed, where the Monaſtery now ſtands that is dedicated to him; one was, to order a Company of Fiſhermen

St. *Anthony's* miraculous Voyage, on a Millſtone.

1699 Fiſhermen to caſt their Nets into the Sea, which having done, they immediately drew up, with a great Quantity of Fiſh, a large Trunk containing ſeveral Church Ornaments, ſacred Utenſils and prieſtly Veſtments for celebrating the *Liturgy*, which the *Ruſſians* believe, as well as the Eaſtern *Greeks*, was firſt performed at *Rome* in the ſame Manner and with the ſame Ceremonies as they themſelves uſe at this Time; the People tell you farther, that he built himſelf a little Cell, in which he ended his Days. In this Place there now ſtands a Chapel, in which they ſay he was buried, and that his Body remains as uncorrupted and entire as at the Inſtant of his Death. Over the Door of the Cell the Monks ſhew a Mill-Stone, which they endeavour to make the ignorant People believe is the very ſame, that the Saint ſailed upon from *Rome*, and to which great Devotions were once paid, and many Offerings made, till the Time that *Peter* the Great made himſelf ſovereign Pontiff, as will be mentioned hereafter. Pictures and Images of their Saints, they uſed likewiſe to have in great Abundance in their Houſes; and the *Muſcovites* were ſo ſuperſtitious, that if any one had to do with a Woman, and any of the Images of their Saints were in the Room, they would take care to cover them, that they might not be Witneſſes of their Actions.

The Celebration of *Eaſter*.

Among their Holidays, Eaſter is a Feſtival of great Joy to the *Muſcovites*, not only on Account of the moſt ineſtimable Bleſſing that it is to commemorate, but as it puts an End to their longeſt and ſevereſt Lent; on the

he Eaſter-Sunday, and for a Fortnight after, it is a Cuſtom among them, to preſent Eggs o one another, which are coloured, for that Purpoſe, ſome red, ſome blue, ſome green, nd others, for the better Sort of People, inely painted, and ſold for two or three Rix-ollars a Piece. When two Friends meet in he *Eaſter*-Holidays, they preſent each other with theſe, and joining Hands in a ſolemn Manner, one ſays, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, *Chriſt is riſen*; and the other anſwers WOIS-TINO WOS CHREST, *Yea he is truly riſen.* Some of their coloured Eggs have likewiſe the ſame Words written on them, which, when offered, there is no one of what Sex or Condition ſoever, refuſes. 1699

The moſt pompous of all their Ceremonies was that of *Palm*-Sunday; which was wont to be performed in the following Manner. A hundred Men were ordered to clean the Streets before the Proceſſion began. The Czar himſelf marched on foot, richly dreſſed in Cloth of Gold, the Train of his Robe borne up by Princes, and all the Court waiting on him. The firſt that went before him was the Officer that carried his Handkerchief, lying on another embroidered all over, which hung on his Arm, the Servants of the Houſhold going before him. In this Order they proceded to the Church, called *Jeruſalem*; but ſtopt, by the Way, at a Place built with Free-Stone, in the Manner of a Platform, where he ſaid his Prayers, bent his Body almoſt double turning towards the Eaſt, and then entered the Church of *Jeruſalem*, which is not far off. The Proceſſion on *Palm*-Sunday.

He

1699

The great State of the Patriarch.

He uſed to ſtay there an Hour, and then returned to his Palace, holding on his Arm the Bridle of the *Patriach*'s Horſe capariſoned with white Linnen, on which the Prelate rid aſide, like a Woman, carrying a Croſs in his Hand, and giving his Benediction to the People. The Reigns of his Bridle were three Ells long ſupported by three Gentlemen marching behind the Emperor; and the Head of the Horſe was held by a Boyar. Inſtead of a Mitre, the Patriarch wore, at that Time, a flat Cap on his Head, adorned with Diamonds and Golden Loops, edged round with Ermines. A Band of young Men carry'd ſeveral Pieces of Stuff of three or four Ells long, before him of various Colours. The Metropolites, the Protopopes and the Popes, had all of them *Chaſubles* on, a Sort of Caps uſed by the Popiſh Prieſts when they ſay Maſs; of theſe and other Prieſts about five hundred marched in the Proceſſion, every one carrying ſomething in his Hand, one a Book, another a Croſs, and ſome Croſiers; thoſe who marched next the Patriarch, carry'd great Pictures of the Virgin richly adorned with Gold, Jewels, and Chaplets or Bead-rolls of Pearls; others carry'd great Croſſes richly adorned likewiſe, and ſo heavy, that ſome were forced to be carry'd by four Prieſts.

Then came thoſe who carry'd the Goſpels, which were vaſtly magnificent, for a ſingle Leaf has coſt ſix or ſeven thouſand Pounds. The Czar *Peter* had one made for him, by a *French* Jeweller, on each Side ſet with five Emeralds, the leaſt of which was worth ten thouſand Crowns.

The

The Gentlemen and Lawyers had Boughs of Willow, inſtead of Branches of Palm, in their Hands. The Czar's Guards, and the People proſtrated themſelves flat on the Ground, like the *Tartars* before their Grand *Lama*; and a triumphal Arch was borne along with a Tree on it, from which ſeveral Boys in the Machine endeavoured to reach the Apples that were hanging on it. When the Ceremony was over, the Patriarch ſometimes ſent the Czar a Purſe with a hundred Roubles in it; at other Times the Czar went home to dinner with him. 1699

There is a Niche in the *Jeruſalem* Church, where the Patriarch uſed to ſtand to give his Benediction to the People, after which he repeated theſe Words, *Go, and eat nothing theſe three Days.*

I have heard a pleaſant Story, of an Accident that happened to an *Engliſh* Merchant's Servant, on account of this Benediction. The Servant was a *Ruſſian* by Birth, but born far in the Country, and having never ſeen ſuch a Ceremony before, when he returned from Church he appeared ſo melancholy that his Maſter took notice, and aſked the Reaſon of it. The *Ruſſian* told him of the Orders which were given by the moſt holy Patriarch, that no Body ſhould eat any Thing in three Days; and ſaid, he was afraid he ſhould die with Hunger in the mean Time. He faſted two or three Days, and was ready to eat himſelf, not being uſed to ſuch Penance, however he held out; and then, notwithſtanding his great Veneration for

1699

for the Patriarch, ſwore he would never g to Church to hear his Bleſſing again.

The first riſe of the patriarchal Dignity in *Ruſſia*.

The patriarchal Dignity was introduc into the *Ruſſian* Church by meer Chance which till the Year fifteen hundred eigh eight, acknowledged the Patriarch of *Co ſtantinople* for hers; and this was by the Mea of one *Hieronimo*, who was degraded, an depoſed by the Clergy from that antie patriarchal See, which he had very unwo thily filled for ſome Years. He was on of thoſe *Greek* Prelates, and wandering Beg gars, who pretend to have been unjuſtly pe ſecuted by the *Turks*, ſuch as have been run ning through all the Kingdoms and Provin ces in the chriſtian Parts of *Europe*, but on of the cunningeſt and boldeſt that lyin *Greece* ever produced. This *Hieronimo*, t revenge himſelf on the Clergy of *Conſtantino ple*, and fill his Purſe, propoſed to the Cz *Theodore Ivanowitz*, among other Project (one of which was an Alliance of *Muſcov* with *Spain*, and the *Pope* againſt the *Turk* to make *Muſcovy* the patriarchal See of a the *Greek* Church, and to reſign his Digni to whomever his Majeſty ſhould be pleas to name, or cauſe to be elected. He brough that Prince the more eaſily into this Deſign, ſince by it he would ſave a great deal o Money, which was ſent every Year t *Conſtantinople*, upon which he aſſembled hi Council, and the principal Members of th *Ruſſian* Church, who all applauded the Pro poſal; and the Fifteenth of *January* 1588, was

* *De la Motraye.* Vol. III. P. 140. 141.

was appointed for the Ceremony: Conformable to which *Hieronimo* went in great Pomp, with the *Ruſſian* Clergy, to the Metropolitan Church of *Precheſte*, [our Lady] where he made an Oration, after which he delivered his patriarchal Staff and Tiara into the Hands of the Metropolitan *Jacob*, who was immediately inſtalled with great Solemnity. He afterwards drew up an Inſtrument of Reſignation, which he gave him in Writing, and received, before he left *Moſcow*, a prodigious Number of valuable Preſents in Gold, Silver and rich Furs, from the Czar, the Nobility, the new Patriarch, and the Clergy; being ſplendidly entertained the while he remained there: But thinking it not convenient to ſtay long after his being ſo well rewarded for the Reſignation he had made of a Dignity which was neither in his Power nor Poſſeſſion, he went to *Rome* with his Booty. 1699

That Dignity Aboliſhed.

Upon the Death of the laſt Patriarch, who dy'd ſoon after the Czar returned from his Travels, His Majeſty reſolved to have no other Patriarch elected; but to make himſelf ſole Head and Governor of the Church; however he appointed the Metropolitan of *Razan*, a *Pole* by Birth, and whom he found the learnedeſt Man among the Clergy, to take upon him the Adminiſtation of Eccleſiaſtical Affairs; but was, from Time to Time, to make a Repreſentation of all Matters of Moment to the Czar himſelf and receive his Directions therein.

The Clergy, as we may eaſily imagine, were not a little diſturbed at this great Alteration

1699 teration in the Government of the Church; and one Biſhop having ſpoke too freely of the Czar's aſſuming the ſupreme Authority to himſelf, was immediately ordered to be degraded; but none of the other Biſhops would readily comply in executing this Order, but offered Remonſtrances to his Majeſty, to ſhew, that it was a Thing unknown for a Perſon of that high Rank and Dignity in the Church to be degraded, and alledged, that they, being all but Biſhops and of equal Rank, had no Power to do it: But however they were willing to give up their Brother for the Intereſt of the Church; for they propoſed this Expedient, that, if his Majeſty would allow them to elect another Patriarch, they would proceed upon the Degradation of the Biſhop who had offended him. *Peter*, who would not ſuffer any of his Subjects to expoſtulate with him, took another Method, and reſenting this mean Evaſion, created a new Biſhop, the aforeſaid Metropolitan of *Rezan*, on Purpoſe to execute his Orders, and obliged him to take away the Mitre of the other Biſhop.

This Reſolution in the Czar cauſed ſome very bold Writings to be dropped about in the Streets of *Moſcow*; which gave ſuch Offence, that large Rewards were offered to diſcover the Authors of them, but to no Effect.

The *Ruſſian* Marriages.

I ſhall ſpeak next of the Ceremonies of their Marriages. The Day appointed being come, the Bride uſed to put on her Head a Sort of Hood made of fine Linnen or Lawn, or Knit-work, that veiled her to the Middle, and

nd ſo, with her Friends, and the Bride- 1699
room with his, went to Church, on Horſe-
back, though the Church was never ſo near at
Hand. They married with a Ring, and the
Words of the Contract and Ceremony a-
greed much with ours. The Ring put on,
nd the Contract pronounced, the Bride's
Hand was delivered into the Hand of the
Bridegroom, ſtanding all this while on one
Side of the Altar or Table, and the Bride on
he other. The Knot being thus knit by
he Prieſt, ſhe came about with the Bride-
room to the End of the Table, and falling
down at his Feet, knocked her Head upon
is Shoe, in token of Subjection and Obe-
dience; then the Bridegrom uſed to caſt the
Skirt of his Gown over her, ſignifying his
Duty to protect and cheriſh her. After this
he Bride's Father and Friends bowed to the
Bridegroom, and his Relations to the Bride,
n token of Love and Affinity between the
wo Kindreds. This done the Bridegroom's
Father delivered the Prieſt a Loaf of Bread,
who preſently returned it, upon a ſolemn
Promiſe, that the Dowry ſhould be deliver-
ed at the Day appointed, and that Friend-
hip ſhould continue between the two Kin-
dreds; ſo the Bread was broken, and they
eat it amongſt them, to teſtify their true and
ſincere Meaning to perform the Charge and
Promiſe, and thenceforth to become of one
Family.

Their Manner of wooing was ſhort, for
when they made Love, the Man ſent Preſents to
the Woman, which if ſhe accepted the Match

1699 was agreed on; but if they were returned, it was a Sign he was diſliked; and among other Preſents ſometimes there was a Whip, to let the Woman know what ſhe was to expect, if ſhe proved diſobedient, or broke the marriage Vow; if this odd Sort of Preſent could be acceptable to the Women in the Time of Courtſhip, it would almoſt make one believe the ridiculous Aſſertion of ſome Authors, that the *Ruſſian* Women loved their Huſbands the better for beating them.

They uſed Divorce among them, and it was often practiſed on ſlender Pretences; for a Man might go into a Monaſtery and ſhave himſelf a Fryar in a pretended Fit of Devotion, and by ſuch Means free himſelf from his Wife, and leave her to ſhift for herſelf; which was frequently occaſioned by the intolerable Provocations, and ill Behaviour of the Women: But this was chiefly among the common Sort: For Women of Quality and Faſhion, always were, and ſtill are, very obedient, and pay a profound Reſpect to their Huſbands.

The Burial of their dead.

As to the burial of their dead, it was done with much Ceremony. They uſed to put new Shoes on them, and give them a Letter in their Hands, directed to St. *Nicholas*, intimating, that the deceaſed was a *Ruſs* Man, or Woman, dying in the true Faith: When the Ground was frozen, that no Spade could enter it, they laid them up in their Dead-Houſes, which they call God's Houſes, and when the Ground became fit to be dug they buried them in their Cloaths,

Cloaths, cauſing Prayers to be ſaid over them; and beſides the Relations, there were other Women Mourners, employ'd to make a great Howling and Noiſe, who were hir'd for that Purpoſe. It was likewiſe the Cuſtom for the Relations of the deceaſed to viſit their Graves, on particular Days in the Year, there to cry and howl for ſome Hours, and then leave Branches of Trees, Flowers, Bread, Meat, Brandy, Mead, Beer and other Liquors, which they imagined the Dead had occaſion for; but which were conſtantly taken by the Prieſts, as ſoon as they were gone. 1699

The *Muſcovites* had a great Veneration for Holy Water, and once a Year the Rivers were hallowed, with much Ceremony by the Biſhops, and then there was great ſtruggling among the People for the Water, and ſome would leap into it, though in the moſt rigorous Seaſon of the Year, and Women would dip their tender Infants all over, concluding there was then a great Virtue in it; and oftentimes it was given to the Sick in Order to recover them by its wonderful Efficacy.

They had likewiſe a ridiculous Cuſtom of ſending Prayers in a Cap to Perſons at a Diſtance. And many would refuſe to work on a *Friday* under Pretence that the *Panitza* was angry and would puniſh thoſe with Misfortunes, who did not obſerve this Feaſt in Honour of her. M. *de la Motraye* ſays, he was aſſured as a Truth, that in the Diſtrict of *Starodub* they led a Woman with diſhevel-

1699 led Hair, every *Friday*, in an eccleſiaſtical Proceſſion under the Name of *Panitza*; and that the People bowed down before her at Church, and made her Preſents, in Hopes of great Benefits, which the Prieſts flattered them, they ſhould receive from her.

In the Neighbourhood of ſeveral Monaſteries the Monks uſed to erect Oratories in the High-Ways, with Images in them, before which Paſſengers uſed to bow down, while the begging Brothers held forth a Box to receive their pious Contributions.

Many of the *Ruſſians* thought it a great Crime to eat a Pigeon, becauſe the Holy Ghoſt is painted in the Shape of a Dove.

They had a Tradition of the Monaſtery of *Pekerſky* in *Kiow*, that whoever was buried therein, ſhould be ſaved although he died without repenting of his Sins.

Theſe and many other ſuperſtitious Abuſes the Czar *Peter* took care to aboliſh when he ſettled the National Synod, as we ſhall ſee hereafter.

The Government of the Provinces.

As to the Government of the Provinces, the large Dominions of *Ruſſia* were formerly divided into four Parts, called *Chetfirds* or *Tetrearchies*, every Part containing divers Shires, and was annexed to the ſeveral Offices from whence they derived their Names; the firſt bore the Name of the *Poſolſky Chetfird*, or Juriſdiction of the Office of Embaſſies, and foreign Affairs.

The ſecond was called *Roſeradny Chetfird*, becauſe it belonged to the *Roſerade* or High-Conſtable.

The

The third was the *Pomeſtenoy Chetfird*, ap- 1699
pertaining to that Office, where was kept a Regiſter of all the Lands given by the Prince for Services to his Boyars, Gentlemen and others.

The Fourth was called the *Caſſanſky Deuoerts*, being appropriated to the Office which had the Juriſdiction of the Kingdoms of *Aſtracan* and *Caſan*, with the Cities and Towns lying on the *Wolga*. From the Juriſdiction of thoſe Offices, but very few Places were privileged or exempted, except the Czar's Inheritance, or Vochin, as they term'd it; for that pertained from antient Time to the Houſe of *Beala*, which ſtood on thirty ſix Towns, with their Bounds and Territories, and ſome other particular Royalty. Theſe great Officers reſided commonly at Court, and carried their Offices with them wherever they went. They were generally Lords of the greateſt Families in *Ruſſia*, who were Favourites of the Czar, and acted as ſovereign Princes under him, in all Provinces they were to govern. They had Liberty to uſe the Czar's Name for their Authority in iſſuing forth their Orders, and had Power over Mens Lives and Fortunes. To theſe great Lords or Princes was an Appeal from the Diſtrict of all the leſs Towns and Cities in each Province. A Bench of *Diacks*, or Secretaries, ſat as Judges in every one of theſe principal Offices or Courts at *Moſcow*; who were to hear and determine Matters relating to the Treaſury, as well as all civil and military Affairs; and

1699 to report their Proceedings to the princip
Lords under whoſe Power they acted, wh
ſeldom came themſelves in Perſon to he
any Cauſe; and from whom there w
formerly no Appeal.

Theſe Lords had alſo the ſole Power t
appoint and ſend Governors to each Provinc
which was ſubdivided into leſs Diſtricts, an
every Governor had a Diack or petty Cha
cellor, and an Office or Court of Juſtice
rected under him, called a Precauſe, whe
they ſat as Commiſſaries for the Czar's Re
venues, and likewiſe as Judges, with
abſolute Power to determine all Cauſe
without either Jury, or Counſel to plead f
the unhappy Perſons who were brought b
fore them. Only in Caſes of Life, th
were obliged to make a Repreſentation b
Letter to the Lord of the Province in *Mo*
cow, before any Man could be executed
but that was done in ſuch a Manner, th
the Buſineſs always went as they would ha
it.

The Commiſſions to theſe Governors we
uſually granted for three Years, which tim
they held their Places, unleſs their Oppre
ſions and Frauds were ſo flagrant that th
were turned out ſooner. They had no Sa
lary appointed them, but when they we
put into their Governments, a Preſent w
made them of about three or four thouſan
Roubles, according to the Ability of th
People where they were ſent, who made like
wiſe Preſents privately to the Diacks be
longing to the head Office, or Precauſe i
Moſcow. Yet would theſe Governors com
mon

honly make themſelves rich in the aforeſaid 1699
Term of three Years; by which it may be
ueſſed how equitably they ſerved their Prince,
nd what Juſtice the People had from them:
ut it was remarkable all over *Ruſſia*, a-
hong the common People, that the firſt
tep they took, in any Matters to be brought
o a Tryal, was to bribe the Judge whoſe
Hands were open to both Parties, and that
hich bribed the higheſt carried the Cauſe.

Beſides this grand Article of Bribery, the Governors had other Opportunities of enriching themſelves; one was the Power they had of aſſeſſing the Taxes and appointing Collectors, or Challavolnicks, under them, to receive the Czar's Revenues; and to return the Sums collected into the grand Preauſe, or proper Office of each Boyar, at *Moſcow*; where what account they thought it was made out of the Money collected, and the Expences of doing it, and the Remainder paid into the Czar's Treaſury.

The Czar reforms the Abuſes in his Revenues.

The Czar, reſolving to enquire into theſe Affais, found that a more faithful Account might be made of his Revenues, and that the Oppreſſions of the Governors in unequal Aſſeſſments of the Taxes, ought to have a Stop put to it. He therefore called a Grand Council of all his Boyars, and propoſed to them, that there ſhould be one general Office erected in *Moſcow* after the Model he had ſeen in *Holland*, and called by the *Dutch* Name of the Rate-Houſe, for the better collecting and managing his Revenues; and that a certain Number of reputable Men ſhould

1699 be choſen, from among the Merchants, to be called Burgo-Maſters, and to ſit daily, to appoint Officers and Clerks, in the firſt Place to collect and account for his Revenues payable into their own Office within the Diſtrict of *Moſcow*, and from thence to commiſſion others to do the ſame in the ſmaller Towns and Cities of his Majeſty's Dominions, who were to return the Monies ſo collected into the general Rate-Houſe at *Moſcow*, where the Accounts were to be ſettled, and the Caſh tranſmitted into the Great Treaſury, or wherever the Emergencies of the State, by the Czar's Order, ſhould require it. The Land-Tax and Poll-Tax only were left to be raiſed by the Governors or Waivodoes as before.

Theſe Matters, though ſo uſeful, when firſt propoſed by the Czar to his Council, were not at all pleaſing to them, the Boyars did not like to have ſo conſiderable a Branch of their Power lop'd off; but remonſtrated to his Majeſty, that, as the Honour and Truſt of levying his Revenues had always been lodged in the Care of his Nobility, which, they hoped, they had always diſcharged with Fidelity, it would be looked upon as a publick Diſhonour and Affront to them to have it taken away, and put into the Hands of Boors and Slaves, who were not worthy to be ſet in Competition with them. They therefore propoſed ſeveral other Schemes to give him Satisfaction in this Point, and begg'd at leaſt that ſome Lords or Gentlemen of the beſt Families might have the Honour to be commiſſioned

in

the general Office that was to be erected 1699
Moſcow: But finding it in Vain to contend,
hat the Czar grew angry, and that ſome
f their Heads might pay for this ſhew of
Diſobedience, they acquieſced, and the De-
gn was put in Execution, which was pur-
ed for ſome Years to the great Advantage
f his Majeſty's Revenues, till ſome of his
avourites, to raiſe larger Sums and extort
Money from his People, went into Meaſures
hat were very oppreſſive and proved detri-
ental to Trade, for though they ſucceeded
r a ſhort Time, it afterwards reduced his
evenues to one half of what they had at
rſt raiſed them to.

For the farther Increaſe of his Revenues,
nd partly to eaſe the Taxes of the trading
eople in his Dominions, his Majeſty about
is Time, gave orders to the Precauſe, or
Office belonging to the Monaſteries, that
Money ſhould be levied on theſe throughout
l *Ruſſia*, they having a great Part of the
eſt Land and Villages belonging to them.
He likewiſe ordered, that no Man under
e Age of Fifty ſhould, for the Future, be
dmitted into any Monaſtery, very wiſely ob-
rving that ſo many young People being
ut up in Cloyſters render'd them uſeleſs,
nd greatly prevented the Increaſe of his
ubjects, that were wanted in his Wars.

In the Year one thouſand ſeven hundred, 1700
Grand Jubilee was celebrated at *Moſcow*,
hich, by the Czar's Order, began on the
rſt of *January*, and continued for a Week
ith firing Guns and ringing Bells; Co-
ours flying all Day, and Illuminations in
the

The Czar alters the Commencement of the Year.

1700. the Streets and Houſes at Night. The Czar ordered that, from henceforth, no Perſon, under a ſevere Penalty, ſhould date any Writings in Law or of any other Kind, according to the old *Ruſſian* Way; but begin the Year as on that Day, the firſt of *January*, which was before began on the firſt of *September*, for the *Muſcovite Æra* was from the Beginning of the World, which the *Ruſſians* imagined God had created at that Time of the Year: As hath been obſerved before, Page 2.

The Czar himſelf ſeeing the Folly of their Opinion in this Matter, would ſometimes take a Map in his Hand, and ſhew the Boyas about him, that *Muſcovy* was but a Part of the World, and that the Winter with them was Summer in Parts on the other Side the Line. But ſuch was the Ignorance of theſe People, that it was not many Years before that they were going to commit the Secretary of a *Perſian* Ambaſſador to the Flames, as a Sorcerer, for his having foretold an Eclipſe of the Sun; and it was not without ſome Difficulty that he was reſcued from the Fury of the Mob.

There had been no Schools to teach even Arithmetick before the Reign of *Peter*, nor did the *Ruſſians* at all underſtand the Uſe of Figures, but reckoned by the Help of Beads ſtrung on Wires in a Frame, which they placed as Units, Tens, Hundreds, and Thouſands, and by toſſing them backwards and forwards, could multiply and divide, after a tedious Way, liable to groſs Miſtakes, yet this was uſed in all their publick Offices.

About

About this Time the Czar erected a large School, in which a great Number of Boys were not only taught Arithmetick, but a Subſiſtence in Money, was allowed to ſuch as were willing to come and learn. Some of the moſt ingenious among them were taught the Mathematicks by Mr. *Fergharſon* and the two young Perſons out of Chriſt's Hoſpital, whom the Czar ſent over from *England*, when he was here; and of theſe about a Hundred, who had learnt Navigation, were ſent abroad to *England*, *Holland*, and *Italy*, to qualify themſelves for the Service of the Czar's Fleet. He alſo employed the ſame Mr. *Fergharſon*, to teach Aſtronomy, allowing him all Kinds of Telleſcopes and other mathematical Inſtruments and Books, and ordered him to calculate all the viſible Eclipſes, and how they would appear in his Country, which he did conſtantly, and ſent to him as they would happen, in whatever diſtant Part of his Empire he was. 1700

Sets up Schools.

One Method which the Czar took to keep Arts and Sciences among his People was certainly very cruel, and that was to confine the Profeſſors of them in his Country, by denying them Paſsports and by keeping them out of great Part of the Pay or Stipends which were agreed to be given them. Captain *Perry* who had ſuffered thus, ſpeaking of this Mr. *Fergharſon*, ſays, they had often lamented their Fortunes together, they having been both treated in the like Manner. Captain *Perry*, ſet forth his Caſe at large in the following Memorial which he delivered to

A very rigorous Method of eſtabliſhing Arts in *Muſcovy*.

to the Lord *Appaxin*, when he had been about twelve Years in the Country.

'On *April*, 1698, an Agreement or Contract was verbally made with me in *England* for entering into his Czariſh Majeſty's Service, by his Ambaſſador the late Lord *Theodore Allexyavick Gollowin*, for the Salary of three hundred Pound Sterling *per Annum*, beſides a monthly Allowance that was agreed to be paid me ſufficient for my Charges and Subſiſtence; and that in Caſe of my performing any extraordinary Work relating to Rivers, Havens, Moles, Docks, or Sluices, to have moreover an extraordinary Reward given me to my Content. I was thereupon ſent directly forward from *England* to view and make a Report of the Work for making a Communication between the Rivers *Wolga* and the *Don*, (that had been deſerted by Colonel *Breckell*) and, according to his Majeſty's Orders, I went forward thither, and ſurvey'd it, and returned the ſame Year back to *Moſcow*, with a Draught of what was neceſſary to be done, and an Eſtimate of the ſame: Which being approved of and ordered to be taken in Hand by his Majeſty, I required the Settlement of my Wages to be duly paid me every ſix Months, and that a farther Reward of eight thouſand Roubles ſhould be given me when the Work ſhould be performed.

Captain *Perry*'s Memorial.

'Whereupon it was objected by my Lord *Kneaz Borice Alexyavitz Galliczin*, that a Letter had been writ to him from *Holland* by the aforeſaid Ambaſſadors, that

I ſhould undertake the ſaid Work without the Payment of my yearly Wages till it was performed; againſt which I therefore proteſted; and on *March* the 10th, 1699, delivered a Petition into his Czariſh Majeſty's own Hand, ſetting forth the Unreaſonableneſs thereof, and that I could not conſent to take the ſaid Work in Hand on any ſuch Terms or Conditions, and therefore pray'd, that either I might be employed on ſome other Buſineſs, or have my Diſcharge given me.

'To which his Czariſh Majeſty, in the Preſence of Mr. *Stiles*, Mr. *Lloyd*, Mr. *Crevett*, and ſeveral other *Engliſh* Merchants, was pleaſed to give me repeated Aſſurances, and commanded me to rely upon his gracious Word, that the aforeſaid Objection ſhould have no Force againſt me; but that my full Wages, as aforeſaid, ſhould be yearly paid me, as well as monthly Subſiſtence Money; and a farther Reward to my Satisfaction more than the Sum above mentioned, upon Performance of the Work: But by Reaſon that *Breckell* when he had gathered a Sum of Money had deſerted, as was objected by the Lord *Galliczin*, his Majeſty only required me to give Security not to do the like, and promiſed that I ſhould receive my ſaid Salary every ſix Months, before hand, if I deſired it.

'Which gracious Promiſe I moſt chearfully embraced; but I being then a Stranger and newly come into the Country, I could not reaſonably expect, nor could I aſk any Gentleman there to be bound for

'me

'me in this Caſe. Yet I did not in the leaſt
'doubt, but in a Year or two's Time I
'ſhould have been able to make ſuch an
'Advance, and to have given ſuch ſuffici-
'ent Proof of my Abilities and Readineſs for
'performing the Work, that would have
'quite removed all Scruple of my deſerting
'ſo conſiderable and reputable a Service;
'and that by Conſequence no Demur would
'be made in the Payment of my Salary
'although no Security was given againſt
'Deſertion.

'But to my great Surprize, and unthought
'of Diſcouragement, when I came upon the
'Work, I found the Men and Materials
'which I propoſed for the doing of it not
'provided; my ſelf and Mr. *Luke Kenedy*
'my chief Aſſiſtant, treated in a very rough
'Manner, ſhew'd the Gallows, and threaten'd
'to be hang'd by the aforeſaid Lord *Ga-*
'*liczin*, becauſe I did not carry on the
'Work where I found *Breckell* had begun it
'who had deſerted it; and although he
'knew that upon my Repreſentations at
'*Moſcow*, his Czariſh Majeſty had expreſ-
'ly order'd me to the contrary; and after-
'wards when his Lordſhip in Hopes to find
'an Occaſion of an Objection againſt me
'appointed Perſons on Purpoſe, and order-
'ed a ſtrict Meaſure and Examination to be
'taken of both Places; it was found (upon
'Computation) that there were above twenty
'thouſand cubical Fathoms *Ruſs* Meaſure
'leſs Labour of digging Work in the cut-
'ting of the Canal where I began it; beſides
'a very great Advantage in the Neceſſity
'of

of placing the Sluices. But notwithſtanding I gave full Satisfaction in this Point, I ſtill found many other great Diſcouragements and Hinderances to the Work; and my Complaints, and repeated Demands in Writing given into the Precauſe availing little: Therefore, *February* 17, 1700, I delivered to his Czariſh Majeſty himſelf a Petition, ſetting forth, that unleſs his Majeſty would be graciouſly pleaſed to appoint me a Hearing, and examine himſelf into the whole Matter, I feared there was no Hopes of my being ever able to perform the ſaid Work.

Whereupon, after I had delivered my ſaid Petition to his Majeſty, I was the next Day ordered by the Lord *Kneaz Borice Alexyavitz Galliczin* to give a new Liſt into the Precauſe, and told, that all Things ſhould be fully provided for the Work. I was glad to hear ſo encouraging a Promiſe, with freſh Hopes that things would now go better on: But the ſecond Summer having paſſed away alſo in the ſame Manner, the needful Men and Materials not given, and ſeveral Parts of the Work lying unfiniſhed, and ſubject thereby to Damage and Ruin by the Floods, particularly for Want of Caulkers, which there was the greateſt Neceſſity for; and finding ſtill no likelihood of Redreſs upon my Complaints to the Lord *Kneaz Borice Alexyavitz Galliczin*, nor in the Precauſe, I therefore thought myſelf in Duty bound, and again delivered into his Majeſty's own

' Hand

'Hand another Writing, dated the 2
'Day of *January* 1701, ſetting forth par
'cularly, that all the digging Work th
'was done in two Summers might (by Co
'putation and Meaſure) have been done
'leſs than fifty Days, at the Rate of twel
'Men digging and carrying off but one c
'bical Fathom a Day, had the Number
'labouring Men been given, and thin
'carried on as I required.

'Alſo ſetting forth, that there ſtill want
'ſeveral Sorts of Timber, Caulkers, and
'ther Artificers, and Neceſſaries, witho
'which it was impoſſible for any one Slu
'ever to be completed; and which, to
'very great Trouble and Diſcouragemen
'I had ſeen in two Years not provide
'But that yet notwithſtanding all the H
'drances that I met with, if the needful M
'and Materials were but then fully give
'which I had demanded in my firſt L
'the Work that remained to be done mig
'be depended on to be finiſhed in three
'four Years Time at fartheſt.

'Upon which I was informed, that no
'more ſtrict Orders than ever were giv
'that all Neceſſaries whatſoever that I h
'demanded, and were wanting, ſhould
'duly provided; and I was command
'by his Majeſty to prepare new Molds a
'Directions for the cutting Timber, &
'which I carried and delivered into his M
'jeſty's own Hands at his Houſe at *Brebaz*
'*ſki*. But notwithſtanding at the latter E
'of this third Summer, I was, in Writi
'infor

informed, by *Kneaz Peter Evanwich* * *Daſhcoff*, that the ſeveral Governors of the Towns, on all the Diſtricts of the *Wolga*, whither Copies of the ſaid Molds, and Directions for cutting the ſaid Timber were ſent, had taken *Scaſcoes* or Atteſtations in Writing, under the Hands of the ſeveral Perſons employed, that no ſuch Timber was any where poſſible to be found.

'Therefore I demanded a Company of Dragoons to go with me, that I might not be ſurprized by the *Tartars*, and went my ſelf into the Woods, not two Days Journey from the Work, where in leſs than fourteen Days Time I found very proper, well grown Timber enough for making the Gates, and finiſhing two Pair of Sluices; which Timber I ſhew'd to the Lord *Apraxin*, who happened to be at that Time ſent to ſuperviſe the Work; as alſo I repreſented to his Lordſhip, when he was upon the Spot, the great Want of Caulkers, and other Artificers, and Neceſſaries, which to that Day were never given; nor the ſmall Number of Smiths, Carpenters and Labourers continued in the Winter, which I had demanded in my firſt Liſt. All which his Lordſhip took Cognizance of, and promiſed to repreſent to the Czar; and that he would be my Patron, and make a juſt Recommendation of my Endeavours to his Majeſty.

'On the ſecond of *September* 1701, I received an Order to leave Directions in Writ-

* He was appointed General of the Army then covering the Work, and Governor of the Workmen.

'ing with one of my Aſſiſtants, whom I
'ſhould chooſe to take care of the Work that
'was performed, and to come my ſelf with
'my other Aſſiſtants and Maſter Artificers
'that I had with me, to *Moſcow*. And
'ſoon after the Beginning of the Year 1702,
'I was from thence ordered down to *Veronis*,
'where I made an extraordinary Work upon
'that River, for raiſing and letting off the
'Water at any Time when ever required,
'for lifting his Majeſty's Ships upon the
'Land to be refitted that were then ready to
'ſink as they lay in the River, for want of
'an effectual Method to repair them; which
'Work I finiſhed in the Year 1703. And
'all his Czariſh Majeſty's Ships have ac-
'cordingly been there ſince repaired that have
'required it. And after I finiſhed this, I
'was employed in doing another Work for
'making the ſaid River navigable for Ships
'of eighty Guns, the whole Way from the
'City *Veronis* to the River *Don*; which I
'alſo performed as commanded, where the
'needful Men and Materials were given me to
'it; though the Sluices are much larger,
'and the Floods in the Spring of the Year
'above ten times greater there than they are
'on the River *Camiſhinſka*; and conſequently
'the Works required to be made there with
'greater Strength againſt greater Floods, and
'were far more difficult to perform.

'In *February* 1706, after I had finiſhed
'the ſaid Works, I was ordered to *Moſcow*,
'and on *September* following, I was ſent
'down again upon the River *Don*, to ſur-
'vey a Place for making a Work to pre-

'ſerve

ſerve his Majeſty's Ships from Decay. And to return again to *Moſcow*, with the Report of the ſame; where I have been ever ſince * petitioning and ſoliciting for my Arrears to be given me, and to be employed on ſome other Buſineſs, or to have my Diſcharge, which is not given me, nor any Part of my yearly Wages yet paid me, neither for the Time I have ſerved in the *Caſans*, nor the *Admiraltitſki* Precauſe; only an Account has been formerly made out in the *Admiraltitſki* Precauſe for ſix Years Salary at three hundred Pound *per Annum*, according to my Agreement; but it was with this Injuſtice and Hardſhip; that all the monthly Subſiſtence Money that I had received for the ſaid ſix Years ſhould be deducted out of my ſaid yearly Salary, and the ſame to be reckoned me but at a *Ruſs* Copeck for an *Engliſh* Penny, which, according to the Courſe of Exchange at that Time, was at thirty eight *per Cent* Loſs to me: Not only ſo, but refuſing alſo to pay me any Part of the ſaid Money, unleſs I would firſt ſet my Hand to agree to a new Contract, on ſuch diſcouraging Conditions that were altogether unreaſonable for me to comply with.

'This is the true State of my Caſe, which I humbly pray may be juſtly conſider'd: Firſt, that it was no Way my Fault that the Work in making a Communication be-

* This was in the Year 1710, which a little anticipates nd breaks into the Thread of the Hiſtory, in Point of ime; but I was willing to give this Memorial entire, s he preſented it.

'tween the *Wolga* and the *Don* was not long
'ſince performed, as has been ſhewn. And
'next, that no Objection at my coming into
'the Country was made againſt the immedi-
'ate Payment of my annual Salary, but the
'aboveſaid Scruple unjuſtly raiſed of my
'deſerting, which now, after near twelve
'Years Proof of the Fidelity of my Service,
'I hope is ſufficiently removed. And ſince
'his Czariſh Majeſty's Favour and Bounty
'is daily extended to great Numbers of
'thoſe that come from foreign Countries to
'ſerve him, I humbly hope that I ſhall not
'be made an unhappy Inſtance of Misfortune
'and Ruin thereby: After having relied ſo
'many Years on his Czariſh Majeſty's gra-
'cious Promiſes of my Wages made to me,
'and having ſpent the beſt of my Days and
'faithfully exerted my utmoſt Judgment and
'Endeavours for his Majeſty's Service, in
'all Things wherein I have ever been com-
'manded.

J. PERRY.

After the Services ſet forth in this Memo-
rial, the farther Hardſhip Captain *Perry* un-
derwent, (who was at laſt forced to come
away without his Money, by putting himſelf
under the Protection of Mr. *Whitworth* the
Engliſh Ambaſſador) may be thought to
be without Excuſe, unleſs we conſider that
the Czar thus forcibly detain'd all ingenious
Foreigners for the Improvement of his Country,
which he had more at Heart than any other
Conſideration.

The

The Caſe of Mr. *Fergharſon*, was likeiſe very hard, an Agreement was made ith him, when he was firſt entertained in *ngland*, that he ſhould have his Charges efrayed for him to *Moſcow*, and that he ould have a handſome Allowance given im for his Subſiſtence when he went over, ntil he had learned the Language of the ountry, for which he ſhould have a *atin* Interpreter appointed him, and until ere was a fit School prepared: And that en, as often as ever he ſhould teach and arn any Scholar, in particular the Art of avigation, ſo as to be diſcharged from his chool, and ſent abroad farther to learn the ractical Part of Navigation, the ſaid *Fergarſon* ſhould have the Reward of one hunred *Roubles*, in ready Money, given him; ut though he had, when Captain *Perry* ame out of the Country, made perfect nd diſcharged above ſeventy Scholars, yet e had not received one Penny of the ſaid Money.

The two Mathematicians taken from *hriſt's Hoſpital*, to aſſiſt Mr. *Fergharſon*, ad as great Misfortunes as their Country len; one indeed was more unfortunate, for e was attacked by a Company of Rogues he rode out from the School, and murderd in the Streets about nine o'Clock at ight; Mr. *Fergharſon* himſelf very narrowy eſcaped the ſame Fate afterwards: And Mr. *Guin*, the other Aſſiſtant, had not above alf the Allowance given him *per Annum*, hat was allowed to Mr. *Fergharſon* for his

bare Subſiſtence, though being a well be haved and ingenious Man, there is no Doub but he might have made much better Ad vantage of his Time at Home.

This Sort of Cruelty is, in ſome Meaſur ſtill exerciſed in *Ruſſia*, if we may giv credit to the Account given by one, wh ſtiles himſelf an *Italian* Officer of Diſtinctio in his Letters from *Muſcovy*, printed in th Year 1735; wherein he tells us, 'that 'Foreigner, who has lived ſome Time a 'mong them, finds it difficult to obta 'his Dimiſſion. They are no ſooner i 'formed of his Intent, than they raiſe Su 'picions, and carry their Jealouſy and D 'ſtruſt to an Exceſs. Whoever has once g 'a Knowledge of their Affairs, muſt nev 'hope to leave their Country. They ima 'gine they have Reaſon to apprehend ſuc 'a one would divulge their *Arcana*.

But we have a very late Inſtance to co tradict what this *Italian* Officer ſays, th is, Leave given, by her preſent imperial Ma jeſty of *Ruſſia*, to Mr. *Noy*, one of the Shi Builders, who went over in King *William* Reign, to come to his native Country, whe he arrived in the Year 1737, and is ſettle at *Portſmouth*, with a very handſome Penſion given to him for Life by that generous Pri ceſs.

After this long Digreſſion, I ſhall, in th next Book, return to our Hiſtory in du Order of Time.

T H

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* I. CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK IV.

The CONTENTS.

The Siege and Battle of Narva. *The* Muſcovites *Beards ſhaved, by the Czar's Order. Regulations in the Dreſs, Equipages, and ſeveral Cuſtoms of the* Muſcovites. *An Interview between the Czar and King* Auguſtus. *The Battle of* Cliſſaw. *A falſe Rumour of the King of* Sweden's *Death of great Service to* Auguſtus.

THE Czar's Forces being now in Readineſs, he appeared before *Narva*, with an Army of a hundred thouſand Men, hoping that, if he could take this Town, he ſhould open a Paſſage to the *Baltick*. It was on the firſt of *October* 1700, 1700

1700 that he ſat down before it, a Seaſon of the Year very rigorous in thoſe cold Climates, but *Peter*, as M. *de Voltaire* obſerves, who would make nothing of riding Poſt a hundred Leagues; in the midſt of Winter, to ſee a Mine or a Canal, was willing to make his Troops forget all Diſtinctions of Seaſons, as he ſeemed to do himſelf. He gave the Command of his Army to the Duke *de Croy*, a *German*, and took to himſelf no higher a Poſt than that of a Lieutenant at this Time.

In this Army he had only a Body of thirty thouſand Men, who were the Soldatee, formed out of the old *Strelitzes* and *Germans*, that were worth any thing; the Reſt were a rude Number of Men drawn from the Foreſts and Wilds covered with Skins, and armed with Clubs and ſome with Arrows, but few of them knew the Uſe of Fire Arms, or had ever ſeen a Battle or regular Siege, which *Narva* indeed was but ill provided for; it had a ſlender Garriſon and very mean Magazines, yet, attacked by ſuch Forces, held out to the Cloſe of the Year.

The King of *Sweden* was the more enraged at this Procedure, as there were ſtill three *Muſcovite* Ambaſſadors at *Stockholm* treating of Peace. This young Hero, who had already reduced the King of *Denmark* to ſue for Peace, which was concluded by the Treaty of *Travendal*, ſigned in the Month of *Auguſt* before, croſſed the Sea with two Hundred Tranſports, and landed at *Pernaw* in the Gulf of *Riga*; the Town of *Riga* was, at that Time, beſieged by the King

King of *Poland*, the Czar's Ally; but as ſoon as he heard of *Charles* the Twelfth's Landing he abandoned the Place, and made a Merit of it to the States General of *Holland*, who had deſired him, by their Ambaſſadors, to ſpare a Place in which the *Dutch* had conſiderable Effects, and thus he in ſome ſort prevented the Diſhonour of quitting an Enterprize he found he could not ſucceed in. *Riga* being now opened and freſh ſupplied, the King of *Sweden* marched directly to *Narva*, with about four thouſand Horſe and the like Number of Foot; the Czar was gone in Perſon to haſten the March of forty thouſand Recruits from *Pleſkow*, beſides his great Army of a hundred thouſand, and deſigned to have hem'd the King of *Sweden* in, between theſe two Armies; he had ordered thirty thouſand Men from the Camp before *Narva* to be poſted at a League's Diſtance from the Town, and in the Rout of the King of *Sweden*, twenty thouſand more were placed farther off upon the ſame Rout, and five thouſand more made up an advanced Guard, through all which Troops *Charles* was to force his Way before he could arrive at the Camp, fortified with a Rampart, and double *Foſſe*. The King of *Sweden* continued his March (through Ways that were thought impracticable, and therefore little Care had been taken to ſecure them) till he found himſelf in Sight of the Enemy's firſt Poſts; he did not give the *Muſcovites* time to know how ſmall a Number of Men he had, but attacked all their Poſts one after another; they could not imagine but the whole *Swediſh* Army was com- 1700

1700 coming upon them, ſo the advanced Guard of five thouſand Men fled immediately upon his Approach. The next twenty thouſand terrified at the Flight of their Countrymen fled likewiſe, in Confuſion among the third thouſand, poſted within a League of the Camp, who retired in the greateſt Conſternation to the main Body of the Army. The King of *Sweden* loſt no Time, but with his Men fatigued as they were, by ſo long a March, appeared before the Camp of a hundred thouſand *Muſcovites*. The Duke de *Croy* had made the beſt Diſpoſitions that were poſſible, poſting the Infantry in the Entrenchments, and a ſecond Line to ſtrengthen them, with the Cavalry to ſupport them behind. He had ſcarce done this before the King attack'd them with eight Battalions, having General *Rebinder*, an Officer of great Experience and Prudence as well as Valour, at their Head.

The Battle of *Narva*. This was on the 30th of *November* 1700. The Signal was two Fuſees, and the Word in *German*, *with the Aid of God*; agreeable to the Piety of that young Prince, who was eminently devout as long as Fortune continued on his Side. As ſoon as the *Swediſh* Cannon had made a Breach in the Intrenchments, they advanced with their Bayonets at the End of their Fuſees, and were aſſiſted by a violent Snow which drove full in the Faces of the *Muſcovites*, who endured Slaughter for half an Hour without quitting their Poſts. *Charles* himſelf attacked the Czar's Quarter, which lay on the right Side of the Camp, where he hoped to have encountered him,

im, not knowing that he was gone to haſten 1700
is Recruits from *Pleſkow*. Upon the firſt
Diſcharge of the *Muſcovite* Shot, the King of
weden received a Ball in his left Shoulder,
hich grazed ſlightly upon the Fleſh; but
is Activity prevented his ſeeling that he
as wounded. His Horſe was immediately
fter ſhot under him, and ſoon after that a
econd had his Head taken off, as Monſ. *de*
oltaire tells us, but *Motraye*, in his Remarks
n that Author's Life of *Charles* XII. ſeems to
loubt of this, having heard nothing of it from
Colonel then preſent, who gave him a Re-
ation of this Action; but be that as it may,
he King in leſs than three Hours carried
he Intrenchments on all Sides. The *Muſ-*
covites not animated, as the *Swedes* were, by
he Preſence of their Prince, gave way in
great Confuſion, the King with his left Wing,
purſued near fifty thouſand of them as far as
he River of *Narva*; where the Bridge break-
ing under them the River was immediately
covered with the Dead. The Horſe made
off in a tolerable good Order towards *Pleſ-*
kow, and, meeting the Czar ſome Leagues
on this Side the City, firſt gave him an
Account of the Defeat of his great Army.
Above twenty thouſand *Muſcovites* were ſlain,
and between two or three thouſand of the
Swedes, among whom were the Generals
Rebinder, and *Rubbinghen*, who had ſhewn
great Bravery in the Action.

The Reſt, in Deſpair, with their Generals
de Croy, *Dolhorouky*, *Gollowin*, and *Fedorowitz*,
ſurrendered themſelves to the young Con-
queror, and laid their Arms at his Feet.

The

1700 The Number of Priſoners was ſo very great, that it was thought proper to keep only the chief Officers and diſmiſs the Reſt, who were entirely diſarmed, and having their Breeches ſlit in two, ſo that they were forced to hold them up with both Hands, they were drove along, before a few *Swediſh* Officers, like a Flock of Sheep, to the Diſtance of a League from *Narva*.

This is one of the moſt extraordinary Actions that can be met with in Hiſtory; and the King of *Sweden*, this Year, made one of the moſt glorious Campaigns, who at eighteen Years of Age, led an Army himſelf againſt three Kings in Confederacy againſt him, and not only proved ſucceſsful in all his Attempts, but gave wonderful Proofs of perſonal Courage and Conduct. The World expected in this Prince to ſee another *Guſtavus Adolphus*, who at the ſame Age conquered *Livonia*, which *Charles* had now glorioufly relieved from the Invaſion of two ſo powerful Enemies as *Peter* the Emperor of *Ruſſia* and *Auguſtus* King of *Poland*.

The Czar thought it would be to little Purpoſe, with his forty thouſand raw and undiſciplined Men, to engage a young Victor juſt fluſh'd with the Conqueſt of a hundred thouſand, ſo retired to the Place from whence he came, and from thence went back to *Moſcow*, which was moſt terribly alarmed at the News of this Battle. The Misfortune was undoubtedly very great, but *Peter* was ſo far from being diſpirited at it, that he would often ſay, 'I expected to be beaten

'by

by the *Swedes*, and may again; but they, in Time, will teach us to beat them.' 1700

The common People among the *Muſcovites* could not imagine but that their being beaten, when they had ſuch odds on their Side, was owing to Sorcery and Witchcraft, and accordingly put up a Prayer to St. *Nicholas* to protect them againſt the horrid Crew of Sorcerers, that were leagued againſt them.

In this Battle the Czar had loſt above half his Army and all his Artillery; but he applied himſelf with great Diligence to repair theſe Loſſes by raiſing Recruits, bringing more foreign Officers into his Service, and ſeeing his Regiments exerciſed and provided with all things neceſſary; the Care of which he entruſted to none of his Courtiers, but looked narrowly into every Thing himſelf. For Want of Metal for his Artillery, he ordered the great Bells in ſeveral Churches to be taken down and caſt into Cannon: But while he was making theſe Preparations for continuing the War, he wrote an anſwer to the following Letter which he received from the King of *Great Britain*, and to another from the States of *Holland*, to diſſuade him from entering upon a War with *Sweden* at all.

WILLIAM III.

By the Grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France, *and* Ireland, *Defender of the Faith,* &c.

To the moſt High, moſt Potent, and moſt illuſtrious, our dear Brother, the Grand Signior Czar, and Grand Duke Peter Alexowitz, *of all the upper, lower, and white* Ruſſia, &c. *Health, and all Happineſs and Proſperity.*

Moſt Potent and our moſt dear, and moſt beloved Brother.

1700 ‘ THE ſingular Eſteem, and perſonal
‘ Friendſhip which we have for your
‘ Imperial Majeſty, cauſes us to embrace all
‘ Occaſions to procure and advance your Im-
‘ perial Majeſty's Intereſts, and to do what-
‘ ever in our Judgment may contribute to
‘ your Repoſe and Satisfaction. And our
‘ Zeal for the general Tranquility of *Europe*,
‘ which we look upon as a Thing which
‘ ought to be the moſt deſired, permits us not
‘ to neglect any Opportunity which preſents
‘ itſelf, to prevent whatever may diſturb the
‘ Publick

Publick Peace, or to reſettle it in Time, ſhould it happen to be ſhaken or broken. 1700
Theſe Motives inclined us to take particular Care of your Imperial Majeſty's Intereſts at the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, and perſiſting ſtill in the ſame Thoughts, and the ſame Inclinations, to ſee your Imperial Majeſty, and your Dominions enjoy the Fruits of Peace, as did the reſt of the Princes of *Chriſtendom*, upon the firſt Notification of your Deſire to prolong your Truce with the Emperor of *Turky*, and that our Ambaſſador Extraordinary at the *Ottoman* Port could aſſiſt your Imperial Majeſty's Miniſters with his Counſels, and by his good Offices to attain your Deſires, we preſently concurr'd, and immediately gave our Orders to our Ambaſſador at *Conſtantinople*, to act according to your Imperial Majeſty's Deſire; which Negotiation being concluded by a long Truce, we congratulate your Imperial Majeſty with all our Heart, for that happy Succeſs, as a Thing that will aſſuredly produce all Manner of Proſperity to your Imperial Majeſty, and your Dominions and Countries. And having, in the laſt Place, an occaſion to ſend a Squadron of our Men of War into the *Baltick* Sea, we gave expreſs Orders to our Admiral and our Commanders to diſtinguiſh your Imperial Majeſty's Ships, when they met them, and to treat them with all Civility and Friendſhip; and for the laſt Teſtimony of the Value and Affection which we bare your Imperial Majeſty, underſtanding by your Imperial Majeſty's Ambaſſador, with

'the

1700 ‘ the States General of the united Provinces
‘ that your Imperial Majeſty was much di
‘ ſatisfy'd with the Crown of *Sweden* by Re
‘ ſon of ſome Injuries offered by ſome of t
‘ Subjects of that Crown to your Imperi
‘ Majeſty's Ambaſſadors and Plenipotenti
‘ ries in their Paſſage through, *Livonia* and b
‘ the Delays in giving anſwer to the Com
‘ plaints made to their Ambaſſador at yo
‘ Imperial Majeſty's Court, we offer yo
‘ Imperial Majeſty our Mediation, and o
‘ beſt Offices for an amicable Accommod
‘ tion of all the Differences which m
‘ have happened between your Imperi
‘ Majeſty and the King of *Sweden*, f
‘ whom we have a high Value, by Re
‘ ſon of the antient and modern Treati
‘ between our Crown and that of *Swede*
‘ And we doubt not but that his *Swedi*
‘ Majeſty will have ſuch a Regard to
‘ that he will hearken to our Perſwaſio
‘ and our Counſels, and that he will gi
‘ your Imperial Majeſty all reaſonable S
‘ tisfaction. Wherefore we earneſtly intre
‘ your Imperial Majeſty that you will b
‘ pleaſed on your Part, to liſten to Term
‘ of Accommodation; and to that End,
‘ Place may be agreed upon for terminati
‘ all Miſunderſtandings in a friendly Manne
‘ and without coming to an open Rupture
‘ and that your Imperial Majeſty will, in th
‘ mean Time, ſuſpend all Acts of Hoſtilit
‘ We hope, the Differences, when they com
‘ to be examined, will appear to be of ſuch
‘ a Nature, that it will be no difficult Matte
‘ to find Means to adjuſt them: And w
‘ hav

have ſo high an Opinion of your Imperial Majeſty's Juſtice, Equity and Honour, that we have Reaſon to believe that you will meet with our Offers and our friendly Cares, and will be ready to accept all reaſonable Satisfaction from the Crown of *Sweden*, rather than enter into a War, which is the laſt Remedy when all other Trials fail of Succeſs; and that you will, out of your Goodneſs, have ſuch a Regard for your Subjects as to ſuffer them to reap the Fruits of the Peace which your Imperial Majeſty has fully procured them, and enjoy the Benefit of the Trade that has been ſo happily ſettled, and, within this little while, augmented between them and our Subjects and ſome of our Neighbour Nations; and which being cultivated by the Continuance of Peace, will render your Majeſty's Dominions flouriſhing, and your Name no leſs Glorious for your Moderation in preferring the publick Tranquility before all other Conſiderations. Thus, wiſhing your Imperial Majeſty a long and proſperous Reign, we recommend you to the Protection of the Almighty. *Given at our Court*, &c. 1700

Your affectionate Brother,

WILLIAM R.

1700

After the Battle of *Narva* his Czarian Ma
jeſty ſent the following Anſwers to th
and another Letter from the States of th
United Provinces.

‘ WE the Grand Signor and Czarian Ma
‘ jeſty have underſtood by your Roy
‘ Majeſty's Letters, written from the *Hague* th
‘ 23d of *October*, your Royal Majeſty's ſingu
‘ lar Friendſhip toward our Czarian Majeſty
‘ and your Deſire of the general Tranquilit
‘ of *Europe*, if it ſhould happen to be violate
‘ by any one; which you have alſo farther te
‘ tify'd by taking Care of our Grand Signo
‘ ſhip's and Czarian Majeſty's Affairs at *Co*
‘ *lowitz*, as if they had been your own, to th
‘ end our Czarian Majeſty might partake o
‘ the Peace which the other Princes of Chri
‘ endom enjoy'd; that afterwards, at the Re
‘ queſt of our Czarian Majeſty, your Roy
‘ Majeſty ſent your Orders to your Ambaſſa
‘ dor at *Conſtantinople* to the end that, witho
‘ Delay, he ſhould aſſiſt our Miniſters with h
‘ good Offices and his Counſels for the Pro
‘ longation of the Truce, which, being concl
‘ ded, your Royal Majeſty congratulates ou
‘ Czarian Majeſty. That, moreover, you
‘ *Royal* Majeſty, having an Occaſion to ſen
‘ a Squadron of Men of War into the *Baltic*
‘ *Sea*, gave Orders to your Admiral and othe

‘ Cap

Captains and Commanders to treat our Veſſels, when they met them, with all manner of Friendſhip and Civility; and as a greater Teſtimony of your Value for our Czarian Majeſty, when you were acquainted by our Ambaſſador, with the *States General* of the *united Provinces*, with the Injuries and Affronts that had been offered us by the Crown of *Sweden*, when our Plenipotentiary Ambaſſadors travell'd through *Livonia*, which was repreſented to the *Swediſh* Ambaſſador at our Czarian Majeſty's Court, your Royal Majeſty was pleaſed to offer your Mediation and good Offices for accommodating theſe Differences, and this, out of the ſingular Amity and by Reaſon of the Alliances which you had with the King of *Sweden*, not doubting but that the ſame King, in Conſideration of your Royal Majeſty, would lend an Ear to your Counſels, and give us all juſt Satisfaction. To which Purpoſe, your Royal Majeſty deſired that our Czarian Majeſty would vouchſafe the re-eſtabliſhing of that Amity, and to that end would agree upon a Place for the terminating all Miſunderſtandings after an amicable Manner, without coming to an open Rupture of the Peace; and that our Czarian Majeſty would, in the mean Time, ſuſpend all Acts of Hoſtility, your Royal Majeſty hoping that theſe Differences might be determined without any Difficulty; and that reaſonable Satisfaction would be given us by the Crown of *Sweden*, rather than enter into a War, which is the laſt Remedy after all other ſucceſsful Trials; that we the Grand

1700

1700 ‘ Signor and Czarian Majeſty would have
‘ Reſpect to our Subjects, and ſuffer them to
‘ reap the Fruits of that Peace which had been
‘ procured them, and at the ſame Time enjoy
‘ their Trade, happily ſettled and lately aug-
‘ mented between the Confederates and other
‘ Nations; and that this Peace would render
‘ our Empire a flouriſhing Empire, if we
‘ would prefer the Publick Tranquility. For
‘ theſe Reaſons, we, the Grand Signor and Cza-
‘ rian Majeſty, take in good Part, and grate-
‘ fully, the Aſſiſtance which was given by your
‘ Ambaſſador to the Ambaſſador of our Cza-
‘ rian Majeſty, who was commiſſioned to
‘ treat with the *Turk* at *Carlowitz*, and the
‘ Share which you take in the other Concerns
‘ of our Grand Signorſhip and Czarian Ma-
‘ jeſty; nor do we refuſe your Royal Majeſty's
‘ preſent Propoſal for a Peace between us and
‘ the Crown of *Sweden*, in the War com-
‘ menced for the Injuries they have done us.
‘ And we will forthwith give your Royal
‘ Majeſty Knowledge of the Place which
‘ ſhall be made choice of for the Peace, when
‘ we ſhall have communicated the whole to
‘ his Royal Majeſty of *Poland*, as we are
‘ bound by the Alliance which is between us.
‘ In the mean Time our Grand Signorſhip
‘ and Czarian Majeſty beſeech God to bleſs
‘ your Royal Majeſty with long Health, and
‘ a favourable Government in your King-
‘ doms. Given at our Imperial Court at
‘ *Moſcow*, the Metropolis of our Empire, in
‘ the Year of the Birth of God our Redeem-
‘ er Jeſus Chriſt 1700, in the Month of *De-*
‘ *cember*, and of our Reign the 19th.

The

The Czar's Anſwer to the STATES GENERAL.

WE, the Grand Signor and Czarian Majeſty, have underſtood by your High and Mightineſſes Letters dated from the *Hague*, *September* 29, 1700, That the repeated Confirmation made to your high Perſons, as well by our Ambaſſador Reſident at the *Hague*, as by the Sieur *Vander-Hueſt* your Reſident at our Czarian Majeſty's Court, that the Continuance of the Truce and Alliance with the Crown of *Sweden* was very agreeable to your Lordſhips, by Reaſon of the Common Alliance, as well between our Czarian Majeſty as with the Crown of *Sweden*. And in Regard that afterwards our Ambaſſador declared to ſome of the Commiſſioners from your Aſſembly, by Word of Mouth, and afterwards in Writing, our Czarian Majeſty's good Intention for the Preſervation of the Peace with the ſaid Crown of *Sweden*, but, yet a little after that, as your Lordſhips may remember, with Condition, that our Czarian Majeſty ſhould, by your Mediation, receive Satisfaction from the King of *Sweden* for Injuries particularly offered in 1698 to our ſolemn Embaſſy travelling through *Livonia*, which Embaſſy your High and Mightineſſes moſt courteouſly received, and gave Notice of our Demands to the King of *Sweden*, according to the Tenour of the Memoir which our Ambaſſador pre-

1700 ‘ ſented to your Lordſhips, and having after-
‘ wards received an Anſwer from his Roya
‘ Majeſty of *Sweden*, you ſent it to our Cza
‘ rian Majeſty, in which Anſwer his Roya
‘ Majeſty of *Sweden* declared his Inclinatio
‘ to maintain a good and ſincere Amity an
‘ Neighbourhood with our Czarian Majeſty,
‘ and that he would never be wanting to d
‘ Juſtice in the Differences fallen out betwee
‘ our Reciprocal Miniſters, and much leſs i
‘ what concerned the Honour of our Czaria
‘ Majeſty: For which Reaſon his Royal Ma
‘ jeſty had ſent Orders to M. *Lilienroot*, hi
‘ Ambaſſador with your High and Mighti
‘ neſſes, to the end he ſhould confer with th
‘ Lords deputed from your Aſſembly, an
‘ that he ſhould do his utmoſt to adjuſt them
‘ that your High and Mightineſſes made n
‘ doubt that our Grand Signorſhip and Cza
‘ rian Majeſty would admit of your Umpi
‘ rage in the Affairs, which we had laid be
‘ fore your Lordſhips in Writing, aſſuring
‘ you that your High and Mightineſſes good
‘ Offices could in no Wiſe be diſagreeable t
‘ our Czarian Majeſty. For this Reaſon
‘ you demanded, That, as his Royal Ma
‘ jeſty of *Sweden* had given full Power to hi
‘ Ambaſſador at the *Hague*, we would like
‘ wiſe give full Power to our Ambaſſado
‘ to confer with your Commiſſioners deputed
‘ from your Aſſembly, and to do what la
‘ in their Power to accommodate all Things
‘ aſſuring us that you would contribute wha
‘ lay in your Power in that Affair, no
‘ doubting, but that our Czarian Majeſty
‘ as well as his Royal *Swediſh* Majeſty woul
‘ be

be thereto inclin'd. At the ſame Time your High and Mightineſſes gave us to underſtand, that his Royal Majeſty of *Poland*'s Miniſter had communicated to your Lordſhips the Copy of our Letters written to his King, touching the Declaration of War, and ſending our Armies againſt the Crown of *Sweden*, which ſeemed to you very extraordinary, and you demanded again that he would conſider what Diſaſters and Devaſtations of Lands and Men were occaſioned by War, and how difficult a Thing it was to terminate a War when once begun; and that our Czarian Majeſty, out of the ſame Equity and Love of Peace, which we had ſhewn at the Concluſion of Peace with the *Ottoman* Court, would undertake nothing that might violate the Peace; but if any Differences had happened between us and the King of *Sweden*, we would terminate them by amicable Accommodations rather than by Arms, to which Effect your High and Mightineſſes promiſed to contribute by your good Offices, nothing inclining you thereto but the Love of Peace, and the publick Tranquility; and therefore you wiſhed that there might be no Diſpute, much leſs a War between our Czarian Majeſty, and his Royal Majeſty of *Sweden*, with whom you are in good Friendſhip, and that you hoped that we would be thereto well inclined. And in Regard your High and Mightineſſes, in your Letters to our Czarian Majeſty, teſtified your Miſtruſt upon two Points, firſt, becauſe you had been twice aſſured by us of our Friendſhip with 1700

1700 ‘ the Crown of *Sweden*, nevertheleſs that now
‘ our Grand Signorſhip and Czarian Ma-
‘ jeſty give Notice to your High and Migh-
‘ tineſſes of a Declaration of War againſt
‘ that Crown. Secondly, you ſeem to doub
‘ of the Equity of the Caſe, on the Aſſurance
‘ we have given you; but you are to know,
‘ that his Royal *Swediſh* Majeſty's Ambaſſa-
‘ dors had poſitively aſſured, that his ſaid Roya
‘ Majeſty would give us a total Satisfaction fo
‘ the Injuries, more eſpecially that which ha
‘ been done us at *Riga*; upon which Aſſu-
‘ rances our Grand Signorſhip and Czarian
‘ Majeſty waited ſeveral Months, but in Re-
‘ gard that after a long Expectation of an a-
‘ greeable and amicable Satisfaction our Grand
‘ Signorſhip and Czarian Majeſty received, by
‘ the Hands of the *Swediſh* Commiſſioner
‘ *Kniper*, an Anſwer, ſubſcribed with the
‘ King's own Hand, ſo far from giving any
‘ Satisfaction that it rather contained a Juſtifi-
‘ cation of the Authors, as if thoſe Injuries had
‘ been Counterfeit and remote from Truth.
‘ Wherefore our Grand Signorſhip and
‘ Czarian Majeſty thought fit to handle
‘ that Affair after another Manner, and
‘ have been forced to revenge Injury with
‘ Injury: Nevertheleſs, in Chriſtianity, we do
‘ not refuſe a reaſonable Peace, nor your of-
‘ fered Umpirage, provided it be not after
‘ the ſame Manner, or with the ſame Vio-
‘ lence as was offered to *Denmark* in the
‘ Affair of *Holſtein*. Your High and Migh-
‘ tineſſes repreſent to us the great Inconve-
‘ niences of War, and the doubtful Succeſs
‘ o

of it, but that is nothing to the Equity, as may be ſeen by the Succeſs of the Peace with the Porte, where our Grand Signorſhip and Czarian Majeſty were abandoned by all the World; yet by the Aſſiſtance of the Almighty, and the Favour of our Chriſtian Intentions, we brought it to paſs, and not leſs advantageouſly than others. According to our ancient Amity our Grand-Signorſhip and Czarian Majeſty cannot refuſe your High and Mightineſſes Demand, and we wiſh, that, by your Mediation, a happy Peace may be re-eſtabliſhed with the Crown of *Sweden*, to which Effect we ſhall with Impatience expect your Ambaſſadors. 1700.

Notwithſtanding the Impatience with which he expected theſe Ambaſſadors of Peace, he left no Time to provide for his Forces both by Land and Sea; and while theſe were getting ready, he continued with great Vigilance the Reformation of his People and Government.

The Czar orders the *Muſcovites* to ſhave their Beards.

* The *Ruſſians* had a great Veneration for long Beads, which it was their Cuſtom to wear hanging on their Boſoms comb'd out with great Pride and kept very ſmooth. They let the Hair on their upper Lips grow ſo long that it would dip in the Cup whenever they drank, ſo that they were obliged to wipe them after it, which was a nauſeous Sight to ſuch as were not uſed to it.

The *Ruſſians* valued their Beards the more becauſe in that they differed from Strangers, whom

* Captain *Perry*'s State of *Ruſſia*.

1700 whom they generally hated; but the Czar was reſolved his Subjects ſhould look like other People, and therefore laid a Tax of a hundred Roubles *per Annum*, on all Gentlemen who wore Beards, except the Prieſts; the common People were obliged to pay a Copeck at the Gate of every Town or City which they entered, and Perſons were there placed to collect it; but ſuch was their Regard for what they fooliſhly thought an Ornament to their Faces, that there were many who would have given any thing to have preſerved it, and when the Czar found he could not overcome their Prejudice in this Point without uſing force, they would offer large Bribes to thoſe who came to execute his Orders. And it muſt have been a diverting Scene to behold the Executioners ſcampering after theſe venerable Grey-Beards in the Streets, who fled from them as they would from ſo many Hangmen.

His Majeſty would order Perſons to be ſhaved at his own Table, and ſometimes ſo roughly that ſome of the Skin of the moſt obſtinate was taken away with the Beard; the Fear of being thus handled made abundance comply; but ſince they could not preſerve their Beards on their Faces living, many laid them up carefully to be buried with them when dead, that they might be able to give St. *Nicolas* an Account of them in the other World. This ſhaving their Beards was looked upon in the Czar as a great Breach of Religion. How many fooliſh and even wicked Cuſtoms and Practices have been cloaked under that ſacred Name!

The

The Czar, on this Account, had Libels wrote against him, and dropt about the Streets of *Moſcow*, charging him with Tyranny and Atheiſm. 1700

Reforms the *Ruſſian* Dreſs

His Majeſty reſolved next to alter the Faſhion of his People's Dreſs, which he thought troubleſome to the Men, unbecoming and ridiculous in the Women. But even of this, as well as every other Change he wrought among them, the People, inſenſible of the Benefits he deſigned them, made great Complaints and Murmurings. An Order was firſt publiſhed to prohibit all *Ruſſians* to appear out of their Houſes, but in a Coat of the *Poliſh* Faſhion, which was much the ſame with the *French* and *Engliſh*. The Servants of Strangers were the firſt on whom this Order was executed, who, if they were ſeen abroad without complying with it, were taken from behind the Sledges of their Maſters, and made to pay a Fine or be ſent to Priſon: But this not affecting the common People they took no Notice of it, till ſeverer Means were uſed with them.

Their former Habit was a long Veſt which reached down almoſt to their Feet, and was plaited on the Hips not much unlike the Woman's Petticoat. His Majeſty obliged all his Boyars, and whoever ſhould come to Court, to provide themſelves with *Engliſh* Dreſſes, upon Pain of his Diſpleaſure, and ſuch as could afford it were to trim their Cloaths with Gold or Silver. He commanded a Pattern of the *Engliſh* Coat to be hung up at every Gate of the City of *Moſcow*, and that every Body ſhould conform

to

1700 to that in making their Cloaths; and if any one ſhould preſume to diſobey his Orders, and be found paſſing any of the Gates of the City in their long Habits, except the poor Peaſants that brought Proviſions to the Markets, they ſhould be obliged to pay two Grevens, [about the Value of twenty Pence *Engliſh*,] or kneel down at the Gates, and have all that Part of their Cloaths cut off which lay on the Ground; while they were ſo on their Knees.

Shews his Regard to the Ladies.

The Women, and eſpecially the Ladies about the Court, were ordered to reform their Dreſs likewiſe according to the *Engliſh* Faſhion; they had ſome Things in the antient Habits very odd, particularly their ſhift Sleves were ſometimes four or five Ells in Length, which, when they ſaluted a Stranger, they uſed to fling out almoſt croſs a Room, and when the Stranger had taken the End up and kiſs'd it, they uſed to gather it again about their Arms. There was another Alteration the Czar made in Favour of the Women, which the more eaſily reconciled them to that of their Dreſs. It had been the Cuſtom, at all Entertainments in *Ruſſia*, for the Women not to be admitted into the Preſence or Converſation of the Men. In all the Houſes of Gentlemen of any Faſhion, there was a particular Entrance made for the Women, and they were always kept in ſeparate Apartments; only when the Maſter of the Family had a Mind to do Honour to an extraordinary Gueſt he would bring his Wife, by a back Way from her Apartment, attended by her Maids. She was then to pay

Compliment of her Shift-Sleve, and 1700
eſent the Company with a Bumper of
andy round, and afterwards to retire by
ſame Way ſhe came, and to be ſeen no
ore. But the Czar now, to ſhew his
llantry to the *Ruſſian* Ladies, ordered that,
m henceforth, at all Weddings and pub-
k Entertainments, the Women, as well as
Men ſhould be invited, but they were to
pear in *Engliſh* Dreſſes, and that they
ould be entertained in the ſame Room with
Men, whom his Majeſty, by the Re-
nchment of their Beards, had made much
ore agreeable to them. He ordered, that
Evenings ſhould conclude with Muſick
d Dancing, as he had ſeen in foreign
ountries; and he would often be preſent
mſelf, at theſe Entertainments, with moſt
his Nobility and the Ladies of his Court.
here was no Wedding of any Diſtinction,
pecially among the Foreigners, but the
zar had Notice of it, and would honour
with his Preſence, uſually making a Pre-
nt to the Bride ſuitable to the extraordinary
xpence of ſuch Entertainment, and eſpecial-
if married to any Officer newly come in-
the Country.

There was another thing alſo which the Alters the
Women were well pleaſed with in His Ma- Cuſtom of
eſty's new Regulations. It had been the Wooing.
uſtom in *Ruſſia* for Matches to be made
p by the Parents of each Side, without the
onſent of the young People, or their hardly
eeing one another. The Czar conſidering
hat this unacceptable Way of joining young
eople together, without their own Approba-
tion,

1700 tion, might in a great Measure be the Occa-
ſion of that Diſcord and little Love which
was ſhewn to one another afterwards, it be-
ing a common Thing for the Men in *Ruſſia*
to beat their Wives in ſo barbarous a Man-
ner that they often died of the Blows, and
none of them ſuffered for the Murder, it being
interpreted in the Law there, as being done
only for Correction, and therefore not at all
culpable. The Wives, on the other Hand,
being thus many times made deſperate would
murther their Huſbands, in Revenge for their
ill Uſage; but the Sentence on ſuch Occa-
ſions was, that the Woman ſhould be bu-
ried alive in the Ground, ſtanding upright
with the Earth fill'd about her, and only
her Head above the Earth, with a Watch
ſet over her, to ſee that no one relieved her,
but that ſhe ſhould be ſtarved to Death;
the People were not hindred from throw-
ing Copecks into the Pit, where ſhe was
buried, and thoſe were laid out in Taper
to be lighted up in Honour of the Saint
ſhe called upon.

The Puniſhment of Women who murder their Husbands.

It was a very common Sight in *Ruſſia* to
ſee Women thus executed, who have been
ſeven or eight Days dying. Theſe ſad Spec-
tacles made the Czar, in Pity to his People,
do all that was poſſible to remove the Oc-
caſion of it, and therefore ordered, that no
young Couple ſhould marry, for the Future,
without their own good Liking and Conſent;
and that all Perſons ſhould be admitted to
viſit and ſee one another, at leaſt ſix Weeks
before their Marriage. This new Order was
ſo very agreeable, eſpecially to the younger
Sort,

ort, that they began to conceive much bet- 1700
r of the Foreigners, from whom the Czar
ad learnt theſe Cuſtoms.

His Majeſty took Notice, in anſwer to the
omplaints of thoſe who diſliked the Altera-
ons he made in *Ruſſia*, that the Cuſtoms
f the Country had been much altered and
nproved in the Courſe of Time, and that
ere was no more ill in doing it at once,
an in the Courſe of five hundred Years;
a Proof of their having been ſo altered,
e made the following Repreſentation.

In the Year 1701 one of his Jeſters being 1701
be married to a very pretty Woman, he
rdered all his Lords and Gentlemen that
ere in his Favour, with ſeveral Foreigners,
be invited to the Wedding; and gave his
ommands, that every Perſon who was in-
ited, and whoſe Names were all ſet down
Writing, ſhould provide themſelves with
e ſame Habit that was worn in *Ruſſia* in
e Days of their Forefathers about two hun- The antient Dreſs of the *Ruſſians*.
red Years before; and that the whole Cere-
ony ſhould be performed after the ſame
anner as it was at that Time. The Boy-
s had a long Cap on their Heads at leaſt a
oot higher than was then the Faſhion, and
ere in an awkard gaudy Dreſs, not eaſy to
eſcribe; the Furniture of their Horſes was
xed after an unuſual Manner, ſome of the
oyars of the firſt Rank had for the Reins
their Bridle a Silver Chain, the Links of
hich were about an Inch and a half or two
nches Broad, made of thin Silver beat out
at, and the Breaſt Plate and Crupper were
reſs'd with little Square Pieces of the ſame
thin

1701 thin Silver, which, with the Motion of the Horſe, ſtruck againſt each other, and made a Kind of jingling like Bells, as they rode: among theſe was his Majeſty in the ſame Habit with his Lords, one of the old Boyars being appointed to repreſent the Czar for the Day, in a mock Dreſs. Perſons of meaner Rank, who could not have their Horſe Furniture adorned with Silver, uſed Tin.

The Women, who were invited to this Wedding, were ordered alſo to be dreſſed after the old *Ruſſian* Faſhion, their Shift-Sleeves were at leaſt twelve Yards long, contracted into a Ruff, as much as would lie between their Shoulders and their Wriſts, with their upper Veſtment only covering their Bodies, and the Heels of their Shoes or Slippers near five Inches high; they rode in Machines or Waggons ſet only upon Axletrees and Wheels without any Leathers or Swing to make them eaſy, and there were ſhort Ladders ty'd on the Side of each Waggon, like thoſe of the preſent *Tartars*, to get up, which Waggons were hooped over at one End, where the Women ſat covered with red Cloth. In this Order Captain *Perry* tells us, he ſaw them march to the Houſe of the deceaſed General *Le Fort*, which was built at the Czar's Charge.

There were ſeveral Tables ſpread in a very large Hall, according to the Degrees and Ranks of the Gueſts, and at the upper End there was one Table placed upon a Throne about three Feet higher than the Reſt, at which ſat the mock Czar with a mock Patriarch, to whom the Company advanced by

y gradual Steps, and bowed their Heads 1701
o the Ground at ſeveral proper Diſtances as
hey advanced, and then being called by
heir Names every one kiſs'd, firſt the Mock
Czar's Hand, and then the Mock Patriarch's,
pon which a Dram of Brandy was preſent-
d to each Man, both by the Czar and the
atriarch; this laſt Name he always, after
e aboliſhed the Office, gave to a Buffoon,
ho, inſtead of the patriarchal Croſs, was ob-
ged to wear the Figure of a Gibbet on his
reaſt.

When the Company had received their
ups of Brandy, they retired backward from
he Throne to about twenty Feet diſtance,
nd all the Way made their Bows as they
ent back: And a ſplendid Entertainment
as prepared for them after the old faſhion
Way.

Retrenches the Equipages of the Boyars and others.

The next Regulation of the Czar's related
o the Noblemens Retinues. It had been
pompous Cuſtom among all the great Boy-
rs, to retain in their Service, as a Piece of
tate and Grandeur, a great Number of
uperfluous Servants, which, when they went
broad, walk'd ſome bare-headed before
hem, and others following in a long Train,
n all Sorts of Dreſſes, and Colours; and
hen the Boyars rode on Horſeback, or went
n their Coaches or Sledges, it was thought
he more ſtately to go a ſlow Pace, that theſe
Attendants might keep up with them on
oot, uncovered in the hardeſt Rains or ut-
moſt Severity of cold Weather; the great
Ladies were wont to have the ſame numerous
Retinues; but the Czar *Peter*, who always

1701 rode ſwift himſelf, ſet them another Example, for he only went himſelf with a few Servants, on Horſeback, cloathed in a handſome and uniform Livery, and ordered his Boyars, his other Courtiers, and all Perſons of Diſtinction to do the ſame. And that his Orders might be the more effectual, ſoon after he came from his Travels, he ordered a Liſt to be taken of all the looſe Attendants that hung about the Boyars Houſes, and commanded them to be ſent to the Army. This went much againſt the Grain, and great Interceſſions were made, and Sums of Money given for many of them to be excuſed, eſpecially for ſuch of theſe Attendants as were really Gentlemen, and waited on the Lords only in Expectation of Preferment; but however the Czar's Orders were to be obeyed, and there was a Draught made of ſeveral thouſand unneceſſary and ſupernumerary Attendants, who were all ſent into the Army, to which his Majeſty himſelf was now going with much Expedition.

An Interview between the Czar and King *Auguſtus* at *Birſen*.

It has been ſaid before that he had employed all Means to recruit his Forces, and in Order the better to concert Meaſures for the enſuing Campaign, an Interview was agreed upon between the Czar and his Ally *Auguſtus* King of *Poland*, which was held at *Birſen* a ſmall Town in *Lithuania*, without any of thoſe Formalities which do but too much retard Buſineſs; they remained here fifteen Days together, and ſpent a great Part of the Time in Pleaſures, and that Exceſs of Drinking which is the common Vice of the *Muſcovites*, and

d one of the greateſt Failings in the Czar *eter.* 1701

At this Interview King *Auguſtus* promiſed e Czar fifty thouſand *German* Troops, hich he undertook to hire of the Princes the Empire, and the Czar was to pay em, who, on his Side, agreed to ſend a ke Number of *Muſcovites* into *Poland* to be ined up in military Diſcipline, and in o Years Time was to ſupply King *Au-ſtus* with three Millions of Rix-Dollars.

When the King of *Sweden* was inform'd the Deſigns of the Czar and the King of *oland*, he haſtened into *Livonia*, and arrived *Riga*, on the Banks of the *Duna*, over ainſt the *Saxon* Army, who lay encamp'd the other Side the River, and with whom was to diſpute the Paſſage. He cauſed ats to be made after an Invention of his n, the Sides of which were moveable, d made to lift up and let down, like draw idges, that they might be of uſe to cover e Troops in their Paſſage, and favour their eſcent, when they came to land. Having kewiſe obſerved that the Wind blew di-ctly from the North where he lay, to the uth, where his Enemies were encamped, he fire to a large Heap of wet Straw, the moak of which ſpreading Croſs the River, evented the Enemy from ſeeing his Troops knowing what he was doing. King of *Sweden* comes into *Livonia.*

The King of *Poland* was then ill in Bed, the *Saxon* Army was commanded by the uke of *Courland*, and Marſhal *Stenau.* hat brave General fell upon the *Swediſh* ttalions with his Horſe, before they were

1701 quite drawn up, and drove them into the River; but being ſoon rallied by the King, they advanced with ſuch Fury againſt the Marſhal that they obliged him likewiſe to retreat. The Duke of *Courland* made his Troops retire very dexterouſly into a dry Place, flanked with a Moraſs, and Wood, where his Artillery lay. The *Saxons* by this Advantage of Ground began to recover their Courage; but after an Obſtinate and bloody Battle, the King of *Sweden* having fifteen thouſand Men, and the Duke of *Courland* but twelve thouſand, *Charles* obtained a compleat Victory. The Duke of *Courland* had two Horſes ſhot under him, and had penetrated three times into the midſt of the *Swediſh* Guards; but being at laſt knocked off his Horſe by a Muſket, and trampled under the Feet of the Horſes, his Army fell into Confuſion, and it was with much Difficulty that his Cuiraſſiers carried him off all over Bruiſes and half dead.

King of *Sweden* takes *Mittaw*, and the reſt of the Towns in *Courland*.

The King of *Sweden*, upon this Victory, haſten'd to *Mittaw*, and ſoon took that City, the Capital of *Courland*. All the reſt of the Towns in that Dutchy yielded to him at Diſcretion, and having appointed General *Lewenhaupt* Viceroy of that Country he paſſed on with Expedition, to *Lithuania*, conquering wherever he came. At *Birſen*, where the Czar and the King of *Poland* had met to contrive his Ruin, he firſt form'd the Scheme of dethroning *Auguſtus*.

The Misfortunes of the King of *Poland* gave courage to his ſecret Enemies to take Advantage of him. He was compelled to

hold

old a General Diet at *Warſaw*, on the 1701
wenty-ſecond of *December* 1701, in which
Aſſembly the Spirit of Liberty that prevails
o much in *Poland*, ſhew'd itſelf in Language
ever heard by other Princes. His Subjects
penly oppoſed him, under Pretence of the
ublick Good. The chief Subjects of this
Country, proud of their Freedom, may be
id to be Tyrants over their King, whom
hey chooſe more to increaſe their own Au-
hority than with an Intent to be governed by
im. And that Prince's Conduct had loſt
im the Affections of many of his Friends,
nd greatly exaſperated his Enemies, who
ere much encreaſed in Number. Some of
he Palatinates indeed made him believe he
ight arm the *Poliſh* Nobility againſt the
wedes, which gave him hopes of the *Poſ-*
olite or Army of the Republick, before
hich great Body of Forces, joined by the
axons his Subjects, and the *Muſcovites* his
Allies, he thought the ſmall Number of
wedes would ſcarce venture to appear. But
e ſoon found that he had very little Autho-
ity in the *Diet*, moſt of the Members making
o Scruple to own themſelves in the King
f *Sweden*'s Intereſt, more out of Jealouſy
f the Deſigns of their own King upon their
Liberties than any Friendſhip for the other.
They charged *Auguſtus* with being the Au-
hor of the Troubles in *Lithuania*, and of all
he Ills that had befallen the State, and,
mong other Things, talked of ſending an
Embaſſy, in the Name of the Republick,
o the King of *Sweden*; but before this Point

1701 was carried, the *Diet* broke up by the Re-treat of one of the Deputies.

Auguſtus, in theſe Straits, called together a Council of the Senate; the Members of which Aſſembly appeared ſomewhat better Courtiers than thoſe of the *Diet*, who had ſo openly declared their Ill-will to the King; but, under a Pretence of reconciling his Intereſt with the Security of the Republick, gave his Authority a yet deeper Wound than the other had done: and at laſt concluded to ſend the Embaſſy debated upon in the *Diet*: But *Auguſtus* re-ſolved to be before hand with them in this; for he had but too much reaſon to fear that his particular Intereſt would be little re-garded, if not entirely ruined by them: He therefore choſe rather to receive Laws from his Conqueror than his Subjects.

He made choice of the Counteſs of *Koningſ-mar* to be his Ambaſſadreſs on this Occa-ſion; ſhe was a *Swediſh* Lady by Birth, of a great Family, and had an Eſtate in *Charles*'s Dominions; and her Wit and Beauty made the King of *Poland* imagine, that a young Victor would be able to deny her nothing, and be as much ſubdued by her Charms as he had been himſelf. Having received her Inſtructions, ſhe went to the *Swediſh* Camp in *Lithuania*; but *Charles* obſtinately refuſed to ſee her. *Auguſtus* afterwards ſent his Cham-berlain *Wiczdum*, with freſh Inſtructions to the King of *Sweden*; but they having neg-lected to demand a Paſport for him, he was ſeized as ſoon as he came within Sight of the Camp, and thrown into Priſon.

The King of *Poland* was now forced again 1702
have Recourſe to the Senate, tho' he knew
em to be his Enemies. He offered to call
twelve thouſand *Saxons*, and to put him-
lf at the Head of the Army of the Republick,
nd pay them two Quarters out of his own
rivy Purſe, beforehand. The Senate an-
vered him, that the Republick would ſend
n Embaſſy to the King of *Sweden*, to pro-
ure Peace; and as for the *Saxons*, his Ma-
ſty could not introduce them into *Poland*
ithout diſobliging the whole Nation.

Charles XII. treated the Embaſſy of the
epublick with no more Reſpect than that of
e King, being not at all pleaſed that they
ould ſtill have any thing to do with him;
r ſuch was the implacable Temper, which
as one of the greateſt Faults of this young
ero, that where he had once taken a Diſ-
ke, he was never to be reconciled; he anſ-
ered the Senate, that they ſhould know
hat he thought of their Propoſal when he
ame to *Warſaw*: And ſet forward the ſame
ay on his March to that City, having ſent
efore him a Manifeſto, in which he declared
imſelf the Friend and Protector of the Re-
ublick. The Senators, who were the Ene-
ies of *Auguſtus*, publiſhed this Manifeſto
his View; and, upon the Approach of
e King of *Sweden*, his Friends, thro' Weak-
eſs, deſerted him; none remained with him,
ut the Ambaſſadors of the Emperor and the
zar, the Pope's Nuncio, and ſome few
iſhops and Palatines, who were attached to
is Fortune. Before he left *Warſaw*, he got
ave from the few Senators, left about him,

1702 to introduce ſix thouſand *Saxons* and diſpoſ
of the Troops of the Republick. He likewi
gave Orders for the Nobility to take t
Field, but this was little regarded. Th
Terror of the *Swediſh* Arms, and the Hatr
they bore him, kept the *Poles* upon the
Eſtates, waiting the Event of this great Af
fair. The King of *Poland*, thus deſerted b
his Subjects, brought twenty thouſand *Saxon*
into the Country, no longer fearing how muc
he exaſperated a Nation that betrayed him
The King of *Sweden*, on his Part, prepared t
give his Enemy a Warm Reception. He k
the Cardinal Primate into his Intenſions a
Warſaw, who was a ſecret Enemy of *Auguſtu*
and of whom M. *de Voltaire* gives the fol
lowing Character.

The Character of Cardinal *Radjouſky*.

‘ Cardinal *Radjouſky*, Archbiſhop o
‘ *Gneſna*, Primate of *Poland*, was a Man full o
‘ Artifice and Reſerve; entirely governed by
‘ an ambitious Woman, whom the *Swede*
‘ called *Madam Cardinale*, and who never
‘ ceaſed to puſh him on to Intrigue and Fac
‘ tion. The Primate's Talent lay chiefly in
‘ making his Advantage of the Conjunctures
‘ which fell in his Way, without endea
‘ vouring himſelf to bring them about.
‘ He would appear unreſolved when the moſt
‘ determined in his Projects; going always
‘ to gain his Ends by thoſe Ways, which
‘ ſeemed the moſt to oppoſe them. King
‘ *John Sobieſky*, the Predeceſſor of *Auguſtus*,
‘ had formerly made him Biſhop of *War*
‘ *merlandt*, and Vice Chancellor of the
‘ Kingdom. Whilſt *Radjouſki* was only
‘ Biſhop

Biſhop, he obtain'd the Cardinal's Hat, by the ſame King's Favour. This Dignity quickly opened to him the Way to the Primacy; and thus having united in him all that impoſes on Men, he was in a Capacity of undertaking a great deal with Impunity. 1702

'He tried all his Intereſt on the Death of *John*, to place *James Sobieſky* on the Throne; but the Torrent of the Peoples Hatred ran ſo ſtrong againſt the Father, as great a Man as he was, that it bore down the Son. The Cardinal Primate then joined with the Abbe *de Polignac*, Ambaſſador of *France*, to give the Crown to the Prince of *Conti*, who was in Reality elected, but the Money and Troops of *Saxony*, far out-did the Eloquence of the Abbe *de Polignac*. The Cardinal Primate gave into the Party that crowned *Auguſtus*, and partly waited for an Occaſion to ſow Diviſion between *Poland* and the new King.

'The Victories of *Charles* XII. the Protector of Prince *James Sobieſky*, the Civil War in *Lithuania*, and the general Diſaffection of the *Poles* to King *Auguſtus* gave the Cardinal Hopes that the Time was now come when he might be able to ſend *Auguſtus* back into *Saxony*, and pave a Way for the Son of King *John* to aſcend the Throne. This Prince, formerly the innocent Object of the *Polanders* Hatred, was, ſince *Auguſtus* had diſobliged them, become their Idol: But he durſt not conceive any Hopes of ſo great a Revoluti-

'on,

1702 ‘ on. Nevertheleſs the Cardinal had in-
‘ ſenſibly laid the Foundation of it.

‘ He ſeemed at firſt to endeavour to re-
‘ concile the King and the Republick. He
‘ ſent his circular Letters dictated, in Appear-
‘ ance, by that Spirit of Concord and Cha-
‘ rity, which, tho' uſual and known Snares,
‘ ſeldom fail to entrap. He wrote a mov-
‘ ing Letter to the King of *Sweden* beſeech-
‘ ing him in that Name which all Chriſtians
‘ equally adore, to give Peace to *Poland*
‘ and her King. *Charles* XII. anſwered
‘ more to the Intentions of the Cardinal than
‘ to his Words. He remained in the great
‘ Dutchy of *Lithuania*, with a victorious
‘ Army, declaring that he would not trouble
‘ the *Diet*; that he made War againſt *Au-*
‘ *guſtus* and the *Saxons*, and not againſt the
‘ *Polanders*; that far from attacking the
‘ Republick, he came to free them from
‘ Oppreſſion. Theſe Letters and Anſwers
‘ were for the Publick; but the Emiſſaries
‘ that continually went between the Cardinal
‘ and Count *Piper*, and the private Aſſem-
‘ blies at the Cardinal's Houſe, were the
‘ Springs by which the *Diet* moved. They
‘ propoſed to ſend an Embaſſy to *Charles*
‘ XII. and unanimouſly demanded of the
‘ King that he ſhould call no more *Muſco-*
‘ *vites* to their Frontiers, and that he ſhould
‘ ſend back his *Saxon* Troops.

The ill Fortune of *Auguſtus* had already made him do what the *Diet* would have exacted from him: The League ſecretly concluded between him and the Czar at *Birſen*, was become as uſeleſs as at firſt it was thought

hought formidable. He was far from being ble to ſend the Czar the fifty thouſand Men, he had promiſed to raiſe in *Germany*. The Czar himſelf was under no Concern to aſſiſt a divided Kingdom, but contented himſelf with ſending about twenty thouſand Men into *Lithuania*. 1702.

King *Auguſtus* knew very well, that his introducing ſo many *Saxon* Troops into *Poland* had exaſperated all Men againſt him, as it was a Violation of his Agreement with his own Party; but he knew alſo, that if he was Conqueror they durſt not complain, and that if he was conquered, they would never forgive his having brought in even the ſix thouſand.

While the *Saxons* were coming in Troops, and he himſelf going from one Palatinate to another to get together the Nobility that adhered to him, *Charles* XII. arrived on the fifth of *May* 1702, at *Warſaw*. The Gates were opened to him upon the firſt Summons. King *Auguſtus* was at that Time aſſembling his Forces at *Cracow*, and could not but be a little ſurprized to ſee the Cardinal Primate one of the Company. This Man, ſays Monſieur *de Voltaire*, whoſe Heart burnt within him to finiſh the Work he had begun, pretended to keep up the Decency of his Character to the laſt, and to dethrone his King with all the reſpectful Behaviour of a good Subject. He told him that the King of *Sweden* appeared to be diſpoſed to a reaſonable Accommodation, and humbly begged leave that he might attend him. King

Auguſtus

1702 *Auguſtus* granted him, what he could not refuſe, the Liberty of doing him a Miſchief.

The Cardidal Primate thus palliating the Scandal of his Conduct, by the Addition of Treachery, made haſte to viſit the King of *Sweden*, to whom he had never yet ventured to preſent himſelf. He ſaw his Majeſty at *Praag*, not far from *Warſaw*, but without the Ceremonies which had been uſed to be paid to the Ambaſſadors of the Republick. The King advanced ſome Steps to meet him, and they had a Conference together ſtanding of about a quarter of an Hour; which *Charles* put an End to, by ſaying aloud, 'I will 'never give the *Poles* Peace, till they have 'elected another King. The Cardinal, who 'waited for this Declaration, immediately 'gave Notice of it to all the Palatinates, aſ-'ſuring them, that he was extremely con-'cerned at it; and at the ſame Time laying 'before them the Neceſſity of complying 'with the Conqueror.

The King of *Poland* now ſaw plainly, that he muſt either looſe his Crown, or preſerve it by a Battle, and uſed his utmoſt Efforts to ſucceed in that great Deciſion. His *Saxon* Troops were all arrived from the Frontiers of his Electorate, and the Nobility of the Palatinate of *Cracow*, where he yet remained, came in a Body to offer him their Services. He exhorted every one of theſe Gentlemen to remember the Oaths they had taken; and they aſſured him they would fight to the laſt Drop of their Bloods in his Defence.

The Battle of *Cliſſau*. On the nineteenth of *July* 1702, the two Kings met, in a large Plain near *Cliſſau* between

ween *Warſaw* and *Cracow*; *Auguſtus* had ear twenty four thouſand Men and *Charles* ot above half that Number. The Battle egan with playing the Artillery. Upon the rſt Volley, which was diſcharged by the *axons*, the Duke of *Holſtein*, who com-anded the *Swediſh* Horſe, received a Can-on Ball in the Reigns: He was Brother in Law to *Charles*, and was a Prince of great Courage and many Virtues. 1702

The King of *Poland* behaved like a rince that was fighting for his Crown, he d up his Troops thrice to the Charge in erſon; but Fortune was on *Charles*'s Side, ho obtained a complete Victory; the Camp, olours, Artillery, and *Auguſtus*'s War Cheſt ere all left to him, and he himſelf fled be-ore the Victor, who purſued him to *Cracow*, here the Citizens were bold enough to ſhut heir Gates againſt the Conqueror. He auſed them to be burſt open; took the aſtle by aſſault; and made them pay ſuffici-ntly for their Raſhneſs by laying them un-er a heavy Contribution.

The King of *Sweden* left *Cracow* with a full eſolution of purſuing *Auguſtus* without al-owing him any Reſpite: But an Accident hich happened to him, had like to have iven a new Turn to Affairs. As he was arching from *Cracow*, his Horſe falling nder him, broke his Thigh, which con-ined him to his Bed for ſix Weeks: Upon hich a Rumour was ſpread all over *Europe* hat he was trampled to Death under his Horſe's Feet.

This

1702 This Piece of falſe Intelligence gave new Spirits, for a while, to the Followers of King *Auguſtus*, and threw his Enemies into Deſpair. He took advantage of the Occaſion, and aſſembled all the Orders of the Kingdom at *Mariembourg*, and then at *Lublin*; there were but few of the *Palatinates* which did not ſend their Deputies, and what with his Preſence, his Promiſes, and his courteous Behaviour, he regained the Affections of almoſt all of them. The Diet was ſoon undeceived concerning the falſe Report of the King of *Sweden*'s Death, but they had before been determined to ſwear Fealty to their King; the honeſt Cardinal among the Reſt. They agreed to maintain fifty thouſand Men for his Service, at their own Expence, and were to give the *Swedes* ſix Weeks Time, to declare whether they intended War or Peace.

THE HISTORY OF PETER I. CZAR of MUSCOVY.

BOOK V.

The CONTENTS.

The Swedes *beaten in* Livonia. *The Czar takes* Nottebourg *and* Mariembourg. *The Birth and Riſe of the Empreſs* Catharine. *The Czar's publick Entry into* Moſcow. *Builds* Peterſburgh. Auguſtus *King of* Poland *depoſed. The Czar's Letter to the Primate and Senators of the Republick of* Poland *on that Account. He takes* Narva. *Builds* Cronſlot. *The Battle of* Gemaurthoff. *The Czar's Manifeſto upon his entring* Poland. *The* Swedes *make two fruitleſs Attempts on* Peterſburgh *and* Cronſlot. *The Czar ſubdues all the Provinces of* Courland, *and* Lithuania.

CHARLES, now recovered of his Wound, overturned all before him, he called together an Aſſembly at *Warſaw*, to oppoſe that of *Lublin*; and continued firm in his Reſolution of dethroning *Auguſtus*, 1702

1702 *guſtus*, that he ſaid, *if he ſtay'd fifty Years he would not leave* Poland *till he had accompliſhed it.* This was at a Time when ſome of his Generals repreſented to him the Miſchiefs the *Muſcovite* Troops were doing, who daily engaged with his, and oftentimes with much Diſadvantage to the *Swedes*, in *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, and *Ingria*. The Field-Marſhal General *Czeremetoff* had twice defeated a Body of Men under General *Schlippenbach*'s Command. The *Muſcovite* General firſt entered *Livonia*, in the Month of *July*, with a numerous Army, and advanced as far as *Ereſtfer*. General *Schlippenbach*, as ſoon as he had Intelligence of this, detatched a Party of three hundred Horſe to obſerve their Motions. This Party met with a Body of a thouſand *Muſcovites*, which they attack'd and drove to the main Body of the Army: But the *Swediſh* Cavalry, being ſurprized at their great Numbers, retreated in Confuſion, and being purſued by the *Muſcovites*, loſt ſeveral of their Men. General *Schlippenbach*, being informed of what had happened, rode himſelf to reconnoitre the Enemy, and preſently perceiving they had a Deſign to environ his ſmall Body, he judged it convenient, by the Advice of a Council of War, to croſs the River *Emback*, to prevent their Intentions, which was done in View of the Enemy, over two Bridges that were broke down as ſoon as the Men were got over: But the River being then very low, and the *Muſcovite* General making uſe of ſeveral Pontoons to waft over his Artillery, he ſoon forced the *Swedes* to a Battle: The Advantage was at firſt

1702

The *Swedes* beaten in *Livonia.*

ſt on the Side of the latter, ſome of the *Muſcovites* having thrown themſelves into the iver, but the reſt, facing about on a ſud- en, put the *Finland* Cavalry into ſuch Diſ- der that they fell foul upon their own In- ntry, and betook themſelves to Flight ithout any Poſſibility of being rallied, ſo at the *Swedes* loſt their Artillery, and had eir Infantry, after a ſtout Reſiſtance, almoſt l cut to Pieces. This Action began at ſix the Morning, and laſted ten Hours. The *wediſh* General *Schlippenbach* would fain have llied his Men, and have poſted them at *elmer*; but finding it impoſſible to ſtop e Horſe that were fled and diſperſed, and ing no longer able to ſtand his Ground ith the Remains of his ſmall Body, he was rced to retreat to *Pernau*.

The *Swedes*, on this Occaſion, loſt ſeven aptains, thirty Lieutenants and Enſigns, five d twenty Subalterns, thirty ſeven Drums, d one thouſand nine hundred and ſixteen ommon Men. The Loſs was likewiſe very eat on the Side of the *Ruſſians*, but from eir great Numbers was hardly perceptible.

His Czariſh Majeſty himſelf, when he had ade all neceſſary Diſpoſitions in the Fron- er Places and Fortreſſes, marched at the ead of his Army, and took the Fortreſs of *reſcheck*, or * *Notebourg*, which was the apital City of *Ingermania*, lying on the ulph of *Finland*, upon an Iſland, a little elow where the *Neva* runs out of the Lake

The Czar takes *Notebourg.*

* This Town was built above four hundred Years go, by a Princeſs of *Novogorod*, named *Marfa.*

1702 *Ladoga*. This had been taken from the *Ruſſians* by *Guſtavus Adolphus* in the Year 1614, though ſtrongly fortified by Nature; to this Fortreſs his Majeſty afterwards gave the Name of *Slutelbourg*, *Slytel*, in the *German* ſignifying a *Key*, and indeed it proved ſuch to the Czar, opening to him a Paſſage for his Conqueſts over the *Swedes*.

About this Time his Czariſh Majeſty publiſhed an Edict to encourage all Sorts of Artificers, Workmen, and People uſing Manufactures, and other Perſons profeſſing Trades and Sciences, to come and ſettle in his Dominions, promiſing them, that as ſoon as they were arrived upon the Frontiers, they ſhould be conducted, at his Majeſty's Expence, where they ſhould deem it moſt convenient to ſettle themſelves. That they ſhould have the free Exerciſe of their Religion, and the Convenience of Churches. That they ſhould have the Liberty to employ themſelves in whatſoever they thought moſt for their Advantage, without being ſubject to any Duties, Offices, or Impoſts. That as for thoſe who ſhould find themſelves capable to undertake any Trade, and ſhould not have wherewithal to follow it, his Majeſty promiſed to ſupply them with Money out of his Treaſury, without any Intereſt. And laſtly, ſuch as were unwilling to ſtay in his Dominions ſhould have Licences to depart; and at their firſt Requeſt ſhould be conducted, at the Czar's Expence, to the Frontiers, or to any Sea-port.

How much theſe Promiſes were to be rely'd on, we have already ſhewn in the Caſe of

Captain *Perry*, and in thoſe of Mr. *Fergarſon* and others. 1702

His Czariſh Majeſty's Forces, under the command of Lieutenant General *Baur*, next made themſelves Maſters of *Marienburg*, which was, it is true, but meanly defended by a few *Swediſh* Troops, and of itſelf no very ſtrong Place. Among the Priſoners taken in this Town, was *Catharine*, who afterwards became Empreſs of *Ruſſia*. Of the Birth and firſt Riſe of this moſt illuſtrious Woman, Monſ. *de la Motraye* gives the following Account in his Travels. And *Marienbourg*.

* 'The general Voice of the Country ſays, it was on the Banks of the Lake *Worthſy*, in a Village called *Runghen*, that the Heroine drew her firſt Breath, and not in the Neighbourhood of *Dorpt*, as thoſe, who have wrote her Life, in divers Languages, would make us believe. † Theſe Writers, to make her Life the more illuſtrious, have ſome of them given her for her Father a Lieutenant Colonel of the Family of *Abendeil*, others Colonel *Roſen*; but the common Report is, that ſhe was a Vaſſal of this Colonel, who, dying when ſhe was but four or five Years of Age, as her Mother did ſoon after, there was nothing left for her Subſiſtance; for it is rare that the Vaſſals of the *Livonian* and *Ruſſian* Nobility leave any Thing to their Children. The Pariſh Clerk who

The Birth and Riſe of the Empreſs *Catharine*.

* M. *de la Motraye*, Vol. III. p. 128, 129.

† In one Account of *Catharine*, printed at *Zerbſt* in *Vault*, ſhe is ſaid to be the Widow of Lieutenant Colonel *Tieſſenhauſen*; but this is mentioned by no one elſe.

1702 ‘ kept a School, took her as his own, th
‘ Doctor *Gluck*, Miniſter of *Marienbourg*
‘ happening to come to that Village, like
‘ the Girl; and being willing to eaſe th
‘ Clerk, whoſe income was very ſmal
‘ carried her Home with him. Our Writ
‘ agree pretty well as to this Circumſtanc
‘ and the miſerable Condition in whic
‘ young *Catharine* was left, which is ſuitab
‘ to that of a Vaſſal, ſuch as her Fath
‘ was; but not of a Lord of the Manor
‘ as they would make him: For is it n
‘ tural to ſuppoſe, that, if ſhe had been th
‘ Daughter of M. *Roſen*, or was acknow
‘ ledged by him as ſuch, he would ha
‘ left her nothing in his Will when he died
‘ or that his Heirs and Relations, if he h
‘ married her Mother, would have take
‘ no manner of Care of her? Is it not better
‘ and more agreeable to Truth, to let *Cath*
‘ *rine* owe her Greatneſs to her own Meri
‘ and to the Czar *Peter* the Firſt? Th
‘ Meaner her Birth is, the more glorio
‘ and honourable is her Elevation.

‘ *M. Gluck* treated her almoſt in th
‘ ſame Manner that he would one of h
‘ Daughters, and his Wife, finding her e
‘ dued with good and virtuous Inclination
‘ loved her as much; as ſhe ſeemed na
‘ rally to hate Idleneſs, ſhe was employ
‘ in Works ſuitable to her Age, as ſpinnin
‘ ſowing, *&c.* She did every Thing w
‘ that ſhe undertook, and many Things
‘ the Houſe of her own accord, which co
‘ only be expected from the very beſt Se
‘ vants. She had learnt to read of th

‘ Pariſh

Pariſh-Clerk at *Runghen*. When ſhe left that Place, ſhe ſpoke only the Language of the Country, which is a *Sclavonian* Dialect; but at M. *Gluck*'s ſhe learnt the *German* Tongue to Perfection, of which ſhe knew only a few Words before, and employed all her vacant Hours in reading. A *Livonian* Serjeant in the *Swediſh* Army fell paſſionately in Love with her; and ſhe liked him ſo well, that ſhe agreed to have him, if he would aſk the Conſent of Mr. *Gluck*, without which ſhe would do nothing. He followed her Advice, and Mr. *Gluck* who was not very eaſy in his Circumſtances; (for the Reformation which allows Prieſts to marry, has very much impoveriſhed them, eſpecially in *Livonia*, where the Revenues of the Church are leſs conſiderable than in any other Country.) Mr. *Gluck*, on this Account, gave his Conſent more readily than otherwiſe he would have done; this Serjeant was of a pretty good Family, had a ſmall Eſtate of his own, and was in a fair Way to Preferment, being already known to be a Man of Bravery, and Sobriety. It is reported as a certain Truth through all *Livonia* that Mr. *Gluck* performed the Marriage Ceremony himſelf. The next Day the *Muſcovites* taking the Town of *Marienbourg*, the commanding Officer, General *Baur*, perceiving *Catharine* among the Priſoners, and obſerving notwithſtanding the Tears that fell from her Eyes, a certain *Je ne ſcai quoi* in her Face, that ſtruck him very much, he aſked her ſeveral Queſ- 1702

1702 ‘ tions concerning her Condition, to which
‘ ſhe made Anſwers with more Senſe than
‘ uſual in Perſons of her Rank. He bad
‘ her fear nothing, for he would take care
‘ ſee that ſhe was well uſed: Accordingly
‘ he that inſtant ordered ſome of his People
‘ to conduct her to the Place where his Bag-
‘ gage was; there were ſome Women who
‘ waſhed his Linnen, and did other Work
‘ agreeable to that Sex, and finding her af-
‘ terwards very proper to manage his Houſe-
‘ hold-Affairs, he gave her a Sort of Au-
‘ thority and Inſpection over theſe Women,
‘ and the Reſt of his Domeſticks, by whom
‘ ſhe was very much beloved from her Man-
‘ ner of uſing them, when ſhe inſtructed
‘ them in their Duty: And the General has
‘ ſaid himſelf, he never was ſo well ſerved
‘ as when ſhe was with him. It happened
‘ that Prince *Menzikoff*, who was his Patron,
‘ having ſeen her one Day, obſerved ſome-
‘ thing very extraordinary in her Air and
‘ Behaviour; and for that Reaſon aſked him
‘ who ſhe was, and in what Condition ſhe
‘ ſerved him? The General told him what
‘ has been before related, and, at the ſame
‘ Time, took care to do Juſtice to the Me-
‘ rit of *Catharine*. The Prince ſaid he was
‘ very ill ſerved, and had occaſion for ſuch
‘ a Perſon about him: General *Baur* replied,
‘ that he was too much obliged to his High-
‘ neſs to have it in his Power to refuſe him
‘ any Thing he had a Mind to. He imme-
‘ diately called *Catharine*, and told her,
‘ that was Prince *Menzikoff*, who had occa-
‘ ſion for a Servant like herſelf; that he was

‘ able

able to be a better Friend to her than him- 1702
ſelf; and that he had too much Kindneſs for her to prevent her receiving ſuch a Piece of Honour and good Fortune. She anſwered only with a profound Curteſy, which ſhew'd, if not her Conſent, that it was not then in her Power to refuſe the Offer that was made her: In ſhort, Prince *Menzikoff* took her with him, or ſhe went to him, the ſame Day. He kept her in his Service till the Year 1703 or 1704, when the Czar ſaw her one Day as he was at Dinner with him, and ſpoke to her: She made a yet ſtronger Impreſſion on that Monarch, who would likewiſe have her to be his Servant.

'It is very uncertain, what became of her young Huſband, as well as the Character and Poſt he had in the *Swediſh* Army, from the different Accounts that have been given of him. One, for Example, printed at *Jena*, a ſmall Town and Univerſity of *Thuringen* in 1724, tells us, that he was a Cadet, that, after he was married at *Marienbourg* in 1702, the *Muſcovites* attacking that Town, he gave ſuch ſignal Proofs of his Bravery, that he was made a Lieutenant Colonel, and ſome have thought that if every one had ſhewn as much Courage as he, they could never have taken it. If this be true, which, ſays *Motraye*, I heard nothing of in the Country, he had, beſides the Preſervation of the Town, a particular Intereſt which his Companions had not, *viz.* the Liberty of a beloved Wife; and it is well known, what Love

1702 ‘ is capable of undertaking: But this
‘ count ſays nothing of what became of
‘ after his Advancement, or whether he
‘ any Attempt, to recover this dear Spo
‘ Some will have it, that he was or
‘ Corporal; others a Dragoon; and
‘ that the Marriage was never conſumma
‘ he being obliged the ſame Day to riſe f
‘ Table to go to *Riga* with a Detatchm
‘ that was ordered to ſecure that Pl
‘ Others will have the Marriage to have
‘ conſummated, and ſend him eight D
‘ after with other Dragoons, to reconno
‘ the Enemy; and ſay, that the next
‘ after his Departure the Town was inve
‘ and taken the Day following. M. *de*
‘ *Motraye* ſays, he could be aſſured of
‘ thing from the common Report of
‘ Country, concerning the Fate of this
‘ married Man, it being ſo variouſly rela
‘ One while he was told, that he was ki
‘ in the firſt Attack of the Town;
‘ ther, that he was in the Number of th
‘ who not being able to hold out againſt
‘ Efforts of the Enemy, retired to *R*
‘ Thoſe, from whom he heard the laſt,
‘ ded, that he was inconſoleable for the
‘ of his beloved *Catharine*, whom he deſpa
‘ of ever ſeeing again; and that he ſaid
‘ ſome of his Friends, that he would n
‘ go to that Place, where, for a few D
‘ he had been the happieſt of Men, as
‘ was now the moſt unfortunate; but wo
‘ ſeek for Death in *Poland*, where his M
‘ ſter would give him Opportunities enou
‘ to meet with it: For the King of *Swed*
‘ deſpi

deſpiſing the *Muſcovites*, after the Battle of *Narva*, went into *Poland* to find Enemies who, in his Opinion, were more worthy his great Courage. 1702

'Perhaps the Huſband of *Catharine*, continues the ſame Author, had leſs Hopes of ſeeing her again, as he had heard, that the *Muſcovites* had already ſent many Families Priſoners into *Ruſſia*, and ſold ſeveral young Girls of the *Swediſh* Nation, in their Markets, for Slaves to *Turky*. The *Swedes* redeemed ſome of them; and M. *de la Motraye* himſelf bought a Girl of the *Janiſſaries*, after the Action of *Varnitza*, who was one that the Chancellor *Mullern* had redeemed; ſhe knew *Catharine*, and told him ſeveral Particulars relating to her, which were confirmed to him in the Country afterwards.

'Although the taking of *Marienbourg* was a Misfortune to the young Huſband of *Catharine*, yet it was to her the Epoch from whence ſhe was to date the greateſt Happineſs that a Mortal could aſpire to. By her Complaiſance and engaging Behaviour, ſhe made herſelf Miſtreſs of the Heart and Affections of the Czar, ſhe accompanied him every where, and ſhared with him in all the Dangers and Fatigues of the War; it has been obſerved, that Enjoyment, and even Marriage, which often prove the Grave of Love, ſerved only to augment his: She had in ſome Sort the Government of all his Paſſions, and even ſaved the Lives of a great many more Perſons than M. *Le Fort* was able to

'do.

1702 ‘ do. She inſpired him with Humanity, which, ‘ according to the Complaints of his Sub- ‘ jects, Nature ſeemed to have denied ‘ him.

‘ This Monarch, among his other ex- ‘ cellent Qualities, was very judicious, and ‘ would willingly receive good Advice. A ‘ *Scotch* Officer, who had a great Share in his ‘ Favour and Confidence, told M. *de la* ‘ *Motraye*, that one Day making his Re- ‘ marks to him, with his uſual Familiarity, ‘ upon his bloody Executions, and ſome Ex- ‘ actions, which to him ſeem'd oppreſſive; ‘ and telling him, that he had always obſerved, ‘ that thoſe Princes who uſed their Subjects ‘ with Humanity, by that Means made them- ‘ ſelves Maſters of their Hearts and Purſes: ‘ He anſwered him, that that was true in Reſ- ‘ pect to his own Nation, to *Germany*, and ‘ perhaps every other *European* Nation, but ‘ not to his: For, if he had not treated them ‘ with the Severity he did, he ſhould long ‘ before that have loſt the *Ruſſian* Empire, ‘ or never have made it what it was.

‘ One Word from the Mouth of *Catharine*, ‘ in favour of a Wretch juſt going to be ſa- ‘ crificed to his Anger, would diſarm him; ‘ but, if he was fully reſolved to ſatisfy that ‘ Paſſion, he would give Orders for the Ex- ‘ ecution to be done when ſhe was abſent, ‘ for fear ſhe ſhould plead for the Victim. ‘ She acquired the Love and Eſteem of every ‘ one, Soldiers, Sailors, *&c.* She would ‘ often go herſelf, before or after an En- ‘ gagement, followed by ſome of her Ser- ‘ vants, with Bottles of ſtrong Liquors, and

‘ fill

fill out ſeveral Glaſſes to give them with her own Hands. 1702

But to return: On the Twentieth of *September* 1702, News was brought to *Moſcow*, that *Notebourg*, after it had ſuſtained three Aſſaults, was taken by his Majeſty's Arms, for which *Te Deum* was ſung three Days after in the principal Church in *Moſcow*. In the Beginning of *December* following the Czar arrived at the Town of *Peſchick*, ninety Verſts from that City; from whence he came to *Salnicoff*, a Country Seat belonging to Prince *Lofreilis*, his Uncle, thirty Verſts from his Capital, and from thence to *Nikoolſky* the Houſe of the *Knez Mighalo Sakoits Serkaſke*, Governor of *Siberia*, but ſeven Verſts from the City.

While he was here, every thing was got in Readineſs for his Majeſty's Entry. Moſt of the Foreign Merchants had orders to provide themſelves with a greater Number of Horſes than uſual, with a Servant dreſt in the *Engliſh* Faſhion, to conduct the Artillery that had been taken from the *Swedes*. The Day he was to make his Entry, the foreign Miniſters, the *Engliſh* Conſul and *Dutch* Reſident, and ſome of the Merchants went to pay their Compliments to him at *Nikoolſky*. Againſt his Approach, triumphal Arches were erected, of Wood, in the Street of *Meeſneits*, the firſt in the Red Wall oppoſite to the Greek Monaſtery, near the Printing Houſe, which the Czar had lately ordered to be built, tho' an Attempt of that Kind had formerly been unſucceſsful, as is before-mentioned. The ſecond Arch was in the White Wall, near the Admiralty

1702 Admiralty Office, about four hundred Paces from the other. The Streets and Fields were filled with People to see the Proceſſion, which was made in the following Manner.

The Czar's publick Entry into *Moſcow*.

Firſt came the Regiment of Guards, conſiſting of eight hundred Men, and commanded by Colonel *de Ridder*, a German. One half of this Body was cloathed in Scarlet, in the *Engliſh* Faſhion, the other in the *Ruſſian*, becauſe there had not been time enough to finiſh their new Cloaths. The *Swediſh* Priſoners, every one as well Peaſants as Soldiers, walked between two, *viz.* three a Breaſt, and were divided into ſeven Bands, each of about eighty, or eighty four Priſoners, making in all five hundred and eighty Men, between three Companies of Soldiers. After theſe came two fine Led-Horſes, and a Company of Grenadiers in Green lined with Red, in the *German* Faſhion, only they had Bear-ſkin Caps inſtead of Hats; after theſe came ſix Halberdiers, five Haut-boys and ſix Officers. Then came the Royal Regiment of *Preobrazinſki*, four hundred of them, new cloathed after the *German* Manner, in Green lined with Red and White, Laced Hats, with the Czar and Prince *Alexander* at the Head of them, preceeded by nine *German*-Flutes, and ſome led Horſes. This Regiment was followed by a Party of that of *Semenoſky*, his Majeſty's Guards alſo, in Blue lined with Red; and after theſe came the Colours taken from the *Swedes*. Firſt, two Standards, followed by a great Flag which had been diſplayed upon the Caſtle of *Notebourg*, carried by four Soldiers; and then Six Ship-Colours, and twenty five Enſigns, Blue

ue, Green, Yellow and Red, each carried 1702
two Soldiers: Moſt of theſe Enſigns had
o golden Lyons and a Crown at Top.
fter theſe came forty Pieces of Cannon,
me drawn by four, ſome by ſix Horſes of
Colour; four great Mortars, fifteen great
aſs Field Pieces, then another Mortar,
d then very long and heavy Braſs Cannon,
me drawn by ſix and ſome by eight Horſes.
fter theſe came a great Cheſt of kitchen
tenſils, ten Sledges with Fire Arms, three
rums, another Sledge with Smith's Tools,
d a great Pair of Bellows. Then came
e Officers that were Priſoners, about forty
Number, walking each of them between
o Soldiers; laſt ſome Sledges, with the
ck and wounded, followed by ſome of the
uſſian Soldiers, cloſed the Proceſſion. It
egan at one in the Afternoon, and having
aſſed through the Gate of *Twerſky*, which
to the Northward, they advanced up to
e firſt triumphal Arch, and the Regiment
Guards went through. Here his Majeſty
alted a quarter of an Hour, to refreſh him-
lf and receive the Congratulations of the
lergy. The triumphal Arch was ſo covered
ith Tapeſtry Figures, Pictures, and De-
ices, that the wood Work was entirely hid.
t the Top, in a Balcony, were eight Muſici-
ns, richly dreſſed. The Middle of the
rch was crowned with an Eagle and ſeveral
rophies of War. The Houſes near it were
dorned with Carpets, Tapeſtry and Pictures;
e Balconies were full of Streamers, Muſici-
ns and all Sorts of muſical Inſtruments.
he Streets were ſtrewed with Greens, in
this

1702 this Place, where was a great Number of the Nobility. The Princeſs, his Majeſty's Siſter, the Czarina, Dowager of the Czar *John*, and the Princeſſes her Daughters, attended by a great Number of *Ruſſian* and foreign Ladies, were a little beyond, at the Houſe of the Sieur *Jakof Waſſieliof Feuderof*, to ſee the Proceſſion. The Czar, having ſaluted the Princeſſes, advanced on to the ſecond Arch, adorned like the firſt, and having in this Order marched through the City, he went out at the Gate of *Meeſmietſe*, and proceeded towards the *Slabode* of the *Germans*, where being arrived, the *Dutch* Reſident made him an offer of Wine. He went on to *Obrogenſko*, but Night coming on, as he was going out of the *Slabode*, he mounted his Horſe and ſo put an End to the Pomp of the Show.

A very few Months after this Triumph, for the taking of *Notebourg*, his Czariſh Majeſty took the Town of *Nie-ſchantz* in *Ingria*, and obſerving that, about a *German* Mile lower down, the River *Neva*, dividing itſelf into ſeveral Brances, formed a Number of little Iſlands, this, from the Conveniency of the Situation, firſt inſpired him with the Thoughts of building a City there, which ſhould give him a Footing in the *Baltick* Sea; he went thither himſelf to ſound the River, and view the Iſlands, but ſpying ſeveral *Swediſh* Ships cruiſing in the Gulf of *Finland*, he ordered a Detachment of about a thouſand Men, from his Army, to be poſted in the Iſland of *Retuſari*, where *Cronſlot* now lies. The *Swedes*, endeavouring

Peter
1-206

The RIVER NEVA with the SITUATION of PETERSBURGH CRONSLOT and SLEUTELBOURG.



1. The Situation of Petersburgh. 2. Cronslot. 3. Sleutelbourg. 4. the River Neva. 5. the Lake Ladoga. 6. the Cataract. 7. the Ruins of Nie-schantz. 8. the Monastery of Alexander Nemski. 9. Strelna Muse. 10. Sands. 11. Peterhoff. 12. Oranjen-baum. 13. the Fortress. 14. the Road to Petersburgh. 15. the Island of Retusari. 16. Finland. 17. Ingria.

To the Right Hon.ble the Earl of BURLINGTON
This PLATE is most humbly Dedicated.

HONOR VIRTUTIS PREMIUM

T. Spendelowe Sculp.

g to diſlodge the *Ruſſians*, fired upon 1703
em continually from one of their Ships,
hich made the *Ruſſians* retire for a while,
d hide themſelves behind a great Quan-
y of large Stones lying on the Shore; the
wedes upon this, believing they were gone
the other Shore of the Iſland and made
ff in their Veſſels, landed with a Deſign to
aintain ſo advantageous a Poſt; but the
Ruſſians coming from the Places where they
ad hid themſelves, received them ſo warm-
, that they were glad to retire to their
hips, having loſt ſome of their Men, and
t to Sea again. The Czar, after this
kirmiſh, kept Poſſeſſion of the Iſland, made
Harbour there, and a Fort with a Borough,
ow called *Cronſlot*. The Czar, more and
ore pleaſed with the Situation of the Neigh-
ouring Country, purſued his Reſolution of
uilding the City of *Peterſburgh*, and in the
Month of *May* 1703, where, at that Time,
ere only four or five Fiſhermens Huts, he
aiſed the firſt Houſe, which was only a
w Hall, made with Planks and Joiſts, to
cure himſelf from the Weather, and reſt in;
ut in Memory of this great Undertaking, it
as been preſerved ever ſince, being incloſed
ith a wooden Gallery, raiſed on a Wall three
four Feet high. The Place that his Ma-
ſty pitched upon is inacceſſible from the
epth of the River *Neva*, in that Part,
nd from the Country's being a Moraſs all
ound it. His Reſolution being thus taken,
nd the Work began, he iſſued forth Orders,
hat a great Number of Men from all Corners *Peterſburgh*
f his vaſt Empire ſhould repair thither to built.

put

1703 put his Design in Execution; many thousand Workmen, *Russians*, *Tartars*, *Cossacks*, *Calmucks*, and Peasants of all Sorts, were soon brought thither, some from the Distance of near three hundred *German* Miles, and these made a Beginning of the Works of the new Fortress. He was obliged, says, Monsieur *de Voltaire*, to break through Forests, to open Ways, to dry up Moors, to raise Banks, before he could lay the Foundation of this new Town. The whole was a Force put upon Nature: But as that ingenious *Frenchman* observes, the Czar aspired higher than only to the Destruction of Towns, like ordinary Heroes: There were no Difficulties that he would not surmount, no Toils, but he would undergo to raise the Grandeur of his Nation. When this great Work was first undertaken, the Men employed in it had neither sufficient Provisions for subsisting them, nor even necessary Tools, as Pick-axes, Spades, Shovels, Wheel-Barrows, Planks and the like; no Houses or Huts to dwell in, and yet the Work went on with such Expedition that in five Months Time the Fortress was raised, though the Earth thereabouts was so scarce that the greatest Part of the Workmen Labourers carried it in the Skirts of their Cloaths, and in Bags made of old Rags and Mats, the Use of Wheel-Barrows being then unknown to them. It is computed that no less than a hundred thousand Men perished in this Place, where no Provisions could be had even for ready Money; the Country had been made desolate by War, and the usual Supplies by the Lake of *Ladoga* were often retarded

etarded by contrary Winds. The Plan of 1703
he Works was drawn by the Czar's own Hand, who was an excellent Draught's-Man. While the Fortreſs was going on the City egan by Degrees to be built. His Majeſty bliged not only the Nobility, but Merchants nd Tradeſmen of all Sorts, to go and live here, and to trade in ſuch Commodities as hey were ordered. This Place, where Proviſions were ſo ſcarce, and moſt Conveniencies wanting, was at firſt not at all agreeable to the Nobility and Perſons of Diſtinction, who in *Moſcow* had not only very large Buildings within the City; but alſo Country Seats and Villages about it, where they had Fiſh-ponds and Gardens with Plenty of Fruits; hat were not to be expected at *Peterſburgh*, which lies almoſt five Degrees farther North. However, as the Place was convenient, and greeable both to the Deſigns and Humour of he Czar, he paid little Regard to the Complaints of thoſe who conſidered their own Eaſe and Luxury more than the Advantage f their Country. The Boyars brought hither reat Retinues with them, and the Merchants nd Shop-keepers found their Account in this ew City, where every Thing bore an exceſive Price. Several *Swedes*, *Finlanders*, and *Livonians*, not being able to ſubſiſt in their wn Towns, depopulated by the Wars, continued here. Artificers, Mechanicks, and ea-men were invited hither to encourage hipping and the Affairs of the Navy; and e Workmen, having worked the Time out at was appointed by his Majeſty, they were red to build for the Boyars, and ſome of

1703 them even built Houſes for themſelves and ſettled at *Peterſburgh:* They were greatly encouraged to this, by every Man's being allowed to pitch upon the Spot that pleaſed him beſt. In one Year's Time, about thirty thouſand Houſes were erected, and now there are above double that Number; it is true, there are ſome but mean, which may be taken to Pieces in two or three Hours Time, and ſet up in other Places; but theſe are chiefly in the *Slabodas*, or *Suburbs*, as in the *Tartarian* and *German Slabodas*, and the *Finlandiſh Scheren.* But I ſhall ſpeak farther of the Increaſe and Improvements in this City hereafter, and return at preſent to the King of *Sweden* in *Poland*, who, when he was told of the Building the Czar was about, anſwered, 'That he 'might amuſe himſelf, if he pleaſed, with 'ſuch an Employment, he ſhould ſoon 'take them from him, and, if they were 'worth it, he would keep them, if not, he 'would ſet Fire to them;" ſo little did he conſider the growing Power of the Prince, who was to oppoſe him; which, without doubt, he might have much retarded, had he known how to follow his Victory at *Narva.*

1704 *Auguſtus*, daily driven every where before the *Swedes*, ſent an Embaſſy to the Czar, to conclude a Treaty of Alliance, offenſive and defenſive, which was diſliked by the Senate: But he had done ſo many other Things againſt the Inclinations of the *Poles*, that their Affections were quite loſt, and moſt of them favoured the Aſſembly held by the Cardinal Primate at *Warſaw*; who, after ma-

Auguſtus II. King of *Poland* depoſed.

y Pretences of having no Deſign but to re- 1704
oncile *Auguſtus* and the Republick, and ſeek-
g only to promote Peace and, Concord, at
ſt threw off the Maſk, and on the four-
enth of *February* 1704, declared in the
ame of the whole Aſſembly, *Auguſtus*,
lector of *Saxony*, uncapable of wearing
e Crown of *Poland*: Upon which it was
greed that the Throne was vacant, and that
new Election ſhould be made: But before
is Reſolution was taken, the following Letter
om the Czar was read in the Aſſembly.

'PETER ALEXOWITZ, by the Grace
'of God, moſt ſerene, and moſt power-
'ful Great Lord, Czar and Great Duke
'of the whole Great, Leſſer, and White
'*Ruſſia*, Sovereign of *Muſcovy*, &c.

'*To the moſt Illuſtrious, moſt Eminent and*
'*moſt Reverend Lord* Michael Stephen
'Radziowſki, *Archbiſhop of* Gneſna, *Car-*
'*dinal and Primate of* Poland; *and to the*
'*moſt Illuſtrious, Generous, and Magni-*
'*ficent Lords, the Senators of the Kingdom,*
'*and other Orders of the moſt ſerene Re-*
'*publick of* Poland, *and Great Dutchy of*
'Lithuania, *Salutation and Proſperity.*

1704

The Czar's Letter to the Cardinal Primate and the Senators of the Republick of *Poland.*

'MOST Illuſtrious, moſt Eminent,
'and moſt Reverend Lord Arch-
'biſhop and Cardinal, and Reverend Pri-
'mate of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and
'Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*; moſt Illuſtrious,
'Generous, and Magnificent Lords, the Se-
'nators and other Orders of the moſt ſerene
'Republick of *Poland*, and Great Dutchy
'of *Lithuania*, our Friends and moſt dear
'Neighbours. Notwithſtanding we have
'been informed a long Time ſince, and that
'the like Reports were ſpread through moſt
'Parts of *Europe*, that ſome of your Repub-
'lick, led by the Motives of a certain in-
'veterate Hatred, and full of wicked In-
'tentions, make uſe of all poſſible Means to
'drive from his Throne his ſacred *Poliſh*
'Majeſty,

Majeſty, our Brother and moſt dear Neighbour, who is in a moſt ſtrict Alliance with us, that they may afterwards more effectually carry on the ill Deſigns they have contrived and more ſafely obtain their Aim; yet we had ſo good an Opinion of your Equity and Juſtice, that not only we were unwilling to give Credit to thoſe Reports, which came from all Parts, but alſo forbore to conſider the ſame with the ſerious Attention that they deſerved. We thought that if that Fury and abominable Paſſion had crept amongſt the Orders of your Republick, the Number of ſuch, who think on what they owe to God and their Country, and honour Virtue, would much exceed the Number of thoſe, who, not duly weighing the fatal Conſequences of thoſe Deſigns, have ſuffered themſelves to be blinded, by a depraved Paſſion, and their private Intereſts. We thought alſo, that thoſe great Agitations, being ſupported by no Chriſtian Powers, would be eaſily appeaſed amongſt your ſelves. But as we have afterwards obſerved, and are convinced by unqueſtionable Proofs, that That Evil was more and more increaſing, and taking deeper Roots, we thought it was our Duty more than any Body elſe, to intervene and expreſs publickly, how much we were concerned upon hearing of ſo pernicious a Deſign, which does no Ways become a Chriſtian Nation. In fine, after having maturely conſidered that Point, we have reſolved to do, by our Interpoſition, what we believe every honeſt 1704

1704 ‘ Man is bound to do, eſpecially conſidering
‘ the great Office we exerciſe upon Earth,
‘ and the general Obligation laid upon all
‘ Chriſtian Princes, by God and human
‘ Society, to repreſs Violence, and refrain In-
‘ juſtice, and ſuch wicked Advices as tend
‘ to the Subverſion of Laws, and other Ties
‘ of human Society, and diſturb the pub-
‘ lick Peace of Chriſtendom; ſo that Juſtice
‘ may be every where adminiſter'd, and In-
‘ nocence protected; that the common Cauſe
‘ of Princes, and the Rights of Kings may
‘ be chiefly preſerved entire; that inſtead of
‘ an honourable Liberty allowed by the di-
‘ vine and human Laws, which deſervedly
‘ makes the Joy of free Nations, People may
‘ not be carried away to the Exceſs of ſlight-
‘ ing Princes, and trampling under Foot
‘ crowned Heads, whoſe Majeſty is derived
‘ immediately from God; that the ſame may
‘ not be expoſed to the Fury of ſuch who
‘ love Novelties: Laſtly, that the funda-
‘ mental Laws, eſtabliſhed by Nature itſelf
‘ for the Preſervation of human Society, be
‘ not deſtroyed, and that Men, created in the
‘ Image of God, may not degenerate into
‘ Brutes, and live without any Law. Beſide
‘ all theſe Reaſons, we are particularly ob-
‘ liged to concern our ſelves in this Affair
‘ that is by Virtue of the Peace concluded in the
‘ Year 1686, with the Kingdom of *Poland*,
‘ wherein it is ſaid, in expreſs Terms, that
‘ brotherly Love, and an inviolable Peace be
‘ maintained between us, and the moſt ſerene
‘ King of *Poland*. That they mind the Good
‘ and Advantage of each other, that as Bro-
‘ the

thers they aſſiſt each other, and that their Majeſties are as Brothers to ſhew each other all the Duties of Humanity, Friendſhip, and brotherly Affection, and every Thing elſe that may tend to their mutual and reſpective Advantage, and take all poſſible Care to avoid all Things which may breed Enmity, or occaſion Violence, and more eſpecially ſuch as might create War, and occaſion the Effuſion of human Blood, and the Ravage of their reſpective Countries, as it becomes Chriſtian Princes, and ſhall take care that no new Wars nor Diviſions may break out upon any Account whatſoever. All theſe Things having been in a ſolemn Manner ſworn to upon the Book of the Goſpel, the Succeſſors in both Kingdoms are indiſputably bound thereto. Grounded upon theſe Foundations, we have contracted a perſonal Friendſhip with the moſt ſerene King of *Poland* now reigning, and concluded with him an Alliance more ſtrict and particular than the Former, whereby, above all other Things, we have promiſed each other, that as Providence would preſerve us in our Kingdom, (which God may render happy) we ſhould always and religiouſly maintain a ſincere Friendſhip, and perform to each other all the Duties of a good Neighbourhood; that we ſhould never infringe the ſame, but rather ſhould mutually defend one another againſt all our Enemies whatſoever. Moreover, we are obliged to concern our ſelves in this Affair, becauſe of the great Care we are to take, to provide for the Peace and Secu- 1704

1704 ‘ rity of our Territories, ſituated on the Fro
‘ tiers of *Poland*; for while we ſee a Fi
‘ kindled in our Neighbourhood, and threa
‘ ning to put all in Flames, we ought t
‘ think our ſelves concerned in that immi
‘ nent Danger, and Fear that thoſe Flame
‘ may ſpread themſelves into our Dominions
‘ and deprive them of the Conveniencies a peace
‘ ful Neighbourhood does uſually procure
‘ In ſhort, we know what Sort of Monſter
‘ ſome of you nouriſh in your Boſom againſt
‘ us, making no Scruple to entertain ſuch
‘ pernicious Deſigns, and being not aſhamed
‘ to ſay publickly, that after having put i
‘ Execution, what they have contrived a
‘ gainſt the ſacred Perſon of his Majeſty,
‘ they will join our Enemy, which is how
‘ ever directly contrary to the perpetua
‘ Peace aforeſaid, which was obtained wit
‘ the Effuſion of ſo much human Blood
‘ for among the ſeveral Conditions to ſettl
‘ the Stability of the Peace between th
‘ two Nations, with the moſt ſerene King
‘ and Republick of *Poland*, it is expreſſl
‘ ſtipulated, that his Majeſty, and his Suc
‘ ceſſors, who ſhall be elected after him, th
‘ Great Dukes of *Lithuania*, and the whol
‘ Republick of the Crown of *Poland* an
‘ Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, the eccleſiaſti
‘ cal and ſecular Orders of each Nation
‘ promiſe to favour no Ways, our declare
‘ or ſecret Enemies, neither by themſelve
‘ nor by others, to have no Correſponden
‘ with them, and never to ſuffer them
‘ commit the leaſt Hoſtility. To the En
‘ then that this Fire, which lies conceale
‘ und

under theſe treacherous Aſhes, may be extinguiſhed in a due Time, before it breaks out into a Flame; and that That abominable Deſign, abhorred by God and Men, perfidiouſly to break an Oath, and violate what has been ſolemnly ſworn to, may be ſtifled in its Beginning, we have concerned our ſelves in this Affair, being ſatisfied, that we have ſufficiently ſhewn to all the World, that it is our Duty and Right to interpoſe ourſelves therein. Therefore we have thought fit in the firſt Place to apply our ſelves to your moſt ſerene Republick, and induce you by this friendly Exhortation to weigh every Thing in this Extremity, and to admoniſh without Interruption ſuch who entertain thoſe pernicious Deſigns, deteſted by all good Men, to reflect upon themſelves, and conſider what they undertake, and that they not only expoſe their Honour and Reputation, but likewiſe the Security of their Country to an evident Danger. 1704

'The Reaſon upon which they fancy they may ground the dethroning of a King elected according to Law, and acknowledged by his greateſt Enemies, appear ſo unjuſt and frivolous to unintereſted Perſons, that the Authors of thoſe Counſels cannot avoid the Name and Character of Enemies and perfidious Men, which have been beſtowed upon them by their own Brothers; nor hinder all Chriſtian Princes, and eſpecially ſuch, who are obliged by Treaties, or Reaſons of State to defend and protect the ſacred Majeſty of Kings, from oppoſing

1704 ‘ with all their Might, the Election of a-
‘ nother Perſon, to the Prejudice of the
‘ publick good of Chriſtendom, and putting
‘ a Stop to thoſe impious Deſigns. They
‘ cannot be ignorant that his ſacred Majeſty
‘ and Elector of *Saxony* has ſtill Forces enough
‘ to repell thoſe Hoſtilities, and maintain
‘ the good Cauſe and Right he has once ac-
‘ quired, and rather the more, becauſe the
‘ beſt part of the moſt ſerene Republick, in
‘ Conſideration of their Duty and their Oath,
‘ have declared their Readineſs to ſpill their
‘ Blood for the King, and ſacrifice their
‘ Lives and Reputation for his Defence, to
‘ their immortal Glory with their Poſterity.
‘ And what can be the End of all this, but
‘ to make their Country a Theatre of War,
‘ and open a large Field for the Plunder and
‘ Devaſtation of their neighbouring Nations.
‘ As to the Authors of that Deſign, and ſuch
‘ who favour them, they will receive the
‘ Puniſhment they have ſo juſtly deſerved.
‘ They will bring a Blot upon themſelves
‘ and their Poſterity, which ſhall never be
‘ waſhed off, and ſinking at laſt under the
‘ Weight of divine Juſtice, which never
‘ leaves thoſe Attempts unpuniſhed, they will
‘ deplore their own Misfortunes but too
‘ late.

‘ As to thoſe amongſt you who have
‘ Cauſe to complain, for we know very well,
‘ that the whole moſt ſerene Republick is
‘ not hurried away by that Impiety, but is
‘ for the major Part inclined to the King,
‘ we may ſay, that it is certain that God him-
‘ ſelf and the beſt and moſt prudent Princes

‘ cannot

cannot equally pleaſe all the World, and that the Chagrin and Diſſatisfaction of ſome proceed from particular Affections, which uſually ſway their Words and their Writings, and from the Paſſion and private Intereſt of Parties; but although they had juſt Cauſe of Complaint, which does not hitherto appear, they ought for all that to conſider, that theſe political Diſtempers do not occaſion ſo much Damage to the Republick, as commonly do the Means ſome are endeavouring to make uſe of as a Remedy in the preſent Caſe; and to neglect the friendly and amicable Ways preſcribed by the fundamental Laws of *Poland*, even to the offended Party, and have immediately Recourſe to Violence and Extremities, is a Practice contrary to the divine and human Laws. 1704

'If the Authors of theſe Novelties ſhould, by the Permiſſion of God, for ſome ſecret Reaſons, of which there are ſome Inſtances, obtain their Aim, what would they gain thereby, except to ſuffer ſomewhat ſooner or later the Puniſhment due to their Wickedneſs, and their Poſterity ſhall never waſh off the Infamy they have brought upon themſelves and their Nation: The Aſſiſtance of a foreign Prince encourages them in this Deſign, but the Event will enable them to make a true Judgment of their Actions, and Time will ſhew their Vanity in building ſuch great Things on a ſandy Foundation, and that they have rely'd on a broken Reed. They have taken for the Defender of the Cauſe they

'have

1704

'have eſpouſed, a Prince, who for Recompencing himſelf for the Trouble he muſt be at, and Reimburſing himſelf his Expences and Charges, will ſeize upon them after having ruined their Country. We think it needleſs to enlarge any farther upon a Subject of ſo dangerous Conſequence, and flatter our ſelves, that ſuch who deſire the Preſervation of their Republick, amongſt whom there is a great Number of Senators and good Patriots, will exert their utmoſt Prudence, to make their Brethren ſenſible of the Miſtake, and bring back into the right Way, ſuch who have been ſeduced. As to the Reſt, we declare to the moſt ſerene Republick, that we are reſolved to interpoſe our good Offices, and in Order, that ſuch who remembring what they owe to God, their King and Country, have promiſed to lay down their Lives for his Majeſty, and likewiſe ſuch who have the Impudence to oppoſe their Prince, and ſtir Heaven and Earth to obtain their Aim, may equally know our Intentions towards them, we do offer, with a ſincere Heart, our good Offices, to pacify the Diviſions and Quarrels, which have been excited between his ſacred *Poliſh* Majeſty and ſome Members of the moſt ſerene Republick, out of our Affection for our Brother, Friend and good Neighbour, and are fully perſuaded, that, through God's Bleſſing, and the Aſſiſtance of our Friends and Confederates concerned therein, we ſhall reſtore Union, Peace and Proſperity, to the Satisfaction of both Parties, and the

the common Advantage of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, doubting not in the leaſt, but that this Offer of our good Offices, proceeding from the Sincerity of our Heart, will appear free from all Suſpicions to the reſpective Parties: For as his ſacred Majeſty is fully aſſured of our conſtant Friendſhip, and brotherly Affections, ſo the moſt ſerene Republick may firmly rely upon our Plain and ſincere Intentions, whereby we are induced to protect her Liberty, in conſidering of the perpetual Peace, in here alledged; Therefore we friendly invite, by this Letter, upon a Speedy and categorical Anſwer, that we may know, whether our Offers are accepted with the ſame Diſpoſitions for the Peace and Tranquillity of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, as we do proteſt before God, we have at this Time. 1704

'However we ſhall continue the neceſſary Preparations, that in Caſe the Diſaffected Party perſiſts in their wicked Deſigns, we may be able to exert the Power God has given us, to ſupport and maintain his ſacred Majeſty on a Throne he is lawfully poſſeſſed of. As to thoſe who ſhall ſide with the King, or ſhall, in a due Time, return to their Duty, we ſhall grant them our ſpecial Favour, and ſhew them as much Affection, as if they had done ſomething for ourſelves, and promoted our own Advantage, promiſing to aſſiſt them with all our Power for pacifying theſe Troubles; but for ſuch who oppoſe the moſt ſerene King of *Poland*, their Sovereign, and will

'not

1704 ‘ not deſiſt from their pernicious Deſign, w
‘ declare them our Enemies with all thei
‘ Adherents, and ſhall puniſh them as ſuch
‘ every where, and ſhall not forbear ou
‘ Hoſtilities againſt them, till thoſe Di
‘ turbers of the publick Peace, and Ene
‘ mies of their Countrymen, in the Acts and
‘ publick Decrees made during this inteſtin
‘ War, have been ſeverely puniſhed, made
‘ an Example to others, and are plucked ou
‘ like a Weed, of the Kingdom of *Poland*
‘ and Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, whereof th
‘ Peace and Tranquillity is as dear to us a
‘ that of our own Dominions; and in fine til
‘ our Neighbourhoodis cleared of thoſe wick
‘ ed Men. And that this Letter may be o
‘ greater Force, and that not only the mo
‘ ſerene Republick, but alſo all the Worl
‘ may know, that this is our Deſign an
‘ Reſolution, we ſhall communicate this De
‘ claration to all the Princes who favour ou
‘ Cauſe, that the Juſtice of what we are goin
‘ to undertake may appear every where
‘ But for our Neighbours, who have th
‘ ſame good Reaſons as we to look upo
‘ this Affair as concerning them in a parti
‘ cular Manner, we ſhall invite them t
‘ join with us, and enter into our Alliance
‘ and being reſolved to neglect nothing f
‘ the Defence of the ſacred Perſon of h
‘ Majeſty, we ſhall take care of his Cau
‘ Scepter, and Crown, as of our own. W
‘ wiſh with all our Hearts the Grace an
‘ Bleſſing of the Almighty to ſuch who ſi
‘ cerely deſire the Advantage and Preſe
‘ vation of the moſt ſerene Republick
‘ a

and that they may ſucceed in the Deſign they ſhall go upon for the Glory of God, the Preſervation of their King, and the Honour, and Advantage of their Country, and we wiſh them a good Health. Done at *Moſcow*. 1704

'*Of your Eminence, your Excellencies, and great Generoſities. The good and affectionate Friend.*

PETER.

This Letter had no great Effect upon e confederated Nobility, though ſome of em repreſented, that it deſerved to be aturely conſidered, becauſe of the fatal onſequences the March of a *Muſcovite* Army o *Poland* might be attended with; but udent Conſideration being inconſiſtent with eir Deſigns, they reſolved to go on, and oceed to a new Election, which would ve fallen upon Prince *James Sobieſky*, remmended by the King of *Sweden*, if an traordinary Incident had not prevented it: t a Letter ſent from Prince *Alexander Soeſky* informed them, that his Brothers, *James* d *Conſtantine*, being hunting not far from reſlaw in *Sileſia*, a Party of about thirty orſe, ſent privately by *Auguſtus*, had, by s Orders, ſurprized and forcibly carried em off to *Leipſick*, where they were put der Confinement.

The next Candidates that were named, ere Prince *Alexander Sobieſky*, and the Prince Conti, the firſt was favoured by the King of

1704 of *Sweden*; the Primate, and ſcarce an other, was for the Prince of *Conti*. *Alexander* preſſed by *Charles* XII. to accept the Crow which his Father had worn before him, ab ſolutely refuſed to aſcend a Throne while h elder Brother lived; this noble and generou Moderation of the young Prince *Alexander* and the few Friends that appeared on th Side of the Prince of *Conti*, made Way fo a new Candidate, who had almoſt ever Voice in the Republick for him, beſides th ſtrong Intereſt of the King of *Sweden*. Thi was *Staniſlaus Leſcinſky* the Palatine of *Po nania*, a young Lord, endowed with grea Virtues and Merit; who was ſoon declared King of *Poland* and Grand Duke of *Li thuania*.

The Council of *Sendomir*.

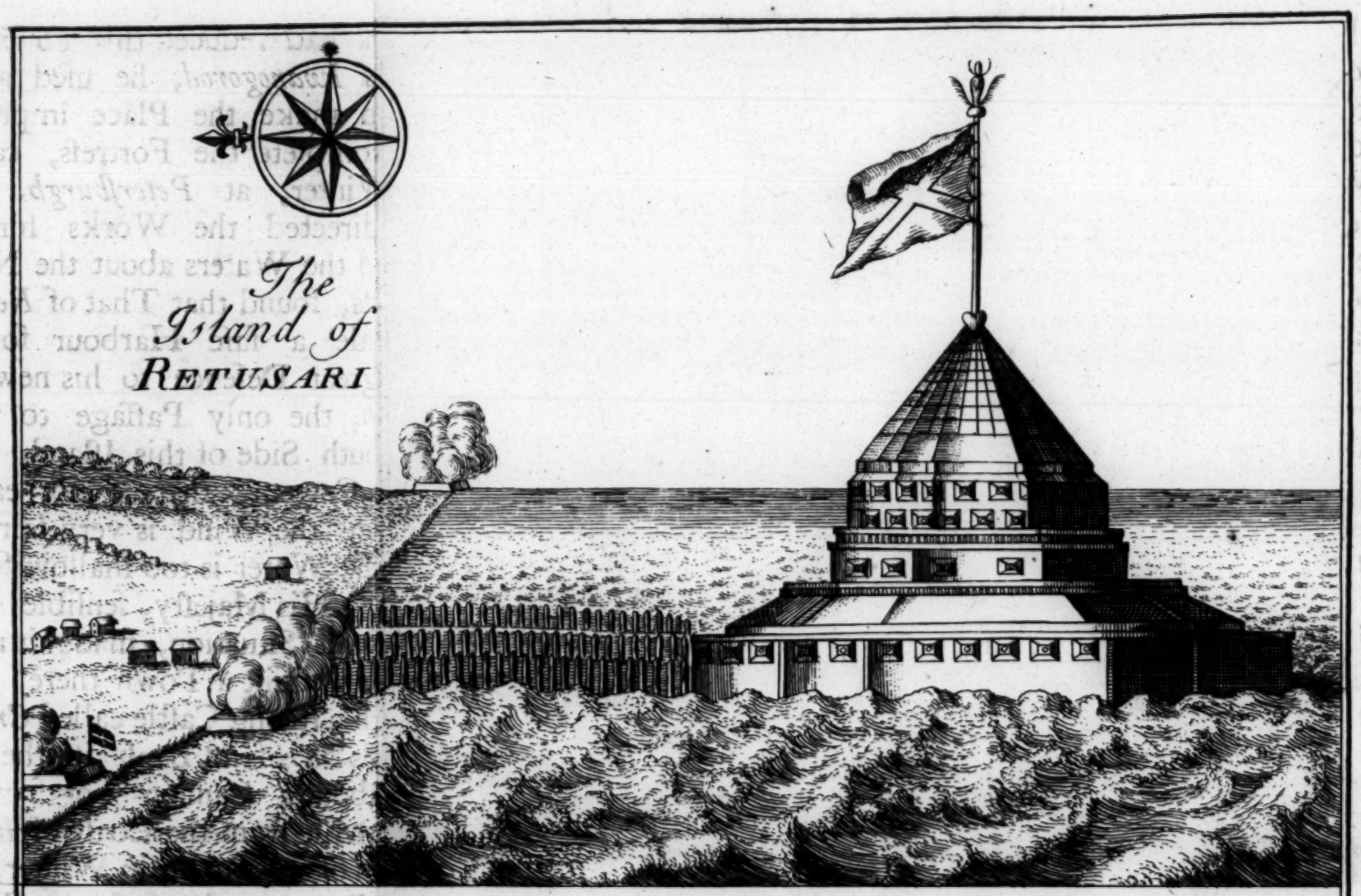
When *Auguſtus* heard of the Election o *Staniſlaus*, he aſſembled a great Council a *Sendomir*, where he was declared a Rebel an Traitor to his Country; but while he wa contending with his Rival by vain Declarati ons, the King of *Sweden*, every where route his *Saxon* Troops. The Czar, in the mea Time, grew every Day more formidable he had trained up his Soldiers in militar Diſcipline, had good Officers, good Engi neers, and a ſerviceable Artillery; He ha now made himſelf Maſter of *Dorpt*, and on the twenty firſt of *Auguſt* 1704, too

Narva taken by the *Czar*.

Narva by Aſſault, after a regular Siege having prevented its being relieved by Se or Land. When his Soldiers were poſſeſſe of this Town, and committing numberle Outrages, His Czariſh Majeſty himſelf ra from Place to Place to ſtop their Diſorder

an

Peter
1-225.



The Island *of* RETUSARI

The CASTLE *of* CRONSLOT *built by the Emperor* PETER.

I. Spendelowe Sculp.

To his Grace the Duke *of* NEWCASTLE

This PLATE *is most humbly Dedicated.*

nd even killed ſome of the *Muſcovites* with his own Hand, that would not liſten to his Commands. The Czar's Conqueſts here onfirmed to him his Footing in the *Baltick* ea. 1704

For when he had reduced this Town, and he Fortreſs of *Iwanogorod*, he uſed all his ndeavours to make the Place impregna-le, and to complete the Fortreſs, carry'd n in the Winter, at *Peterſburgh*. The Czar, who directed the Works himſelf, aving ſounded the Waters about the Neigh-ouring Iſlands, found that That of *Retuſari* ight be made a ſafe Harbour for his leet and a great Defence to his new City f *Peterſburgh*, the only Paſſage to which as on the South Side of this Iſland, where uns a ſtrong Current, that is not eaſy to ome up, unleſs the Wind is very fair; but n the North the Water is too ſhallow for any eſſel to paſs. His Majeſty, ſenſible of the dvantage of this Situation, made it a Port or his Fleet, and built a Town there, which e fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle called *Cronſlot*. *Cronſlot* built.
This laſt ſtands on a ſand Bank in the midſt f the Sea, about a Cannon-Shot from the land, and a Mile from the Coaſt of *Ingria*; he Foundation of it was laid in Winter, upon he Ice, with Boxes made of ſtrong Timber nd filled with Stone, on which the Reſt was fterwards built with Timber filled up with arth. This Caſtle of *Cronſlot* is round, with hree Galleries about it above each other, and ell furniſhed with Cannon.

There are two Batteries on the Iſland over gainſt it, of ten or twelve Guns each, and

1704 in Caſe of Neceſſity the Piers of the Harbour may be mounted with forty or fifty more; thus is this Entrance to *Peterſburgh* ſufficiently guarded againſt any Inſult of an Enemy.

It gave no ſmall Uneaſineſs to the *Swedes*, to ſee the Works of *Peterſburgh* and *Cronſlot* go on in this Manner, for which Reaſon Major General *Meydel*, who commanded in *Carelia*, took upon him to interrupt them; to which End he ſent a Party thither under the Conduct of one *Arnfeldt*, whoſe Guide carrying him beyond the Fort upon the Ice, he was diſcovered by the *Ruſſian* Soldiers, who kept on their Guard, but could not hinder *Arnfeldt* from ravaging over the whole Iſle of *Retuſari*: However, the greateſt Loſs of the *Muſcovites* was two Veſſels of twenty or thirty Guns, that lay on the Ice, and to which they ſet Fire; for they could undertake nothing againſt the Fortreſs, and the Houſes that they deſtroyed on the Iſland, being only of Wood, were ſoon raiſed again.

The greateſt Danger his Czariſh Majeſty had to apprehend was from the naval Armament that was preparing at *Carleſcroon*, and which ſeem'd to threaten his new City with inevitable Ruin. This Squadron was to conſiſt of twelve Ships of the Line of Battle, and twenty eight Frigates, twelve of which carry'd from forty to ſixty Guns apiece. In Truth, this Armament gave more Uneaſineſs to *Denmark* than to the Czar, who depended upon the Impoſſibility of the *Swedes* paſſing by *Cronſlot*, where he reſolved to maintain

maintain his naval Force, which was not yet indeed in a Condition to cope with that of *Sweden*; but it prevented her Deſigns. 1704

Admiral *Ankerſteirn*, who commanded the *Swediſh* Fleet, tranſported ſix thouſand Recruits to *Revel*, and having joined the Squadron of Vice-Admiral *Spar*, they went in ſearch of the *Ruſſian* Flotilla, commanded by Vice-Admiral *Vander-Kruys*, who gave the following Account of what happened to General *Bruce*.

On the fourth of this Month [*July*] our Scouts diſcovered the Enemy's Fleet, conſiſting of twenty two Men of War, without reckoning other Veſſels, that took the Road to *Cronſlot*. On the ſixth in the Afternoon they gave the Signal, and preſently Admiral *Ankerſteirn* and Vice-Admiral *Spar* drew up their Squadron in Batalia againſt my ſelf and the Rear-Admiral. The Vice-Admiral, by the Help of the continual Fire from the Admiral's Veſſels, paſſed towards the Point of the Iſland of *Retuſari*, where Colonel *Tolbuck* was poſted; and thus the Enemy paſſed between our Line and the Fire of the Colonel, attacking us inceſſantly with Bullets and Bombs, whilſt a great Number of Grenadiers in flat Boats attempted to land on the Iſland by Favour of their Ship Guns: But they were received with ſo much Order and Bravery, that after they had loſt almoſt all their Grenadiers, and many of their Soldiers, they were obliged to retreat, leaving us thirty ſeven Priſoners, among whom were two Captains and two other Officers, beſides five of their flat Boats. Thus by the Help of

1704 God, we gloriouſly repulſed them, although they were much Stronger than us, our Veſſels carrying but from fourteen to ſixteen Guns each, whereas theirs were for the moſt Part Ships of the Line; the Admiral carry'd ſixty four Guns, and the Vice-Admiral and Rear-Admiral, fifty four each. In this Action we had but one Man killed and three wounded.

The *Swedes* repulſed at *Cronſlot*.

1705 The Czar having put every Thing in Order himſelf, and reviewed moſt of his Troops, now prepared to open the Campaign in the Year 1705. The Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* marched before with eighteen or twenty thouſand Men, and his Majeſty followed at the Head of his Army, entering *Lithuania*, by the Palatinate of *Poloczk*. Nothing ſtopt the March of the Velt-Mareſchal till he came into the Heart of *Courland*, where he found General *Leuwenhaupt* at the Head of ſeven or eight thouſand Men, which did not hinder General *Baur*, with about twenty thouſand *Ruſſian* Horſe, from penetrating as far as *Mittaw*, in which Place was Colonel *Knoring* with his Regiment. The *Ruſſian* General ſurprized the Town, all that were in it were made Priſoners, and he took a great Booty. The greateſt Part of *Knoring*'s Regiment were put to the Sword or taken Priſoners; and the Colonel himſelf eſcaped by a private Gate, after having valiantly defended himſelf, and more than once run the Riſque of his Life. The *Ruſſians* having given this Blow, retired to their Camp at *Nepten*.

The Deſign of the Velt-Mareſchal was not ſo much to conquer *Courland*, which could not

ot be kept, as to harraſs the Enemy, and 1705
rive away, if poſſible, the Body of Troops
ommanded by *Leuwenhaupt*, that he might
t down quietly before *Riga*. *Leuwenhaupt*,
ho penetrated into his Deſign, as ſoon as
e heard of his March, gave Notice of it
o General *Frolig*, the Governor of *Riga*, and
e, convinced of the Neceſſity of it, ſent
im a thouſand Men: On the other Side, he
ent for the Regiments of *Horn* and *Schreiten-*
elt to join him, and put himſelf in a Poſture
o receive the *Ruſſians*. He was buſy in giv-
ng his Orders, when a Groom, eſcaped from
Mittaw, run to him with the News of the
Muſcovite Troops having ſeized on that Place.
He made no Delay, but went a full Gallop,
with his Cavalry towards that Capital, where
e found nothing but the melancholy Foot-
teps of the Enemies Paſſage, who were retir-
d to their Camp at *Nepten*. The *Swediſh*
General, after having repoſed a While, was
ejoined by his Infantry, and reſolved to
eek a Poſt, which would not be eaſy for
he *Ruſſian* General to force. He choſe for
his Purpoſe a very narrow Spot, where his
mall Number of Men might make Head
without being obliged to extend themſelves,
nd where he could not be attacked on all
Sides. He made all neceſſary Diſpoſi-
ions, perſuaded that the *Ruſſians* would
ome in Queſt of him, and he was not
miſtaken.

The Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* had four-
een thouſand Horſe and Dragoons, four
houſand Foot and two thouſand *Coſſacks*, with
which he went to attack the *Swedes*. He

1705 found them drawn up in two Lines, the first was very close, the second had some Intervals; their right Wing was covered by a Morass, the left by a River that could not be passed in Front. The Cannon was in two Lines between the Wings and the Centre, and the Baggage in the Rear: As soon as Count *Leuwenhaupt* had Notice, by his advanced Guard, that the *Russians* came towards him, he ordered the Colonels *Stakelberg*, *Loscher* and *Hertsfelt* with four Squadrons, to advance about a thousand Paces, to observe the Motions of the *Russians*, and to retire as soon as they saw the Army approach: But the Wood, that was on the left of the *Swedes* on the other Side of the River, favouring the Motion of the *Muscovite* Troops, this Detachment was no sooner perceived by them, but it was surrounded by the *Russians*, who had passed the River. Although this Cavalry was at first attacked with much Fury, yet they supported the Shock, and at Length retreated to the Main-Body of their Army. As soon as General *Leuwenhaupt* saw the *Russians* coming upon him with a Front very much extended; and that, for want of Ground, they must be forced to make a new Order of Battle, he resolved not to give them Time, and his Commands were so readily executed that both Armies soon came to an Engagement.

The Battle of *Gemaurtboff*. The *Russians* first fell on the left Wing of the *Swedes*; and the Velt-Mareschal, dismounting the Foot which were brought behind the Horsemen, they attacked the *Swedish* Cavalry with Fire and Sword. But they were received

ceived with ſo much Vigour, that there was great Slaughter on both Sides. At length me *Ruſſian* Squadrons having croſſed the iver to attack the Enemy in Flank, the *vediſh* Cavalry was puſhed ſo warmly that y fell back upon a Company of the Gene-'s Grenadiers, poſted between the two ines, and put the whole Order of Battle o Confuſion. The left Wing began to e Ground, and Victory ſeemed to declare the *Ruſſians*, when the Infantry of the ſe-nd Line took the Place of this Wing, and ve it Time to rally: And then the Foot t were brought behind the *Ruſſian* Horſe, nd themſelves encompaſſed by the two ines, and were cut to pieces, the *Swedes* fac-g about on all Sides. 1705

In this Action the *Ruſſians* loſt five or ſix ouſand Men, the Velt-Mareſchal was ounded, but the Victory was dearly pur-aſed by the *Swedes*, who loſt General *ndtſchioldt*, Major General *Wrangel*, Colonel *rn*, two Lieutenant Colonels, many Cap-ns both of Horſe and Foot, a great Num-r of Subalterns, and near two thouſand en. And the *Swediſh* General, in giving Account of the Battle to the King his Ma-r, ſaid, the *Ruſſians* had all along behaved e brave Soldiers.

The Czar was at this Time at *Vilna*, with Army, which he reviewed in the Preſence a Crowd of the Grandees of *Poland*, who uld not ſufficiently admire in how ſhort a me that Monarch had diſciplin'd his Troops. he firſt Deſign of the Czar was to march Army along the *Duna* and form the Siege

1705 of *Riga*; but this Check that he received, and an Account that *Leuwenhaupt*, fearing to be overpower'd by Numbers, had put Garrisons into *Mittaw* and *Bautske*, which he had placed in such a Manner as to be always sure of a Retreat to *Riga*, made his Czarish Majesty change his Resolution, and the rather because the King of *Sweden* and King Stanislaus had convoked a General Diet at *Warsaw*, to put the last Hand to their Grand Design of crowning the Latter, which made it necessary for the common Cause to endeavour to trouble that Assembly, which was held by the two Kings with their Swords as it were at the Throats of the Members having their Armies round about keeping the City and Diet in a Manner blocked up.

The Citizens of *Dantzick*, who had put themselves under the Protection of the King of *Prussia*, mantained a Conduct so equivocal as to give Satisfaction to neither Party. On one Side they gave an Azylum to the *Primate*, and on the other gave Protection to those of the Party of King *Augustus* who came for Refuge into their Territories. These two Parties were both equally desirous to have them absolutely in their Interest. This made Count *Piper* undertake to write a very pressing Letter to the Magistracy, the Menaces in which determined them to deliver up to the *Swedes*, all that belonged to the *Saxons*. The Czar, who was attentive to all that passed, wrote also to the Magistracy of this City, not only to make his Complaints of their Behaviour in Favour

of the Enemies of *Auguſtus*, but to inform them of the Motives that brought him into *Poland*, and to engage them by large Promiſes to return to their Duty; and on the other Hand to let them know, that if they perſiſted in favouring his Enemies, and thoſe of their Country, the Citizens and the City itſelf muſt expect on all Occaſions to be treated as Enemies: But as it was not ſufficient to inform this City alone, why he came with a hundred thouſand foreign Troops into the Heart of *Poland*, his Majeſty publiſhed the following Manifeſto. 1705

We,

We, by the Grace of God, the moſt Illuſtrious, and moſt Potent Czar, and Great Duke, Peter Alexowitz, *abſolute Sovereign of the Greater, Leſs, and White* Ruſſia, *and hereditary Succeſſor and Lord of ſeveral Principalities and Countries, in the Eaſt, Weſt, and Northern Parts of the World.*

1705 'SIgnify hereby to the Illuſtrious and 'Magnificent Senators, Dignitaries, both 'Spiritual and Temporal, and the Reſt of 'the great Officers, and Nobility, of the 'moſt ſerene Republick of *Poland*, and the 'Great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, that we, purſu-'ant to the perpetual Peace concluded for-'merly between both Nations, and the ſub-'ſequent Alliances made with his Majeſty '*Auguſtus* II. the lawful King, and the 'whole Republick of *Poland*, for a mutual 'Proſecution of the War againſt our common 'Enemy, have employed our utmoſt En-'deavours to oblige that Enemy, who has 'invaded the diſtreſſed Republick of *Poland*, 'to retire out of it, and to prevent the Ef-'fects of ſuch impious Factions, as either 'for Intereſt or Fears of the Enemy's Power 'and Threats, have endeavoured theſe two 'Years paſt to Dethrone their lawful King: 'We have formerly declared our Abhorrence 'of ſuch perfidious Proceedings, in a Letter

'ſent

ent to the whole Republick, wherein we 1705
cquainted them at the ſame Time, that
e were bound by the ſtrongeſt Ties of
rotherly Love and Alliances, and by our
wn Inclinations to defend the common
Right of Princes, to prevent ſuch a horri-
le Deſign, which deſerved the ſevereſt
Expreſſions of God's Vengeance and Wrath;
nd that we ſhould be obliged to look up-
n ſuch Rebels to their King and the Re-
ublick, as our Enemies, and purſue them
with Fire and Sword: Theſe Exhortations,
nd Warnings, had ſuch good Effect at
irſt, that the Fire, which had begun to
ſpread it ſelf, ſeemed extinguiſhed; but, as
ppeared ſoon after, it was only hid under
deceitful Aſhes, till the *Swedes* did blow it
p again into a ſudden Flame; and the
Waywood of *Poſnania Leſcinſky* was unlaw-
fully elected by a ſmall Number of inconſi-
derable Perſons to be King, contrary to
he Sentiments of many of the Confede-
rates that appeared at the Election, and in
Oppoſition to the Liberties and Rights,
not only of *Poland*, but the whole Uni-
verſe, and this deteſtable Act was not only
proteſted againſt by the Archbiſhop and
Cardinal Primate *Radziowſki*, and other
Senators of the firſt Rank, though they had
at the Time a Quarrel with their lawful
Prince, but the Mareſchal of the confede-
rated Nobility could never be perſwaded
to give his Conſent to this illegal Choice:
But the *Swede* notwithſtanding, perſiſted
obſtinately in his Deſign, and exerciſing an
abſolute Power in the Republick has com-

' pelled

1705

‘ pelled ſome of the Nobility to conclude
‘ Treaty with the *Swediſh* Envoys, in
‘ Name of the elected, who very ſubmi
‘ ſively hearkens to the Dictates of
‘ *Swedes*. Part of the aforeſaid Confederat
‘ were indeed taken Priſoners by their lawf
‘ King, and the Reſt were diſperſed; b
‘ not only the Diſtance of our main Army
‘ and the Animoſities between the Forces
‘ the Republick, but alſo the ſmall Numb
‘ of the *Saxons*, ſoon after obliged the for
‘ named King *Auguſtus* to march to *Saxo*
‘ with Part of his *Saxon* Troops, in Orde
‘ to prevent the intended Invaſion of
‘ *Swedes* into that Electorate. He deſigne
‘ to return ſoon to *Poland*, but his Retu
‘ has hitherto been obſtructed by the *Swed*
‘ who have ſhut up all the Paſſages: Th
‘ emboldened the Enemy to publiſh
‘ in the Name of the Cardinal Primate
‘ circular Letters, confirming the forenam
‘ unlawful Election; and having called to
‘ gether the petty Diets the twenty-ſixth
‘ *June*, a General one was ſummoned
‘ meet the Eleventh of the next enſuin
‘ Month. We cannot believe, that the
‘ Univerſalia were iſſued by the Cardin
‘ Primate, who being, not only the Head
‘ the Clergy, but alſo the firſt Member
‘ the Republick, was chiefly concerned,
‘ endeavour a Reconciliation between th
‘ Subjects of *Poland* and their lawful Prin
‘ So that we have Reaſon to think th
‘ this unlawful Aſſembly of the Deputies
‘ *Poland*, was purely contrived by the fu
‘ tile Enemy, as may partly appear by t
‘ fal

falſe Rumours ſpread by him, *viz.* That the King of *Pruſſia*, deſponding of a Reconciliation betwixt King *Auguſtus* and the *Swede*, had embraced the Party of the King of *Sweden*, and the elected Perſon: The Falſhood of this Imputation is manifeſt by the Letter ſent by the King of *Pruſſia* to the Cardinal upon this Account: And although the King of *Pruſſia* being a neutral Prince in this War, has not been adverſe to the Party of the *Swedes*, yet we are aſſured that he will not recognize the elected Perſon, in Regard it would injure all crowned Heads, who in this World have none above them, beſides the Omnipotent Judge, who, according to his holy Will and Pleaſure, diſpoſes Kings, and places others in their Room. So that we cannot imagine this deteſtable Practice which is ſo abhor'd in the Sight of God, can be approved of by Men; even if not only a ſmall Number, but alſo all the Subjects without ſufficient Cauſe, preſume to dethrone their Prince in Compliance with his Enemies Deſires. For which Reaſon we are confident that the ſaid Univerſalia were publiſhed by the Enemy, who therein makes mention of the Deſolations of the Country of *Poland* and the Depredations committed upon the holy Churches and Lands, but the Perſons guilty thereof are not named; yet it was propoſed therein to call a general Diet, to prevent ſuch Grievances for the Future, and that the beſt Expedient for that End, would be to confirm the illegal Choice of the Waywood of *Poſen*, and 1705

1705 ‘ and to depend upon the Promiſes of
‘ King of *Sweden*, as though he was co
‘ into *Poland* to preſerve the violated L
‘ of the Republick. We do verily belie
‘ that only ſuch as are blinded by Bribes,
‘ give any Credit to this cunning, dangero
‘ and pernicious Deceit, the plundering
‘ Towns and Caſtles in *Poland* and *Lith*
‘ *nia* of their Wealth, Ornaments, Amm
‘ tion and Artillery; the Churches and M
‘ naſteries of the Relicts of Saints, their O
‘ naments and their very Bells; and the O
‘ preſſions of the Waywood-Ships and ot
‘ Lands by intolerable Taxes exacted the
‘ ſhew what a Friend to *Poland* the *Sw*
‘ is, notwithſtanding all his Pretences that
‘ is come into *Poland*, not to ſeek his o
‘ Intereſt, but to protect the Republick: A
‘ by his aſſuming the Sovereignty of *Cou*
‘ *land*, and giving his General *Leuwenhau*
‘ the Title of Vice-Governor of that Co
‘ try, it may be apprehended he will do
‘ like by ſome fortified Towns in *Pruſſ*
‘ Theſe Things conſidered again, we do d
‘ clare that we will defend our Brother a
‘ Allie, King *Auguſtus*, to the utmoſt
‘ our Power by Virtue of our ſolemn Allia
‘ ces with that Prince and the whole R
‘ publick; and are for that End reſolve
‘ upon the Petition delivered to us in
‘ Name of the Republick, to advance
‘ Perſon, with an Army into *Poland*, with
‘ any Regard to our own Intereſt; a
‘ therefore we notify to all States of
‘ Republick, to forbear coming to any p
‘ ticular Congreſs, or joining themſelves
‘ ſu

ſuch as are aſſembled at *Warſaw*, in Favour of the Elected, in Pain of being puniſhed in their Perſons and Poſſeſſions, with Fire and Sword; and to prevent any Plea of Ignorance, we require all true Sons of their native Country, after they ſhall have detected the Artifices of the Enemy, to lay aſide their private Animoſities, and to act unanimouſly for their common good; and in order thereunto, to endeavour the Expulſion of the Enemy who hath diſturbed your Peace. We promiſe, upon our Parole, that we will aſſiſt you herein as a faithful Allie, having no Pretenſions upon you, and we teſtify before God, that we are all advanced with our Forces into the Lands of the Republick, meerly upon preſſing Invitations and Intreaties, and for the Sake of your Intereſt only; and that we demand for the Subſiſtance of our Army ſuch Quantities of Bread, as had been ſtipulated in our Alliance with the Republick; and that we will enjoin our Forces, on Pain of Death, to commit no Diſorders in your Country. We heartily wiſh that you will be unanimous, and open your Eyes to your Welfare, as the only Means to recover your Liberty. We remain a faithful Allie, and affectionate Friend. 1705

ated *in our Head Quarters in the Camp near* Potoſk *the twenty-third of* June, 1705. *And the twenty-firſt Year of our Reign.*

His Czariſh Majeſty had been received the nineteenth at *Vilna*, the Capital of *Lithuania*, by the Referendary of the great Dutchy

1705 Dutchy and Mareſchal of the Tribunal, in the Name of King *Auguſtus* and all the State. This Lord made a long Speech to him to give him Joy on his Arrival, and felicitated his Country on having ſo powerful a Protector, who had ſo generouſly undertaken to defend them from the Ruin that the *Swedes* would bring upon them without his Aſſiſtance. Prince *Menzikoff* in a few Words anſwered this Diſcourſe of the *Lithuanian*, and his Majeſty renewed the Promiſes he had before made to the Palatine of *Culm* and to *Oginſki*, that he would not ſuffer his Troops to commit any Diſorders. They marched divided in three Bodies, that of the Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff*, of which mention has been already made, was between the *Wilia* and the *Duna* in *Courland*; the *Hettman Mazeppa*, to whom the Czar had given the Order of St. *Andrew*, was with fifty or ſixty thouſand *Coſſacks* entered into Black *Ruſſia* to join the Party of King *Auguſtus*, and the Velt Mareſchal *Ogilvy* led that in which the Czar was in Perſon into *Lithuania*, and which was as ſtrong as that of the *Coſſacks*.

After the Action of *Gemaurthoff*, although General *Leuwenhaupt* had all the Glory of Triumph, yet he was in no Condition to attend the *Ruſſians*, much leſs to act offenſively; but his Retreat to *Riga* had left *Courland* expoſed to all that the *Ruſſian* Troops were willing to undertake: And now the Czar declared that he took that Dutchy under his Protection, ordering the Inhabitants to ſend to his Commiſſary, Prince *Menzikoff*, all the Arms, and other Effects belonging to the En-

ny, that could be found in the Province; 1705
but the *Courlanders* were too much in the Inteſt of *Sweden* to obey his Order willingly; o that the Prince was obliged to renew the Ordinance of his Maſter, adding to it Threats f corporal Puniſhment againſt thoſe who hould conceal any of the *Swedes* Effects, and romiſing to give a Moiety to thoſe who hould diſcover them.

In the mean time the King of *Sweden* remained quietly in his Camp, employed only his Deſign of crowning his King in *Poland*, hich met with many Difficulties. The *axons* on one Side, the *Ruſſians* on the other, nd laſtly the *Coſſacks*, all agreeing to opoſe this pretended Diet.

Admiral *Ankerſtiern*, who, as we have ſeen efore, made an unſucceſsful Attempt upon *ronſlot*, thought he ſhould be able to ſuced better now, when he heard that all the zar's Forces were advanced into *Lithuania* nd *Courland*. He ſent an Officer to Major eneral *Meydel* in *Carelia* to deſire ſome roops of him, but the Major General, aving only five thouſand Men, did not care weaken his own Forces, which however d not hinder the Admiral from perſiſting in s Deſign, altho' *Lavale*, the Ingineer, who d been ſent to view the Iſland and Fort, ould have diſſuaded him from it; the Adiral himſelf ordered the Attack. A Hunred Grenadiers, commanded by a Captain, ere to advance firſt; a Major and a Captain ith another Detatchment were to ſecond em; and after that came the chief Body Troops: This Deſcent, fixed for the fifteenth

1705 of *July*, was to be made by Favour of t
Fire of the Fleet. The *Ruſſians* under Col
nel *Tobuleh*, Commandant of the Iſland
Retuſari, waited for them without any D
ſturbance behind their Intrenchments. T
Caſtle was not only in a better State of D
fence than when it was attacked before, b
was alſo defended by a good Wall agai
the Artillery. The advanced-Guard of t
Swedes met, for their firſt Obſtacle, a ſha
low covered with the Points of Rocks, whi
broke ſeveral of their Sloops, and over
others; the Soldiers with much Intrepidi
jump'd into the Water, which was not
firſt above their Knees, but as they advanc
took them up to the Neck, and coſt ſom
of them their Lives; theſe two Difficulti
ſurmounted, a yet greater remained, whi
was the *Ruſſians* lying on their Bellies befo
their Batteries charged with Cartridges,
Diſcharge from which had all the Succe
Imaginable, deſtroying the greateſt Part
the *Swedes* that were landed, and obli
ing the Reſt to return to their Ships: T
Ruſſians then with their Muſkets, finiſhe
what the Cannon had ſo well begun; ſo th
during this Attack, which did not laſt
Hour, the *Swedes* had twelve Officers an
four Hundred Soldiers killed, nine Office
and a hundred and ſeventy Men wounde
and were it not for the Fire of their Veſſe
the *Muſcovites*, who purſued them, would n
have ſuffered one Man to return to their Flee
Thus was the Admiral a ſecond Time force
to retreat, fully convinced of the Strengt
of the Caſtle, and the advantageous Situatio

of it. Nothing could be more pleaſing to the Czar than theſe Advantages gained at Sea, which encouraged him to augment and to eſtabliſh his Marine. 1705

Major General *Meydel*, being informed of the Admiral's Enterprize, reſolved to lay hold of that Advantage in undertaking ſome thing againſt the Fortreſs of *Peterſburgh*, where Major General *Robert Bruce* at that Time commanded. Having got together about twenty thouſand Faſcines, and a large Number of Gabions, he came with his Body of Troops to attack the Line that covered the Fortreſs; but he found it ſo well defended, that after an Aſſault, in which he was repulſed with the Loſs of two hundred Men, he quitted the Place to go and encamp on the Ruins of *Nie-Schantz*, which the Czar had demoliſhed to make uſe of the Materials in building *Peterſburg*, and whither he had tranſported the greateſt Part of the Inhabitants; from thence the *Swediſh* Commandant ſent a Detachment into *Ingria*, where another Detachment from the Garriſon of *Peterſburg*, ſent by Major General *Bruce*, ſoon put them to flight; ſo that this whole Expedition of the *Swedes* terminated only in attacking a Sawing-Mill, between *Peterſburg* and *Sleutelburg*. This Mill was encompaſſed by a double Range of Paliſades, within which the *Ruſſians* had raiſed a good Parapet, that covered two thouſand Men, brought thither to defend that Poſt. The *Swediſh* General ſummoned them to ſurrender, which they refuſing, he was obliged in Honour to attack the Mill. He was twice repulſed, but at the third

Deſign againſt *Peterſburg*.

1705 third Aſſault his Troops paſſed the Paliſades, and advanced to the Foot of the Parapet, over which he threw a great Quantity of Grenades, ſome of which ſet Fire to the *Ruſſian* Magazine of Powder. After this Accident the *Swedes* did not doubt but the beſieged would ſurrender; but far from it, it ſerv'd only to make them the more deſperate: So that making a Sally on their Enemies, they drove them beyond the Paliſades, and after killing above four Hundred of their Men, obliged them to retire, with no great Credit, and reſume the Rout of *Wybourg*.

While the *Ruſſians* had theſe Advantages on their Frontiers, the Czar's Troops in *Courland*, under the Command of the Generals *Menzikoff*, *Ronne*, *Repnin*, made ſuch Progreſs that they ſubdued all that Province to the Obedience of his Czariſh Majeſty. *Mittaw* and *Bautſke* were the two only Places able to oppoſe the Conquerors; the firſt ſurrendered without much Reſiſtance, the other with leſs, but they were forced to employ their Cannon to oblige Colonel *Knoring* to give up the Caſtle of *Mittaw*, whither he was retired with about four hundred Men. They had thrown in about a Hundred Bombs and uſed nine Pieces of Cannon, and after having diſmantled two Baſtions the Colonel deſired to capitulate, and was allowed very honourable Terms by General *Repnin*, upon the Execution of which, it was found that the *Swedes* had pillaged the Palace and Archives of the Dukes of *Courland*, and even entered into the Vaults where their Dead were repoſited, to rob their Car-

caſſes

aſſes of certain Jewels they had on their Necks and Fingers. The *Ruſſians*, that they might not lie under the Suſpicion of ſuch an odious Behaviour, obliged the *Swedes* to be preſent, while a particular Inventory was taken of every Thing at that Time to be found in the Dukes Palace and Sepulchre. 1705

This Conqueſt, joined to that of *Bautſke*, made the Czar Maſter of all *Courland*, while the King of *Sweden* did not vouchſafe to ſend one Man to defend it, ſo much were his Cares employed on the Buſineſs of continuing the Diet at *Warſaw*; and ſo much was it the Buſineſs of his Czariſh Majeſty to trouble and, if poſſible, break up that Diet, that after having left General *Baur* with a Body of Troops in *Courland*, and the Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* with another in *Livonia*, he went himſelf at the Head of his Army into *Lithuania*, with a hundred Pieces of Cannon, having left his great Artillery at *Poloſck*. When he arrived at *Grodno*, he fortified that Place, ſeized on the Paſſage of *Tykozin*, and eſtabliſhed Magazines in ſeveral Places, furniſhing them not only with what he found in the Country, but with Things that he ordered to be tranſported from the Provinces of *Pleſkow* and *Smolenſke*. In ſhort, the *Ruſſians* eſtabliſhed different Poſts from the Side of *Warſaw* as far as the *Bog*, ſo that the Czar was abſolute Maſter of all *Lithuania*, and by the Diſpoſitions he made he ſeemed to aim at nothing more than the Preſervation of that Province; which made his Enemies encourage a falſe Rumour, that his Majeſty would take that Op-

1705 portunity of uniting the Great Dutchy to h
own Dominions, and were in Hopes by th
Means to draw from his Party, the Nobili
ty of *Lithuania* and Upper *Poland*, who held
out for King *Auguſtus*, to whoſe Aſſiſtance
the *Hettman Mazeppa* was advancing at the
Head of his *Coſſacks*.



THE

THE HISTORY OF *PETER* I. CZAR *of* MUSCOVY.

BOOK VI.

The CONTENTS.

g Auguſtus *comes to* Grodno, *meets the* Czar, *inſtitutes the Order of the White-Eagle. The Czar made a Colonel in his* wn *Army. Leaves* Grodno. Patkul *ar-reſted by Order of* Auguſtus *at* Dreſden. The *Battle of* Travanſtad. Charles XII. enters Saxony. *The Treaty of* Alt-Ranſtadt. The *Battle of* Caliſh. *The Story of the* unfortunate Patkul. *An Aſſembly of the* Poliſh *Nobility meet at* Leopold. *The* Czar *writes to ſeveral Potentates complain-ing of the Behaviour of* Auguſtus. *The As-ſembly of* Lublin. Staniſlaus *comes into* Poland. *The Action of* Holowzin. *The* King *of* Sweden *marches into the* Ukrain.

The Battle of Lezno. *The Revolt and Sen-tence of* Mazeppa. *The Czar's Ambaſſador arreſted in* London. *Proceeding on that Ac-count. The Siege of* Pultowa. *The Deciſive Battle fought near that Place. The King of* Sweden's *Flight to* Bender *in* Turky.

1705

KING *Auguſtus* had got together an Army of twenty thouſand Men in *Saxony*, but it was almoſt impoſſible to bring them into *Poland*, all the Paſſages being ſo well guarded. Nevertheleſs he was ſo ſtrongly preſſed by General *Patkul* who was at that Time with him, as Ambaſſador from the Czar, and by the Accounts that he received from *Warſaw*, that he could not but be ſenſible how neceſſary his Preſence was in that Kingdom, therefore he expoſed himſelf to the almoſt inevitable Danger of being taken by his Enemies, that he might join his faithful Allie. He left *Dreſden* in-cognito, accompanied by three Perſons only, and arrived at *Dantzick* on the twenty-eighth of *October*, from whence he went to *Koningſ-berg*, and from thence to *Tykozin*: As ſoon as he arrived, he gave Notice of it to the Czar and all thoſe of his Party. He went next to *Grodno*, and from thence to the Army of the Czar, who, at their Meeting, preſented him with ſix Standards, a Moiety of thoſe, which the *Ruſſians* had taken at the Bridge of *Praag* upon the *Viſtula*, having ſurpriſed the *Swediſh* Guard that was poſted there, which occaſioned an Action in which the *Swedes* loſt ſeveral Priſoners beſides thirteen Standards.

It was at *Grodno* that King *Auguſtus* inſti- 1705
uted the Order of the White Eagle, with
Deſign of rewarding ſeveral of the Grandees
f *Poland*, and ſome of the *Ruſſian* Gene-
als; but this Honour could ſeem little more
han Matter of Ridicule, when beſtowed by
ne who had himſelf only the Name of a
King. Here likewiſe another Farce was
erformed, but ſuch a one, ſays M. *Fonte-*
elle, as was at leaſt inſtructive, and not un-
it to be acted by Kings.

Inſtitution of the Order of the White Eagle.

His Czariſh Majeſty, purſuant to the Laws which he had preſcribed to himſelf, would never advance in military Dignities beyond what his Merits might claim: And having requeſted King *Auguſtus* to take upon him the Command of his Army, he cauſed the *Muſcovite* General *Ogilvi*, to propoſe in Publick the filling up two vacant Poſts of Colonels. *Auguſtus* ſaid he was not well enough acquainted with the *Muſcovite* Officers to know how to make a proper Choice; ſo deſired *Ogilvi* to name two that he thought worthy thoſe Employments. *Ogilvi* named Prince *Alexander Menzikoff*, and *Peter Alex-owitz*, meaning the Czar himſelf. The King of *Poland* ſaid he knew the Merits of *Menzikoff*, and would forthwith diſpatch his Commiſſion; but for the other he was not informed of his Services, but after four or five Days Sollicitation, he made *Peter Alex-owitz* a Colonel.

The Czar made a Colonel in his own Army.

When the Conference between the two Kings ended, his Czariſh Majeſty left his Troops to his Allie, and went himſelf to put an End to a Rebellion raiſed in the Province

1705 vince of *Aſtracan*, where the Rebels had ravaged the Country for two Years; putting to Death Men, Women and Children. They had ſurprized and cut in Pieces the Governor of *Aſtracan*, with moſt of the chief Officers of the Garriſon; they marched next to *Camiſhinſka*; but the Garriſon ſtanding upon their Guard, they were repulſed. They next beſieged *Czaritza*, but meeting with no Succeſs there, they returned to *Aſtracan*, where *Peter Matfeaich Apraxin*, ſent by the Czar with an Army againſt them, retook *Aſtracan*, and put all to the Sword, except ſome of the Chiefs, who were ſent to *Moſcow*, and there executed, after having been put to the Torture.

The Czar had no ſooner left King *Auguſtus*, but the latter began to liſten to ſome of the Grandees of *Lithuania*, who being very uneaſy to ſee their Country ruined by the *Ruſſians*, endeavoured to raiſe ſeveral Suſpicions, which very much diminiſhed the good Underſtanding that had been between thoſe Princes. One of the firſt Effects of this appeared in the Order that King *Auguſtus* ſent to arreſt General *Patkul* in *Saxony*, who was ſuſpected to be working ſecretly to reconcile the Czar and the King of *Sweden*.

Patkul arreſted at *Dreſden*.

Patkul was in *Saxony* in the Quality of Commandant of thoſe Troops which the Czar had ſent to the Relief of *Auguſtus*, and was at the ſame time cloathed with the Character of his Czariſh Majeſty's Plenipotentiary to ſeveral Princes of *Germany*; performed then the Functions of his Ambaſſador at *Dreſden*, and had done many real Services to King

Auguſtus

guſtus: But all this did not prevent his 1705
ing taken out of his Bed in the Night,
ving his Papers ſeized, and being ſent to
iſon; this Proceeding aſtoniſhed every
dy, and notwithſtanding all the plauſible
etences that were aſſigned for it, the Com-
ints that the Czar made, and the Manner
his demanding that Miniſter's Liberty,
re publick Proofs of his having done
thing to abuſe the Confidence his Maſter
aced in him.

The Time being come when the Armies
pected to have gone into Quarters, the
ing of *Sweden* put himſelf in Motion to
ake a Winter Campaign. After ſeveral
larches, which at firſt ſeemed to be in-
nded againſt the Army of *Mazeppa*, he
ok, all on a ſudden, the Rout to the *Bog*,
hich was ſo hard frozen that the Army
arched upon the Ice. *Tykozin* was the firſt
lace it was thought he would have attacked;
t the *Ruſſians* had very well fortified it,
ere were three thouſand Men in it, and
e Commandant had Orders to defend it to
e laſt Man. The King of *Sweden* came to
ew the Place, and not thinking proper to
tack it, he turned toward *Bielſk* the Capital
Polachia, from whence by ſeveral Wind-
gs he brought his Army to the Side of
rodno, where the Velt-Mareſchal *Ogilvi*
aited for him, in a good Poſture in his Lines,
d had a great Deſire to have tried his
rength with that young Hero; but was or-
ered to expect him in his Intrenchments. The
wedes approached as far as *Michalowitz*, a
illage within a Mile of *Grodno*, where

Charles

1705 *Charles* XII. came to view the Town, the Camp and the Lines; but he found ſo terrible an Aſpect on all Sides that he thought it proper to change his Deſign without undertaking any Thing. After ſo fatiguing a March, that did no ſmall Damage to his Army, he determined to paſs the *Niemen*, which was alſo frozen over, but as the Banks were very high, and the Paſſage was to be made almoſt within Sight of the *Ruſſian* Army, he would have found much Difficulty in it, had not the *Ruſſian* Generals received Orders to act only on the Defenſive. When the King of *Sweden* had got all his Army over the *Niemen*, he extended it in the Country between *Grodno* and *Vilna*, from whence he ſent ſeveral Detachments, from one Side to the other to ſeek for Proviſions, and to hinder the *Ruſſians* from amaſſing any.

1706 All the Month of *January* was employed in theſe Motions. In the mean Time King *Auguſtus* held a grand Council of War, with the *Ruſſian* Generals at *Grodno*, in which it was reſolved, that the Generals *Ogilvi*, *Allard* and others, as well *Ruſſians* as *Saxons*, and the Great General *Wieſnowiſky* ſhould remain at *Grodno*, from whence, as Occaſions offered, they might act both offenſively and defenſively againſt the *Swedes*; while King *Auguſtus* was to go into *Poland*, to re-eſtabliſh his Credit in thoſe Places abandoned by his Enemies, and to give all the Orders that might be neceſſary for favouring the Entry of his *Saxon* Troops which were on the Banks of the *Oder*, under the Command of Gene-

Shullembourg, waiting only for a favou- 1706
ble Opportunity to elude the Vigilance of
e *Swediſh* General *Renchild*.

After ſeveral Marches and Counter-marches
eneral *Shullembourg* paſſed the River with
s *Saxons* and *Ruſſians*, the laſt commanded
Lieutenant General *Woſtromirſky*. General
enchild, as ſoon as he heard of *Shullem-*
urg's having paſſed the *Oder*, began his
arch, and theſe two famous Generals met,
the twelfth of *February* 1706, at a Place
lled *Fravenſtad*. *Renchild* had about ten The Battle
ouſand Men, *Shullembourg* twice the Num- of *Fravenſtad*.
r. Both Armies engaged, and in the
ttle, which did not laſt a Quarter of an
our, the *Saxons* reſiſted not a Moment,
e *Muſcovites* behaved but little better;
ch was the Terror of this brave *Swediſh*
eneral, that although *Shullembourg* had
ade the beſt Diſpoſition imaginable, yet
enchild put them into ſuch Diſorder, that
found ſeven thouſand Fuſees all charged
rown on the Ground without being fired.
he *Muſcovites* begged for Life on their
nees, but *Renchild*, as M. *de Voltaire* tells
ordered them to be inhumanly maſſacred
cold Blood, above ſix Hours after the
ttle. *Motraye* contradicts this, and ſays,
was the King himſelf that ordered it, who
s not ſix Leagues from *Fravenſtad* when
heard the News of the Battle; and was
little jealous that *Renchild* ſhould obtain
ch a Victory without his having any Share
it.

King *Auguſtus* was now driven to the ut-
oſt Diſtreſs, he had nothing left but *Cracow*,
in

1706 in which Place he was ſhut up with a
Troops, and was even afraid of being
livered up by them to the Conqueror;
Loſs of the Battle of *Fravenſtad* had
diſcouraged his Party in *Poland*, and
the King of *Sweden* in a Condition to
the *Ruſſians* out of *Lithuania*, where the
bility, being weary of maintaining both Fri
and Foes, began to declare apace for
new King; and the Velt-Mareſchal O
ſeeing the bad Situation he was in, ma
very prudent Retreat.

The Czar was, at this Time, at *Smole*
at the Head of twenty thouſand of his
Troops, to which General *Mazeppa*
joined thirty or forty thouſand *Coſſacks*.
ther came the Biſhop of *Cujavia*, on the
of King *Auguſtus*, to ſound the Sentimen
Peter I. whoſe Retreat was not at all ag
able to the dethroned Monarch, who co
plained much that his Allie, after hav
done ſo much for him, ſhould abandon h
The Czar, though ever ſo willing to aſſ
him, was not obliged to do all alone, a
ſuffer his Army to periſh by Hunger a
Cold; beſides the preſent Poſture of Affa
made him think of the Defence of his o
Dominions; and we muſt add to this,
Reſentment for the Seizure of *Patkul*, wh
Releaſe he demanded without vouchſafing
give Audience to the *Poliſh* Prelate. N
vertheleſs Prince *Menzikoff* wrote a Le
ſome Time after to King *Auguſtus*, in wh
he tells him, that the Czar his Maſter h
not withdrawn his Troops from *Lithuan*
but to re-eſtabliſh them in a better Air, a

o return with freſh Forces to his Aſſiſtance 1706
n the Beginning of the next Campaign.

The King of *Sweden* joining *Renchild*, his *Charles* XII.
eneral, and entering into *Saxony*, which enters *Saxony*.
ountry he laid under heavy Contributions,
ompleated the Misfortunes of *Auguſtus*, who
eing his Hereditary Dominions in Danger,
ound himſelf under a Neceſſity to ſubmit to
e Conqueror, and therefore determining to
ffer Propoſals of Peace, he ſent Baron *Imhoff*
nd *Pſingſten* to *Charles* XII. Theſe two The Treaty
lenipotentiaries went very privately, in the of *Alt-Ran-*
ight, to the *Swediſh* Camp, at *Alt-Ran-* *ſtadt.*
adt, for fear the *Muſcovites* ſhould diſcover
at the King of *Poland*, their Maſter, was
bout treating with the King of *Sweden*.
e gave them full Powers, and ſigned a
lank. When *Charles* received the Letter,
nd read it, he ordered them to wait, and
id he would give them his Anſwer. He
tired into his Cloſet, and having ſtaid but
very ſhort Time, returned with a Paper
which he had written the following Con-
nts.

'I conſent to give Peace upon the fol-
lowing Conditions, in which it muſt not
be expected that I ſhall make the leaſt
Alteration.

Firſt, 'That King *Auguſtus* renounce for
ever the Crown of *Poland*; that he ac-
knowledge *Staniſlaus* as lawful King; and
that he promiſe never to remount the
Throne, not even after the Death of *Sta-*
niſlaus.

Second,

1706

Second, 'That he renounce all other 'Treaties, and particularly thoſe he has 'made with *Muſcovy*.

Third, 'That he ſend back with Honour 'the Princes *Sobieſky* into my Camp, and 'all the Priſoners he has ever taken.

Fourth, 'That he deliver into my 'Hands all the Deſerters which have entered 'into his Service, and particularly *John* '*Patkul*, and that all Proceedings be ſtopt 'againſt ſuch as have paſſed from his Ser- 'vice into mine.

The Plenipotentiaries of *Auguſtus* could not bring *Charles* to make any Abatement of the Rigour of theſe Conditions; but were forced to yield to his inflexible Obſtinacy. The King of *Sweden*, at that Time, exerciſed an abſolute Power in *Saxony*. He even ordered the Regiſters of the Finances to be laid before him, that he might know the Strength of the Electorate, and how much he could demand of the States; from which he exacted ſix hundred and twenty five thouſand Crowns at firſt, and afterwards five hundred thouſand Crowns *per* Month.

Whilſt the Treaty before mentioned was ſecretly negotiating in the Camp at *Alt-Ranſtadt*, Prince *Menzikoff*, Generaliſſimo of the *Muſcovite* Army brought thirty thouſand Men, and joined the Forces of *Auguſtus*, which in the whole made not above ſix thouſand Men. The King was in the utmoſt

Confuſion

nfuſion when the *Muſcovites* arrived, and 1706
der terrible Apprehenſions of what might
the Conſequence, if they ſhould diſcover
Negotiation with *Sweden*: But he was
l in much greater Perplexity, when he
eld the Preſence of ten thouſand *Swedes*,
mmanded by General *Meyerfeldt*, approach-
him at *Caliſh*, near the Palatinate of
ſſania. He would have been glad to have
clined an Engagement, leſt he ſhould
itate a Conqueror, but too much incenſed
eady: In this Extremity he could think of
better Expedient than to ſend one he could
ſt to the *Swediſh* General, to let him partly
o the Secret of the Negotiation, and to
ſire him to withdraw; but this had a quite
ntrary Effect to what the King of *Poland*
pected; for *Meyerfeldt*, taking this to be
ly an Invention to amuſe him, redoubled
Ardour for the Fight. *Auguſtus* preſſed
rward by the Inſtances of Prince *Menzikoff*,
d provoked at the Confidence of *Meyerfeldt*, The Battle
s forced to conſent to a Battle, which, of *Caliſh*.
ether won, or loſt, would be alike fatal to
m.

Victory was now on the Side of the
uſcovites; the *Swedes*, and their Allies being
compaſſed on all Sides, were obliged to
row down their Arms and beg for Quarter.
heyhad about three thouſand Men killed and
ounded, and four or five thouſand taken
iſoners, among which were General *Meyer-*
dt, Count *Tarlo*, and ſeveral Officers of
ſtinction, all the Enemy's Artillery and
ggage were in the Power of the Victors;
t when *Auguſtus* was entering into *War-*

1706 *ſaw*, in Triumph, *Pfingſter*, one of his Plenipotentiaries, preſented him with the Treaty of Peace, which deprived him of his Crown. In the firſt Emotions of his Heart, when he had read the ſhameful Articles he was to ſubſcribe to, he pauſed with himſelf for a ſhort Time, to conſider if he ought not rather to march at the Head of his now victorious Troops and fall upon the King who treated him ſo diſgracefully: But conſidering that *Charles* was at the Head of an Army never yet beaten, that the *Muſcovites* would all forſake him when they heard of the Treaty, and that his hereditary Country would be ravaged by both Parties, *Swedes* and *Muſcovites*, he thought it moſt adviſeable, to ſign to the hard Conditions the King of *Sweden* impoſed upon him: And then ſet out for *Saxony*, in Hopes of ſoftening, by his Preſence, the Inflexibility of his Enemy.

Charles XII. and *Auguſtus* met in Count *Piper*'s Quarters at *Gunterſdorf* more than once, where the firſt treated his vanquiſhed Foe with all the outward Appearance of Reſpect and Civility; but that was of little Value, when weighed againſt the real Severity with which he exacted his Compliance with every Article of the Treaty; and as a farther Puniſhment for his having dared to give him a General Battle at *Caliſh*, he forced the ungrateful Taſk upon him, of writing a Congratulatory Letter to *Staniſlaus* on his Advancement to the Crown of *Poland*; which, with *Staniſlaus*'s Anſwer, were as follow:

Sir

Sir and *Brother*,

AS I ought to have Regard to the Requeſt of the King of *Sweden*, I cannot avoid congratulating your Majeſty, upon your coming to the Crown, though perhaps the advantageous Treaty the King of *Sweden* has lately concluded for your Majeſty, might have excuſed me from this Correſpondence: However I congratulate your Majeſty, beſeeching God that your Subjects may be more faithful to you, than they have been to me.

Auguſtus, King.

Leipſic, April 8, 1707.

Staniſlaus thus anſwered.

Sir and *Brother*,

'THE Correſpondence of your Ma-
'jeſty is a freſh Obligation which I
'owe to the King of *Sweden*; I have a
'juſt Senſe of the Compliments you make
'me upon my coming to the Crown:
'And I hope my Subjects will have no
'Room to fail of their Fidelity towards
'me, as I ſhall obſerve the Laws of the
'Kingdom.

Staniſlaus, King of *Poland*.

1707

Auguſtus from this Time was obliged renounce the Title of King of *Poland*, d his Name was ordered to be eraſed t of the publick Prayers, to give Place that of *Staniſlaus*, all which he could ore eaſily digeſt than the being obliged give up *Patkul* to the Vengeance of the ing of *Sweden*. He had, to the Amaze-ent of all *Europe*, been clapt into Pri-n, as is before related, although at that ime Ambaſſador from the Czar of *Muſ-vy*, ſoon after the Interview and Parting that Monarch and King *Auguſtus* at *rodno*.

The Czar on one Hand loudly demanded s Miniſter; but *Charles* XII. threaten-terrible things if he was not delivered him, according to the Treaty of *Alt-anſtadt*,

The Melancholy Story of that *Livonian* triot was this,

The Story of *Patkul*,

Charles XI. the King of *Sweden*'s Father d Predeceſſor, among the ſeveral Severi-s he exerciſed upon his Subjects, had tak-away a great many of the Privileges and tates of the *Livonians*. *Patkul* was deputed the Nobility of *Livonia* to carry the mplaints of that Province to the King, ich he did in the moſt reſpectful Man-, accompanied with great Courage and oquence. *Charles* XI. ſeemed not at all pleaſed with what he had ſaid; but laying

1707 his Hand on *Patkul*'s Shoulder, told him, 'he had ſpoke for his Country like a brave 'Man, and that he loved him for it: Yet a few Days after, cauſed him to be condemned for a Traitor. *Patkul* found Means to make his Eſcape into *Poland*, and was well received by *Auguſtus*, from whoſe Service he paſſed into that of the Czar, and ſo continued till the Time of his Confinement in the Caſtle of *Koniſting*, which was occaſioned by his having diſcovered the Deſign of Count *Fleming* and the Chancellor of *Saxony*, to obtain a Peace with *Sweden* at any Rate; upon which he immediately formed a Scheme to ſupplant theirs, and bring about an Accommodation between the Czar, his new Maſter, and the *Swedes*. The others getting ſome Intelligence of this, ſoon found means to prevail upon *Auguſtus*, to impriſon him; and that Prince, writing to the Czar on the Occaſion, told him that *Patkul* was a perfidious Wretch, and would betray them both. Though his greateſt Crime was having ſerved his Maſter with too much Fidelity, and being always true to his Truſt.

The Czar who had great Penetration, and knew the Merits of *Patkul*, inſiſted upon his being ſent back to him; *Auguſtus*, at the ſame Time intimidated by the Threats of the King of *Sweden*, was much embarraſſed in his Thoughts, till he came to this Reſolution, that he would ſecretly contrive the Priſoner's Eſcape, by which Means he ſhould both ſatisfy the Czar and evade the Wrath

Charles XII. But the Ill-Fortune of *Pat-* 1707
l diſappointed this well-laid Deſign: For
e Governor of the Caſtle of *Koniſting*, where
lay impriſoned, knowing he was rich, de-
anded a large Sum of Money of him for
s Liberty; *Patkul* relying on the Law of
ations, and being informed of *Auguſtus*'s
tentions, refuſed to pay the Mercenary
overnor for that Piece of Service which his
ury to his Maſter ought to have made him
ady to have rendered him: And while
ey were thus diſputing the Matter, a Par-
of *Swedes*, appointed for that Purpoſe,
me up and forced the Victim out of the
ands of his Jailor. He was ſtrait carried
the General Quarters at *Alt-Ranſtadt*, and
ere kept, for three Months, chained to a
ake.

The remaining Part of the Hiſtory of this
fortunate, but worthy, Man, is thus pathe-
ally related by M. *de Voltaire*.

'*Charles* XII. forgetting that *Patkul* was
he Czar's Ambaſſador, and conſidering
only that he was born his Subject, or-
dered a Council of War to paſs Sentence
upon him, with the utmoſt Rigour; he
was condemned to be broke alive upon
he Wheel and quartered. A Chaplain
came to let him know, that he was to
die, without informing him of the Man-
ner of his Puniſhment. Upon the Infor-
mation, this Man, who had braved Death
in ſo many Battles, finding himſelf alone
with a Prieſt, and his Courage no longer
ſupported by Glory or Paſſion, the only
ſources of Intrepidity, broke into a bitter

1707

'Flood of Tears, which he poured into
'Boſom of the Chaplain. He was engag
'to a *Saxon* Lady, named Madam D
'*ſilden*, who had all the Advantages
'Birth, Merit and Beauty, and whom
'had Thoughts of marrying much about
'ſame Time that he was delivered up
'Puniſhment. He deſired the Chaplain
'wait upon her, to comfort her, and aſſ
'her, that he died full of the tendereſt R
'gards for her. When he was led to
'Place of Execution, and ſaw the Wh
'and Stake, that were prepared for
'Death, he fell into Convulſions of Te
'ror, and threw himſelf into the Arms
'the Miniſter, who embraced him, a
'covered him with his Cloak, and w
'over him. A *Swediſh* Officer then re
'aloud a Paper, containing the followi
'Words.

This is to declare that the expreſs Order of his Majeſty, our moſt merciful Lord, is, that this Man, who is a Traitor to his Country, be broke upon the Wheel, and quartered, for the Reparation of his Crimes, and for an Example to others; that every one may take Care of Treaſon, and faithfully ſerve his King. At the Words, *moſt merciful Lord*, Patk cry'd out, *what Mercy!* and at thoſe *Traitor to his Country*, alaſs! ſaid he, have ſerved it too well. He received ſi teen Blows, and endured the longeſt a moſt dreadful Tortures that can be im gined. Thus died the unhappy *Jo*

Rev

Renold Patkul, Ambaſſador and General of the Czar of *Muſcovy*. 1707

'Thoſe who looked upon him only as 'a Subject who had rebelled againſt his 'King, thought that he had deſerved his 'Death; but thoſe who conſidered him as 'a *Livonian*, born in a Province which had 'Privileges to defend, and who recollected 'that he was driven from *Livonia* only for 'having ſupported thoſe Privileges, called 'him a Martyr to the Liberty of his Coun-'try. But all agreed that the Title of 'Ambaſſador to the Czar ought to have 'rendered his Perſon ſacred. Only the King 'of *Sweden*, brought up in the Principles of 'Arbitrary Power, judged that he had 'done no more than an Act of Juſtice, 'whilſt all *Europe* condemned his Cruelty.

'His Members were quarter'd, and re-'mained expoſed upon Gibbets till the Year '1713, when *Auguſtus* having regained his 'Throne, ordered theſe Teſtimonies of the 'Neceſſity he was reduced to, at *Alt-Ran-'ſtadt*, to be collected together; they were 'brought to him in a Box to *Warſaw*, in 'Preſence of the *French* Ambaſſador. The 'King of *Poland*, ſhewing the Box to that 'Miniſter, ſaid ſimply to him, *ſee the Mem-'bers of Patkul*, without any Addition of 'Blame or Complaint, or without any of the 'Perſons preſent venturing to ſpeak upon ſo 'tender and ſorrowful a Subject.

This hard Treatment of *Patkul*, M. *de la Motraye* endeavours to palliate: 'The Re-'monſtrances, ſaith he, made by Count

'*Patkul*

1707 'Patkul to Charles XI. in the Name of the 'Livonian Nobility, ſtript of their Privile- 'ges and their Eſtates, which Guſtavus Adol- 'phus had granted to their Forefathers as 'a Reward for their Services in his Wars, 'might appear juſt in a free State, as Eng- 'land is; but were judged to tax an abſolute 'Prince, as Charles XI. was, with double 'Injuſtice; for his Swediſh Subjects had be- 'fore undergone the ſame Treatment. The 'Reaſon why Patkul's Sentence was con- 'firmed, was becauſe Charles XII. had In- 'formation that he had laid the Plan of a 'tripple Alliance between the Kings of Den- 'mark, Poland, and the Czar, to bring 'them at once upon the Swediſh Dominions, 'and that the ſaid Patkul had not ceaſed to 'blow up the Coals of that War, which coſt 'ſo much Blood. If he was innocent, he 'ought, it is ſaid, to have retired into ſome 'neutral Country, or ſome Kingdom in Al- 'liance with Sweden, as ſoon as he ſaw that 'War begun, inſtead of remaining in the 'Czar's Service. What other Name, they 'aſk, can be given to Patkul's Proceeding 'than that of High-Treaſon? and Since 'the Laws of Sweden puniſh this Crime with 'the Rack, what Barbarity can Charles XII. 'be reproached with?

When his Czariſh Majeſty heard of the unaccountable Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt*, and of *Patkul*, his Ambaſſador and General's, being impriſon'd, it is eaſy to imagine what Thoughts he muſt entertain of ſuch Conduct. This Treachery of his Allie thwarted all his Deſigns, and obliged him

to

retire to the Frontiers of his own Domini- 1707
ns, that he might ſecure his Conqueſts in
gria and *Livonia*. *Narva* was ſtrongly
ortify'd, and his People worked inceſſantly
t *Peterſburgh*, but above all he endeavoured
o bring as many Veſſels as poſſible into the
Gulph of *Finland*.

The *Swediſh* Admiral made a new At-
empt, with little Damage, on the Fortreſs
f *Peterſburgh*; and his Czariſh Majeſty, imi-
ating the Policy of the great *Hannibal*, to
raw the *Swedes* out of his Country, carried
he War Home into their own Territories;
with this View, in the Depth of Winter he *Wybourg*
aid Siege to *Wybourg*, the Capital of *Carelia*; beſieged.
n which Service he employed eighteen thou-
and Foot, and ſix thouſand Horſe. The
Siege laſted three Weeks, during which he
threw fifteen hundred Bombs into the Town;
but Major General *Meydel* had the Precau-
tion to bring Troops and Proviſions into the
Place before it was block'd up; beſides
which the beſieged had the Sea opened to
them, and the Major General fearing nothing
but that they might yield to the Vigour
of the Aſſault, added to the Body of Troops
he already commanded, a great Number of
the Militia got together from all Parts of
the Country about, with which he advanced
to ſuccour the Beſieged. All theſe Difficul-
ties joined to the Seaſon of the Year, ren-
dered the Enterprize of the *Ruſſians* im-
practicable, for which Reaſon they retired
into their Winter Quarters, and his Czariſh
Majeſty called about him the moſt expe-
rienced of his Generals, to conſult with them
how

1707 how to prevent the ill Conſequences that might be expected from what had paſſed in *Saxony*, and while his Army was recruiting, and freſh Stores ſupplying his Magazines, he took much Pains, by his Emiſſaries, to ſecure the Intereſt of thoſe *Polanders*, who had as much Reaſon as himſelf, to complain of King *Auguſtus*'s having abandon'd, and ſacrificed them to their Enemies.

It was at one Time propoſed in the Czar's Council, to retaliate the King of *Sweden*'s Uſage of *Patkul* by treating the *Swediſh* Officers, who were Priſoners at *Moſcow*, in the ſame Manner: But his Majeſty could not conſent to ſuch Barbarity; which indeed might have had very bad Conſequences, ſince there were more *Muſcovites* Priſoners in *Sweden* than there were *Swedes* in *Muſcovy*. He reſolved therefore on a ſafer and more honourable Revenge. And, having gained the Principal of the *Poles* over to his Intereſt, he was requeſted by them to take the Republick into his Protection, which he very readily agreed to, on his Part, and they, on their Side, agreed to call an Aſſembly at *Leopold*, that they might take Meaſures for their common Intereſt.

The Aſſembly at *Leopold*.

The Czar being at *Zolkiew*, the Quarters of Prince *Menzikoff*, ſeveral of the *Poliſh* Grandees came to him there to pay their Court, before they met in the Aſſembly of *Leopold*; his Behaviour to them was ſo obliging, and he heaped ſuch Favours on them, as entirely gained him the Affection of all who approached him. The Grand Council met in the Month of *February*, the

he chief Grandees at this Meeting were: The Primate of the Kingdom, the Biſhop of *Cujavia*, the Palatines of *Lublin*, *Mazovia*, *Podolia* and *Belz*, the Caſtellans of *Lublin*, *Leopold*, *Caminieck*, *Bietz*, and *Chelm*, the Vice-Chancellor of the Crown, the Great Sword-Bearer, the Referendary, the Mareſchal of the Court of *Lithuania*, the Grand General of the Crown, Prince *Wieſnowiſky*, the under General, and ſeveral other Biſhops and Senators. Count *Denhoff*, Sword-Bearer of the Crown, ſpoke firſt in the Aſſembly, as Mareſchal of the Confederacy of *Sendomir*, and made a pathetick Speech on the unfortunate State of the Kingdom, earneſtly exhorting the Members of it to Unanimity at that Juncture, when the Honour of their native Country was ſo much at Stake. It was reſolved in this Aſſembly to renew the Confederation of *Sendomir*, and the Grand Queſtion was, *whether they had any King or not?* which paſſing in the Negative, they talked of declaring the *Throne vacant*, and agreed to ſummon a Diet to meet at *Lublin* in *May* following. The Aſſembly, at the ſame Time, inſiſted upon writing to all foreign Potentates to deſire them to forbear acknowledging any Perſon for King of *Poland*, till the Republick had notify'd to them what Prince they had elected. The General of the Crown read in the Aſſembly a Letter from the Czar, wherein he tells them: 'That ſince the King of *Sweden*, by Force and Cunning, had obtained his Ends in dethroning King *Auguſtus*, there was no Reaſon to doubt but he would make Uſe of the ſame

1707

'Means

1707

'Means to deceive the Republick; and that
'to this Intent, his Miniſters had cauſed a Re-
'port to be ſpread in foreign Courts, that a
'Peace was negociating between his Czariſh
'Majeſty and him. His Czariſh Majeſty
'did not deny, that being at *Stroliza* he ex-
'preſſed to ſome foreign Miniſters the Incli-
'nation he had to Peace, and that as a
'Chriſtian, he thought himſelf obliged to
'liſten to any Overtures of Peace from the
'King of *Sweden*, to avoid the Effuſion of
'Chriſtian Blood; but that he would never
'enter into any Treaty but publickly in Con-
'cert with the Republick, and by Miniſters
'nominated by each of them. Much leſs
'would he ever give Ear to any private
'Negotiation through the Canal or Mediati-
'on of foreign Powers. Such a Thought
'could never enter into his Mind, ſince he
'was of Opinion, that the Faith and Ho-
'nour of a Monarch, depended on his re-
'ligious Obſervation of Treaties, which
'ought to have greater Weight with him
'than his own particular Intereſts.

The Aſſembly, upon reading this Letter, came to a Reſolution of returning Thanks to his Czariſh Majeſty, for his favourable Diſpoſitions towards the Republick, and to concert Meaſures together to enable them to act properly in the preſent Situation of their Affairs. During theſe Tranſactions the Czar arrived at *Leopold*, with the *Czarewitz*, his Son, then ſeventeen Years of Age, Prince *Menzikoff* and ſome of his Miniſters. His Majeſty was received publickly, with much Ceremony, and great Marks of Reſpect and Confidence

Czar comes to *Leopold*.

Confidence. He aſſiſted at their Debates, and forgot nothing that might induce the Senators to confirm the Royal Confederacy of *Sendomir*, ſo that what was done by them at this Meeting may be look'd upon only as a Concluſion of that Confederacy. 1707

His Majeſty, very well ſatisfied with the Aſſurances he had received of their inviolable Attachment to his Intereſts, return'd to *Zolkiew* with the *Czarewitz* and Prince *Menzikoff*: And as a Report had been ſpread, that His Majeſty had a Deſign to propoſe his Son, in the Diet of *Lublin*, for King of *Poland*, to prevent any Suſpicions of that Kind, he ſent the *Czarewitz* to *Moſcow*, and to ſhew his Readineſs to execute the Treaty he had concluded with the Republick, he immediately ordered eight hundred thouſand Florins to be paid to the *Poliſh* Troops, viz. five hundred thouſand to the Army of the Crown, and the Reſt to that of *Lituania*.

From the Place where the Czar now was, he wrote to ſeveral Potentates complaining of the Cowardiſe and Treachery, as he call'd it, of King *Auguſtus*, and of the Violation of the Laws of Nations by the King of *Sweden*: The following is a Copy of the Letter ſent to Queen *Anne*.

We ſend our friendly and brotherly Greeting to your Royal Majeſty, the moſt Serene and moſt Potent Lady, by the Grace of God, Queen of Great Britain.

Moſt Honourable and beloved Siſter:

'ALthough it is not unknown to your 'Royal Majeſty, yet we have judged 'it neceſſary, as Affairs now ſtand, in a 'friendly and brotherly Manner, to acquaint 'you, by this Letter, and as briefly as poſ-'ſible with the Services we have done King '*Auguſtus*, from his firſt Election to the 'Crown of the Kingdom of *Poland*; having 'by our powerful Endeavours, for the com-'mon Benefit of that Crown, hindered the 'Prince of *Conti*, who had been choſen be-'fore by Part of the Republick, from 'taking Poſſeſſion of it, and even ſent a nu-'merous Army againſt that Prince's Party, 'for the Uſe and Service of thoſe Senators 'who ſided with King *Auguſtus*, before any 'League had been concluded with him, 'on his Entrance into *Poland*. This Army 'was immediately, upon his Arrival, put 'under his Command, that he might be 'able to puniſh his Enemies; beſides which, 'we threatened the contrary Party with 'Fire and Sword, upon Apprehenſion where-'of

f, many were forced to acknowledge 1707
im; and ſo by our Aſſiſtance he was firmly
ettled upon the Throne. Afterwards by his
articular Entreaties, and a Meſſage by Ge-
eral *Carlowitz* in the Year 1700, we con-
luded with him an Alliance againſt the
Crown of *Sweden*, in which there were no
Subſidies of Money promiſed him. More-
over many Affronts and Injuries having
been done us, at the Beginning of the
War, by the Crown of *Sweden*, we were
prevailed with by the earneſt Solicitations
of his Miniſter, General *Langa*, in an im-
proper Seaſon, it being the latter End of
Autumn, for his Relief, and to make the
Enemy turn their Arms againſt us, to be-
gin the Attack of *Narva*: And then his
Forces, contrary to his Promiſe, leaving
ours in Action, went into Quarters in *Po-
land* and *Courland*, on which Occaſion our
Forces ſuffered no ſmall Loſs. Notwith-
ſtanding which, a League being renewed
with him at *Birſa* in 1701, not a ſmall Sum
of Money was lent him; beſides which we
aſſiſted him with twenty thouſand Foot.
Nevertheleſs this ſignified nothing, nor
were our Armies made uſe of according to
the Treaty; but by the Intrigues of the
French Ambaſſador, *Du Giron*, (to whom,
contrary to our Agreement, and perſonal
Proteſtation, confirmed by us, full Power
was, at that time, given to treat about a
ſeparate Peace) thoſe our Forces, without
Neceſſity, were greatly fatigued; the Ene-
my permitted to paſs the *Dwina*; and our
Armies diſmiſſed without being ſupplied

1707 ‘ with Proviſions during their March, ſo
‘ which the ſaid King received Money fro
‘ us; which cauſed great Numbers of the
‘ to periſh, and others to deſert. Notwith
‘ ſtanding all this, upon his repeated Aſſu
‘ rances and Meſſages, we renewed a Leag
‘ with him in the Year 1703, and promiſed hi
‘ three hundred thouſand *Roubles* for the U
‘ of his Forces, and twelve thouſand Foot t
‘ be maintained at our own Charge, whic
‘ we faithfully performed. And althoug
‘ the Subſidies and Auxiliaries were not the
‘ ſpecified in that Treaty, nor whether th
‘ ſame ſhould be given yearly, yet we ſe
‘ him every Year no leſs than the above
‘ mentioned Sum, not reckoning other im
‘ menſe Charges we were at, for preſervin
‘ the Republick in his Intereſt. But inſtea
‘ of employing the Forces againſt the Enemy
‘ he made them march to and fro in *Poland*
‘ whereby they were very much fatigued, an
‘ afterwards parting from them, withou
‘ any Occaſion, he permitted them to b
‘ driven into *Saxony* together with his *Saxons*
‘ whereby, without any Neceſſity, half o
‘ them were unaccountably loſt, and th
‘ Reſt were forced to die with Hunger
‘ And although free Winter Quarters were
‘ promiſed them, in the Treaty, yet, on th
‘ contrary, it was forbidden to ſupply them
‘ with Bread in their Quarters; upon which
‘ our Miniſter Extraordinary, *Van Patkul*, the
‘ reſiding at his Court, and Chief General o
‘ thoſe Forces, in Order to preſerve them
‘ from utter and certain Ruin, agreed with
‘ the Emperor's Miniſters, to put them into
‘ his

'his Imperial Majeſty's Service, for which, 1707
'by the Suggeſtion of the ſaid King's wick-
'ed and treacherous *Saxon* Miniſters, he was
'put under an Arreſt, contrary to the Law
'of Nations, and, without our Conſent, was
'caſt, like a Traytor, into a loathſome
'Priſon. Although we were obliged, for
'the Intereſt of the ſaid King *Auguſtus*, as
'well before the Affront offered to our Mi-
'niſter, as after the going off of the ſaid
'King out of *Poland*, in Order to preſerve
'him upon his Throne, and defend the Re-
'publick of *Poland* againſt the *Swediſh*
'Forces, to leave all our Armies to act for
'his Intereſt, and at the Deſire of the Re-
'publick, by their extraordinary Embaſſy,
'to march with all our Forces into *Poland*,
'where they were obliged to be maintained
'to this Day, to our great Charge, in our
'own pay: Yet, notwithſtanding all this,
'his Generals at their going out of *Saxony*
'with our and their Troops, ſuffered them-
'ſelves, not without Suſpicion of Treachery,
'to be beaten without any Reſiſtance, and
'our poor Forces were ſo deſerted, that
'only one thouſand ſix hundred of them
'remained, and theſe, with much ado, ſaved
'themſelves and returned into *Saxony*. Al-
'though King *Auguſtus*, upon our repeated
'Inſtances, and Solicitations, promiſed both
'before and after his infamous Peace, by
'his Meſſages, and Proteſtations made to
'us by his General *Goltz*, either to deliver
'up to us, or ſecretly to ſet at Liberty, our
'ſaid Miniſter and General, *Van Patkul*,
'yet nothing was performed: Notwithſtand-

1707 ‘ing which, without regarding the intolerable Falſhoods of the ſaid King *Auguſtus*, his Non-performances of the Treaty made with us, his impriſoning our Miniſter and violating the Laws of Nations; nor his many ſecret Meſſages to the Enemy (contrary to our Intereſt, and tending to a ſeparate Peace) as well by the Sieur *Oſtptima*, as by the Counteſs of *Koningſmar*, and afterwards in Writing by their Secretaries *Imoff* and *Pfingſten*, from the Beginning of the War, and after their Entrance into *Saxony*, of which Tranſaction, we had Notice given us by ſeveral of our faithful Friends; and notwithſtanding we had thoſe Treaties in our Hands, yet we did not leave to aſſiſt him both with our Forces and Money; and in the laſt Campaign, though the Seaſon of the Year was ſo far advanced, it being the latter End of Autumn, yet being deſirous to draw the Enemy back, and harraſs his Army, we ſent our Cavalry under the Command of our General Prince *Menzikoff*, to join him, and his *Saxon* and *Poliſh* Forces; who marching towards *Kaliſh*, met with the *Swediſh* General *Mardevell*, and the *Poles*, of the contrary Party, under the Command of the *Waivode* of *Kiow*; and, by the Aſſiſtance of the Moſt High, entirely defeated them, and took their chief General, and many other inferior Officers and Soldiers Priſoners of War, whereby all *Poland* was brought under his Obedience. After this, being fully ſupply'd with all Neceſſaries, we deſigned, by the

‘ Help

Help of the Moſt High, to act ſtill in his Defence, which was begun with the Action at *Wybourg* in *Finland*, and did expect many good Conſequences from that Defeat, and rely'd on a ſtrict Obſervance of the Treaty, purſuant to the Aſſurances we had received from him in two Letters, written ſince the Battle, the firſt dated the thirty firſt of *October*, and the ſecond the twentieth of *November*; but ſaw, at firſt, that he began to take away from our ſaid General, Prince *Menzikoff*, the General Officers, and other Priſoners, we had taken; giving his Royal Word, and many Aſſurances, that he would either exchange them for our Generals, and other Officers detained in *Sweden*; (for the Performances whereof, General *Mardeveldt*, with the Reſt of the Officers, gave alſo their Parole, and confirmed the ſame to our General) or if it were not poſſible to effect this Exchange, that he would reſtore the ſaid Priſoners into our Hands: But, contrary to all his Promiſes, he let them go without any Exchange. After this, we underſtood, to our great Aſtoniſhment, that he had already concluded a diſhonourable Peace with the King of *Sweden* and *Leczinſky*, yielding up all his Rights to the Crown of *Poland*, and ſurrendering all to the Pleaſure of his Enemies, without giving us any previous Notice that we might have provided for our own Security, in Return of the innumerable Favours done him by us. But what ſhews his Ingratitude in the higheſt Degree is, That that Peace was confirmed by 1707

1707 ‘ him many Days before the Battle; after
‘ which, by his Letters, he gave us earneſt
‘ Aſſurances of his firm Adherence to the
‘ Treaty. The Inconſtancy of his Promi-
‘ ſes, Non-performance of the League, and
‘ Forgetfulneſs of our many Favours and Aſ-
‘ ſiſtance, we leave it to the righteous Judg-
‘ ment and Vengeance of Almighty God,
‘ upon whoſe powerful Aſſiſtance in our Juſt
‘ Cauſe, we firmly rely: Proteſting againſt
‘ the ſaid King *Auguſtus* and his Subjects,
‘ and leave alſo to all the World, to judge
‘ impartially of our faithful Performance of
‘ the League to the very laſt. Moreover,
‘ we are extreamly ſurprized at three Arti-
‘ cles in the aforeſaid League, *viz.* the
‘ eleventh, twelfth and twentieth, in which
‘ he, the ſaid late King *Auguſtus*, promiſes
‘ to deliver up our publick Miniſter and
‘ Plenipotentiary, reſiding at his Court, in-
‘ to the Hands of our Enemies, in an un-
‘ heard of Manner, and to his utter Ruin,
‘ upon Pretence of his being a *Swediſh* De-
‘ ſerter. Secondly, in the twelfth Article he
‘ maliciouſly obliges himſelf to deliver up
‘ to the Enemy, as Priſoners of War, the
‘ Remains of twelve Regiments, *viz.* one
‘ thouſand ſix hundred auxiliary Troops,
‘ who, for his Preſervation, have often ex-
‘ poſed their Lives, and were then ſent by
‘ him as Auxiliaries into the Empire, which
‘ is not only contrary to divine and human
‘ Laws, but even to the Cuſtoms and Laws
‘ of Barbarians. Thirdly, in the twentieth
‘ Article he ſtipulates for himſelf, in Caſe
‘ of Peace between us and the Enemy, full
‘ Satis-

Satisfaction: And afterwards he the ſaid *Auguſtus*, in that Treaty obliges himſelf to procure your Royal Majeſty's Guaranty. Therefore we, in a brotherly and friendly Manner, deſire your Royal Majeſty, That, through your innate and wonted Goodneſs, you would be pleaſed not to conſent thereunto, nor countenance his diſhonourable Actions. It would have been neceſſary we ſhould, before this Time, have exhibited this our Proteſtation, both to your Royal Majeſty, and other Potentates, in Writing, which we already would have performed by our Miniſters, had we not been deluded, as we have made it appear, by the freſh Aſſurances he ſent us by Major General *Goltz*, who, among many other falſe Aſſurances of Friendſhip, engaged for the Performace of the League; and ſolemnly aſſured us, that our Miniſter ſhould never be delivered up; and that, in Caſe it ſhould come to the laſt Extremity, King *Auguſtus* would either ſet him privately at Liberty, or detain him in *Konigſtin*, till the Departure of the *Swedes*, and afterwards deliver him ſafe into our Hands: But we have ſince, with Wonder and bitter Grief, underſtood, That that Prince, forgetting his Honour, has delivered up our innocent publick Miniſter, contrary to the Laws of Nations, and even Cuſtoms of Barbarians, and, without the Fear of God, into the Hands of his Enemy: For which Reaſon we have the rather thought fit to acquaint your Majeſty with all the Premiſes, and in a friendly and brotherly Manner, to 1707

1707 ‘ deſire that you would be pleaſed, by your
‘ good Offices, to procure the Liberty of
‘ our ſaid Miniſter, *Van Patkul*; or at leaſt,
‘ that he may be uſed by the King of *Swe-*
‘ *den* as our Miniſter, and not as his Sub-
‘ ject, which we are confident his *Swediſh*
‘ Majeſty will grant at your Royal Majeſty's
‘ Deſire, whereby he will gain with all the
‘ World, the Name of a magnanimous Mo-
‘ narch, inſtead of giving an Example of ſo
‘ wicked and barbarous an Action. But if,
‘ on the contray, *Van Patkul* be hardly
‘ dealt with, and not uſed as our Miniſter,
‘ we ſhall be forced to ſeek Opportunities
‘ to return the like Uſage, truſting that in
‘ our juſt Cauſe, we ſhall receive all Aſ-
‘ ſiſtance from the Moſt High. We hope
‘ likewiſe by your Majeſty's good Offices to
‘ obtain from the King of *Sweden* the Li-
‘ berty of our General Officers and others
‘ our Subjects detained at *Stockholm*, and now
‘ under Arreſt, *viz.* the ſame Number and
‘ of the ſame Rank as were thoſe that were
‘ permitted to go upon their Parole from
‘ our General Prince *Menzikoff*, namely his
‘ General, *Mardeveldt*, and other Officers
‘ and Soldiers by Order of King *Auguſtus*,
‘ and on the Parole of the Reſt of *Swediſh*
‘ Officers. The ſaid *Auguſtus* having thus
‘ evidently, before all the World violated
‘ his Vows, and the Laws of Nations, by
‘ his unheard-of diſhonourable Proceedings
‘ contrary to the Dictates of Conſcience, as
‘ appears by thoſe Treaties, we ſhall be
‘ obliged to do our ſelves Juſtice, and ſeek
‘ for entire Satisfaction of him, as Elector
‘

1707

'of *Saxony*, and a Member of the *Roman* 'Empire, which our fair Proceedings and 'Stedfaſtneſs to the League, entitle us to; 'the rather becauſe by the twentieth Article, 'contrary to his own Conſcience, he pro-'poſes to ſeek for full Satisfaction from us. 'The remaining Part of our Auxiliary Troops 'now upon the *Rhine*, we put under your 'Royal Majeſty's Protection, and deſire 'that they may either enter into your Ma-'jeſty's Service, or that of your Allies. Hop-'ing you will favour us with your Concur-'rence and Aſſiſtance in theſe our juſt De-'ſires, we, the Imperial Czariſh Majeſty, 'pray God to grant your Royal Majeſty 'many Years Health and a happy Reign 'over your Majeſty's Dominions.

Your Majeſty's

Affectionate, loving Brother,

PETER.

Given at Zolkiew, April 27, 1707, *and in the twenty fifth Year of our Reign.*

The

1707 The Czar wrote in much the ſame Terms to the States-General of the united Provinces to diſſuade them, if poſſible, from agreeing to the Guaranty of King *Auguſtus*'s Treaty with *Charles* XII. But neither the Force of his Remonſtrances, nor the Intereſts thoſe States had in their Commerce with the Court of *Ruſſia*, could make them forſake the common Cauſe of the Allies, which required that the King of *Sweden* ſhould be prevailed on at any Rate to leave *Germany*.

By the foregoing Letter, and what has been related, it may be ſeen how much Reaſon the Czar had to complain of *Auguſtus* and the infamous Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt*, which was very far from mending the Condition of that Prince's Affairs, as he himſelf complains in a Letter wrote ſometime after to the States of *Holland*, wherein he ſays, *that the Peace which he had made, was ſo far from putting his Affairs in a better State, that he was reduced to the moſt deplorable Situation in the World.*

The Aſſembly at *Lublin*. In *May*, the Aſſembly met at *Lublin*, and again by Adjournment in *June*; when, after many Debates, the Throne of *Poland* was declared vacant, and a Diet called, upon that, for a third Election. The Czar wrote a Letter to the Council to exhort them to Unanimity and Diſpatch. He urged very much the Neceſſity of chooſing a new King, as the only Method to reconcile the divided Members of the Republick, and let all the World ſee, that they looked upon *Staniſlaus* as Palatine of *Poſnania*, and not as their King. He aſſured them again, that he would never

ver hearken to any Peace, but in Con- 1707
ction with them; and that he had reſolved
give Battle to the *Swedes*, having diſpo-
d every thing for it. He likewiſe told them
at they ought not to neglect that Oppor-
nity, and aſſured them, that he would be
far from following the Meaſures of the
vedes, that he would preſcribe nothing to
em, and would not concern himſelf directly
indirectly in their State Affairs, and had
rbid his Troops to come within twenty
eagues of *Lublin*; and that he himſelf
ould not approach nearer, that his Enemies
ight not give out, that his Power had
fluenced their Election.

His Czariſh Majeſty wrote, at the ſame
ime, another Letter to the Primate and
hief Miniſters of the Crown, wherein he adds
o the Reaſons alledged in his Letter to the
Council, that he cannot take any ſolid Mea-
ures with the Republick, unleſs they chooſe
new King; and that if they will not do it,
e muſt needs ſuſpect, that they do not act
ncerely with him.

After much canvaſſing, the *Interregnum*
as publiſhed, by the Senators, in *July* fol-
owing, and the Primate took upon him
he Regency of the Republick: But in the
nean Time King *Staniſlaus* had got him-
elf acknowledged by moſt of the Princes
nd States of *Europe*; and leaving *Charles*
XII. in *Saxony*, came into *Poland* with Ge-
neral *Renchild*, at the Head of ſixteen *Swediſh*
Regiments, and was owned as their Sove-
reign through every Place that he paſſed.

Staniſlaus comes into *Poland.*

The

1707 The King of *Sweden* having now largely enriched his military Cheſt, with the Spoils of *Saxony*, and augmented his Army to the Number of fifty thouſand, beſides the Body of Troops under General *Lewenhaupt*'s Command, and another under that of Major-General *Craſſau*, ſought all ways to bring the Czar to an Engagement; but *Peter*, ſeeing how largely he had increaſed his Forces, although he had before determined to give him Battle, thought it would be dangerous to run that hazard in a Country without a Head, and divided by many Factions in itſelf. He had Moreover juſt then been informed of Propoſitions made to the King of *Sweden* and *Staniſlaus*, by the Miniſter of the *Porte*, who was ſent by the Sultan to felicitate thoſe Princes, and with an Offer to join with them in an offenſive Alliance againſt *Ruſſia*, that they might force his Czariſh Majeſty to interfere no longer in the Affairs of *Poland*. The Divan ſaw with Regret *Azoph* in the Hands of the Czar, and wanted only a Pretext to break with him, that they might endeavour to recover that important Place. Beſides this the King of *Sweden* openly declared, that he intended to make *Ruſſia* the Theatre of the War, and did not doubt but he ſhould find many Revolters among a People made uneaſy by ſeeing Alterations made every Day in the Cuſtoms and Manners of their Forefathers; and who were continually burthened with freſh Taxes to ſupport the Expence of a War from which they could foreſee no Advantages.

The

The Czar, upon this Intelligence, thought would be moſt adviſeable for him to ithdraw inſenſibly with his Army to *Li-uania*, on the Frontiers of *Ruſſia*, where appointed the Rendezvous of the ſeveral arts of his Army: And by this Retreat *aniſlaus* was left in peaceable Poſſeſſion of moſt all *Poland*. From thence his Czariſh ajeſty went to *Moſcow*, where his Preſence as abſolutely neceſſary, as well to give rders for the Repairs to be made, on Ac-unt of a great Fire that had deſtroyed at aſt fifteen hundred Houſes, as to check e Spirit of Faction that appeared there, by niſhing in an exemplary Manner, thoſe o were concerned in the late Tumult at *ſtracan*, and whom he had ordered to be ought thither for that Purpoſe. He af-wards gave Orders to augment his Troops the Borders of the Black-Sea, and on the ontiers of *Tartary*, that he might deſtroy Hopes of Succeſs from the Deſigns of the *rks* in threatning to declare War againſt n. 1707

The Czar goes to *Moſcow*.

The Czar had not been at *Moſcow* for two ars before, and was therefore received h all poſſible Demonſtrations of Joy and ſpect. He held ſeveral Councils, in which gave many neceſſary Orders relating to airs in different Provinces, and had the isfaction to ſee the laſt Hand put to the yal Diſpenſary, which was a ſuperb Build-, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of City of *Moſcow*. It is ſituated on the t of the Caſtle: The Paſſage to it is ough a lage baſe Court, at the End of which

The Royal Diſpenſary.

1707 which is a great Stair-Caſe, that conducts
the firſt Apartment, which is vaulted, a
very lofty, it is fifteen feet in Depth, a
twenty in Breadth, curiouſly painted, a
decorated with a great Number of Sym
Pots and others, made of *China*, with
Czariſh Majeſty's Arms enamelled upon the
There are two Doors out of this Apartme
one of which leads to the Magazine of me
cinal Herbs, the other to the Office of A
counts belonging to the Houſe. There
alſo very beautiful Halls finely vaulted, p
ticularly two, which entirely correſpond
Structure, one of which ſerves for a Labo
tory, and the other for a Library, where
extraordinary Plants and Animals are lik
wiſe preſerved. There are ſeveral oth
Apartments, particularly that of the Pre
dent or Doctor, another which belongs
the chief Apothecary and his Domeſtick
The Doctor has the Direction of the A
counts, and has ſeveral Officers under hi
All the Phyſicians, Surgeons and Druggi
receive their Sallaries in his Office. Th
are eight Apothecaries employed, and fi
Boys under them with above forty Wo
men: And from hence the Drugs and M
dicines are furniſhed for the Army and Fl
Doctor *Areſkine*, a *Scotchman*, chief Phyſici
to the *Czar*, was the firſt Director of t
Houſe, with a yearly Penſion of one thouſa
five hundred Ducats.

His Czariſh Majeſty likewiſe ſaw, w
Pleaſure, the Hoſpital for ſick Perſons fini
ed. This Structure, built of Wood, is on
Banks of the River *Jonſa* in the *Ger*
Slabo

laboda. It is divided into two Parts, in 1707
ach of which are ſeven Beds on one Side,
nd ten on the other; each Bed being for
wo Perſons, and there are nine in the middle
Range for ſingle Perſons. There are three
toves in each of theſe Diviſions, and the
Chamber appropriated to Anatomy is between
hem. The ſecond Story contains ſeveral
ttle Apartments, where the Phyſicians,
pothecary, and Surgeon of the Hoſpital
odge. The Diſpenſary conſiſts of three
Chambers, two for the Medicines, and the
hird for the Herbs of which they are com-
oſed.

On the Side of this Hoſpital is a Manu-
ctory of Cloth, which was at firſt put
nder the Direction of a Draper, who was
nt for, by his Majeſty from *Holland*; and
n the other Side the River *Moſcua* was a
laſs-Houſe, for making large Looking-
laſſes. Thus did his Majeſty provide for
e Honour and Welfare of his Subjects at
Home, even while he was deeply engaged
Wars and Negotiations Abroad.

His Czariſh Majeſty had but juſt cele- 1708
rated the firſt Day of the new Year, when
veral Couriers one after another came to
m from Prince *Menzikoff*, with Advice that
e King of *Sweden*, taking Advantage of
e Ice which made all the Rivers paſſable
him, was in Motion to re-enter *Lithua-*
a. The *Ruſſian* Army till then was en-
mped in ſuch a Manner, that the Body
Troops under the Command of General
ewenhaupt, on the Side of *Livonia*, were
ut up ſo as not to be able to advance or
retreat;

1708

retreat; theſe alſo were in Motion to join the King. The Czar, whoſe Scheme was always to keep the Enemy as far out of his own Dominions as poſſible, made haſte to *Grodno* to diſpute the Paſſage of the *Niemen* with the *Swedes*, ſince they could not be hindred from paſſing the *Viſtula*, from whence *Charles* XII. with his Army marched with much Speed towards *Lithuania* in Spite of all the Obſtacles he met in his Way; for he not only found the Country ruined by the *Ruſſians*, who had taken care to burn all they could not carry away with them; but he was even obliged to defend himſelf againſt the Peaſants of the Country, who ſheltering themſelves in the Woods on all Sides, fired inceſſantly on all who came near them. And ſuch was the Danger that Prince was expoſed to, that two of his Guards, in paſſing by one of theſe Woods, had their Horſes ſhot under them, within four Paces of the King himſelf. The Czar was in *Grodno* when the King of *Sweden*, with about five hundred Men, approach'd the Town. The *Muſcovites*, taking this handful of Men to be the Vanguard of the *Swediſh* Army, marched out at the North-Gate, while *Charles* XII. entered at the South; but the Czar learning the ſame Day by a *Poliſh* Deſerter, to what a ſmall Number of Men he had quitted the Town, and that the Body of the *Swediſh* Troops were yet at five Leagues Diſtance, he loſt no Time, but ſent a Detachment of two thouſand Men, to ſurprize the King that Evening in the Town: Theſe two thouſand Men, by the Favour of the Night advanc

The Czar goes to *Grodno*.

Quits that Town to the King of *Sweden*.

vanced as far as the firſt *Swediſh* Guard 1708
fore they were ſeen; the Guard, conſiſting
ly of thirty Men, ſuſtained the Effort of
eſe two thouſand, till the Cuiraſſiers, and
oſe in the Town who had ſubmitted to
aniſlaus, were put in a Poſture to receive
em; and being animated by the King of
weden, they forced the *Ruſſian* Detachment
retire, and loſe one of the moſt favourable
pportunities they had ever before had of
aking their own Conditions with the
nemy.

The Czar gave Orders to the ſeveral Bodies
his Troops to rendezvous in the Palati-
te of *Minſki*, and ſeeing his Enemy in full
arch, and reſolving to purſue him, he
ought it proper to change his Scheme, and
aw him into a Place where in all Likely-
od he would want every thing; where he
ould have neither Magazines nor Retreat,
d where he might wait for him behind good
ines, to attack him with Advantage, when
was fatigued with a long and painful
arch, over a deſolate Country. His Ma-
ſty therefore took his Rout to the *Boryſthe-*
s, with Deſign to intrench himſelf on the
anks of that River, between *Mohilow* and
rſa; and from whence he might have a
cure Retreat to *Smolenſko*.

The King of *Sweden*, informed of the Con-
ition of the *Ruſſian* Army and the Rout
ey had taken, undertook to intercept them
their March, by leaving the *Wilna* and
oing ſome Leagues higher: But the Ma-
agement of the Czar obliged him to change

1708 his Rout again, and confined him for ſome Time in the Palatinate of *Wilna*.

His Czariſh Majeſty ſent General *Baur* to lay the *Poliſh Livonia* waſte, from whence he went into *Swediſh Livonia*, where he ravaged and pillaged every Place, after which he formed a large Magazine at *Szebitz*, and poſted his Men along the *Duna*, of which he remained Maſter, notwithſtanding the Neighbourhood of *Leuwenhaupt*. General *Goltz* had Orders to go with fifteen thouſand Men to *Volhinia* to join twelve thouſand *Voloſques* and *Coſſacks*, that they might take the *Swedes* in the Flank in their Motions; he had likewiſe Orders to the Inhabitants of that Province to deſtroy the Country for thirty Miles round, as ſoon as the *Swedes* began to take that Rout, and to retreat beyond the *Boryſthenes*, where his Czariſh Majeſty would give them other Lands to cultivate and inhabit.

Theſe Meaſures were attended with good Succeſs, for the *Swedes* were obliged to canton their Army and encamp till the Month of *May*, for Want of Forage and other Neceſſaries, beſides which, altho' no Battle was fought, their Numbers were very much diminiſhed, by their fatiguing Marches in a bad Seaſon, and in a Country entirely ruined; the greateſt Part of their Horſe was loſt: And, in a Word, in the whole Army of the Enemy there was nothing in good Order but the military Cheſt, which was ſo kept at the great Expence of the *Lithuanians*; ſo that the Czar by his good Conduct obliged his Enemy a ſecond Time to change his Deſign. His Czariſh Majeſty paſs'd the

Boryſthenes

Boryſthenes with his Army, which was con- 1708
derably relieved and augmented in a Camp
where every thing abounded. A Body of
Troops encamped between *Witepſk* and *Kopis*
maintained the Communication with the De-
tachments ſpread from one Side the Country
to the other. His Majeſty had been for ſome
Time at *Poloczk*, from whence he reſolved
to go to *Peterſburgh* to haſten the Arma-
ment of his Fleet, which was deſigned to be
very conſiderable; but falling ill at the very
inſtant he was ſetting out, he was forced to
be tranſported to *Smolenſko*, leaving the Di-
rections of all the Operations to the Generals
Czeremetoff, *Menzikoff*, *Galliczin*, *Allard*,
Repnin, and *Pflug*, who were at *Mohilow*.

One may judge of the Condition to which
his Czariſh Majeſty had raiſed his Marine,
ſince he had been in Poſſeſſion of *Narva* and
Peterſburgh, by what happened on the Sea at
this Time. The *Swediſh* Fleet commanded
by Admiral *Wachtmeeſter* conſiſted of thirty
ſix Men of War, carrying from ſixty eight
to thirty two Guns apiece, beſides ſix Bomb-
Veſſels and five Fire-Ships, nevertheleſs they
durſt not venture upon an Action with that
of the Czar, which remained ſo much Mi-
ſtreſs of the *Baltick* Sea, the *Bothmick* Gulph,
and that of *Finland*, that ſhe made a Deſ-
cent in *Finland*; the Town of *Borgo* in
Nyland was taken, where all the old Men
were put to the Sword, the young ones were
carry'd away, and the Town burnt to the
Ground. *Biornoe* and ſome other Iſlands
had the ſame Fate, and a great Number of

The State of the Czar's Fleet.

1708 Barks laden with Proviſions for *Stockholm*, were taken and carry'd to *Peterſburgh*.

As ſoon as the Czar began to recover, he was obliged to go to *Moſcow* to appeaſe a new Sedition among the *Don Coſſacks*, raiſed by one of their Chiefs, named *Condraſchka Bolawin*, who at the Head of five thouſand Men had form'd a Deſign of ſurprizing *Azoph*, and to ſecure Succeſs had demanded a Supply from the *Porte* and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, but they, thinking the Enterprize ridiculous, would have no Hand in it. The Czar ſent twenty thouſand Men under the Command of Prince *Dolgoruki*, to force the Rebels to Submiſſion, but he was ſoon informed that ſome among the Rebels themſelves going about to take him, he had ſhot himſelf with a Piſtol, and that they had carry'd his Body to the Governor of *Azoph*, who had ordered his Head to be taken off, and his Quarters to be ſet up upon the four Gates of the City. This News ſaved the Czar a great Expence, and enabled him to employ his twenty thouſand Men, under the Command of Prince *Dolgoruki* elſewhere.

The Nation in General was diſcontented with the long War, every Body murmured, and in all Places there appeared a Willingneſs to revolt. So that his Czariſh Majeſty was obliged to maintain thoſe Troops in different Parts of the Country, which might otherwiſe have largely augmented his Army. After having put every Thing in Order, his Majeſty returned to *Smolenſko*, where he arriv'd juſt as an important Action had paſſed

between

tween a Body of his Troops, and the beſt part of the King of *Sweden*'s Army. 1708

Charles XII. hearing that the Hettman *Mazeppa* was on the March with five and enty thouſand Men to join the *Ruſſian* rmy; that the Great General *Siniauſki* was ſo in Motion, and that another Body of tween fifteen and twenty thouſand *Ruſſians* ere moving from another Part, he marched ith Expedition, reſolved to attack theſe dif- ent Bodies before they could join, or at aſt to get ſo between them, as to prevent eir having any Communication. On the enty fifth of *June* 1708 he found himſelf fore the River *Berezine*, over againſt *Bo- low*, where the *Ruſſians* under the Command General *Goltz*, to the Number of between elve and fifteen thouſand, were encamped diſpute that Paſſage with him; which how- er he ſucceeded in, by one of thoſe Feints ich were ſo uſual with him. He ſent Co- nel *Guillenkroon*, with two thouſand Men, be poſted on the Banks of the *Berezine* di- ctly againſt *Boriſlow*, as if he intended to empt paſſing the River in Sight of the emy; but led his Army, at the ſame me, about three Leagues up the River, d throwing a Bridge over it, made his ay through a Body of three thouſand Men o defended that Poſt, and marched directly wards the Enemy without ſtopping. The *uſcovites* did not wait for his coming up, decamped and retreated towards the *yſthenes*, laying all the Country waſte erever they came.

1708 The King of *Sweden*, ſurmounting all Difficulties, arrived in the Neighbourhood of *Holowzin*, a Town ſituated on the River *Wabitz*, which the *Muſcovites* abandoned, and having broke the Bridge after them, joined a Body of their Troops incamped on the other Side that River. They had a Wood in their Rear, and their Intrenchments were defended by ſeveral Pieces of Cannon. There was a large Ditch behind them, and the River was difficult to paſs, the Banks being not firm Ground on Account of their running through a Moraſs. The King of *Sweden* in Perſon viewed the Ground above and below *Holowzin*, and cauſed his Artillery to march, with great Privacy, in the Night, a Quarter of a League on the Right, where he had obſerved a Poſt, from whence they might fire into the *Ruſſian* Intrenchments on their left, and that there was a pretty large opening between their Right and Left. their Generals thinking that Place unpaſſable, becauſe of a Moraſs that extended to a very thick Wood, the *Muſcovites* had aſſembled in that Camp their main Army, and their Troops were ſo diſpoſed, that General *Rhenne* had under him on the Right ſix Regiments of Dragoons, with four of Foot, and General *Pflug*, with five Regiments of Horſe, and nine of Foot, was poſted behind him. The *Velt-Mareſchal* Lieutenant *Goltz* was poſted on the Left, which Wing the *Ruſſians* attack'd with ten Regiments of Dragoons and four thouſand *Calmucks*; General *Repnin* with nine Regiments of Foot was in the ſame Wing, and the Prince of *Heſſe-Darmſtadt*

Darmſtadt was poſted behind him with three Regiments of Dragoons; ſeveral other Regiments were likewiſe daily expected in their Camp, from whence Prince *Menzikoff* went away the Day before the Battle to haſten their March. The King of *Sweden* came at three in the Morning to the Banks of the River with his Regiment of Guards, and four other, and ſoon after Part of the Cavalry, viz. The Life Guards, the King's Regiment of Dragoons, and thoſe of *Smoland* and *Oſtrogothland* came up; and then began to cannonade the *Ruſſian* Camp with ſo much Succeſs, that notwithſtanding the great Fire they made on their Part, ſuch of their Battalions as were moſt expoſed, were obliged to quit their Poſt; whereupon the King, not having Patience to ſtay any longer for the Pontons which were retarded in their March by the bad Weather, encouraged his Troops to follow him, and flung himſelf into the River, which he paſſed, the Water being up to his Arm-Pits. He was followed with all imaginable Courage and Zeal by the Soldiers, who carried their Arms over their Heads to keep them from being wet; but the Ground on the other Side being Marſhy, it was impoſſible for them to keep their Ranks. In the mean Time the *Muſcovites* turned all their Cannon againſt them, but in Spite of their Fire and the Difficulty of the Ground, the *Swedes* got over the Moraſs, and poſted themſelves in the Interval between the two Wings of the *Muſcovite* Army, whereby they could not aſſiſt each other. This obliged General *Goltz* to withdraw his Infantry from

1708

The Action of *Holowzin*.

1708 their Camp, and poſt it at the Entrance into the Wood, but the King of *Sweden* followed him without any Loſs of Time with his Regiment of Guards, ordering the Reſt of the Troops to join him as they ſhould paſs the Moraſs, and attacked the Enemy between four and five in the Morning, only with his Guards. The Fire was ſo terrible, that ſome Officers who had been in ſeveral Battles declared that they had never ſeen the like.

The King of *Sweden* was on Horſe-back in the Beginning of this Action, but Captain *Gyllenſtiern*, a young *Swede*, whom he had a great Eſteem for, being wounded and not able to march, the King gave him his own Horſe, and fought during the Reſt of the Action on Foot at the Head of his Guards, expoſing his Perſon to the greateſt Danger. The Engagement laſted four Hours with great Slaughter, and great Bravery ſhewn on both Sides: But the *Muſcovites* were at laſt obliged to retire, and leave the King of *Sweden* Maſter of the Field of Battle, and of ſeveral Pieces of Cannon that were too heavy to be carried readily through the Moraſs. This is ſaid to be the moſt glorious Battle the King of *Sweden* had ever fought, and that where he ſhewed the greateſt Skill and was expoſed to the greateſt Dangers. He forced the *Muſcovites* to repaſs the *Boryſthenes*, which divided *Poland* from their own Country, and ſtaid himſelf ſometime about *Mohilow*, the laſt Town in *Poland*, as well to refreſh his Army after a long and fatiguing March, followed by ſo ſharp an Engagement, as to conſult what Meaſures were to be taken in an Enemy's Country

Country, unknown to him, into which he was juſt upon entering, with a Deſign to purſue the *Muſcovites* even to their Capital. 1708

The Czar, as hath been taken Notice of before, arrived in his Army two Days after this Action, and quitted it no more, as will be ſeen by what follows, till he had entirely defeated the King of *Sweden*, who, now finding his Army much weakened, ſent Orders to General *Leuwenhaupt* in *Courland* to come and join him with all the Troops he could get together, and all the Ammunition he could find. This General accordingly aſſembling all his Troops and drawing the Garriſons out of all the Towns, made up, at his Departure out of *Courland*, a Body of twenty thouſand Men, conſiſting of three Regiments of Horſe, ſix of Dragoons and eleven of Infantry; which were followed by ſeven thouſand Waggons laden with Ammunition and Proviſions for the *Swediſh* Army for three Months. The General made great Expedition, and arrived as ſoon as poſſible, but was much haraſſed in his March by General *Baur*, who was in *Livonia* with five or ſix thouſand Men, and took ſome of his Waggons and many Priſoners from him, beſides Deſerters.

Leuwenhaupt leaves *Courland.*

The King of *Sweden*, impatient that theſe Succours did not come up ſo ſoon as he would have had them, and every thing being ſo much conſumed in the Palatinate of *Mciſlaw*, that a Buſhel of Wheat was ſold for ten Rix-Dollars, reſolved to paſs the *Boryſthenes*, and it may be ſaid, to run Headlong upon his own Ruin. It was here the Czar waited for him, and

The King of *Sweden* paſſes the *Nieper.*

1708 and was not ill pleaſed to ſee his Enemy on that Side the River, in a Country where he was neither to hope for Succours or a ſafe Retreat. He began now to make War in a different Manner from what he had done before, he judged it not adviſeable in his own Country to come to a general Engagement with him, in which if he had been unſucceſsful he muſt have given his Enemy an Entrance into the very Boſom of his Dominions: He reſolved therefore to make War like the *Coſſacks*, that is, by dividing his Troops into many Bodies, attacking him every where, and every where retreating and waſting the Country where the Enemy deſigned to purſue him, that he might deprive him of all Means of ſubſiſting. It was thus the *Ruſſians* continually haraſſed the *Swediſh* Army between the *Boryſthenes*, the *Soſſa* and the *Czarnanapata*; oftentimes coming to Blows with him, and oftentimes with Advantage. At the Paſſage of this laſt River, there was a Rencontre, ſharp and bloody, between the Troops commanded by Prince *Galliczin*, and ſix of the fineſt and beſt Regiments of the *Swediſh* Army, under the Command of Major General *Roozen*.

The Rencontre of *Czarnanapata*.

The *King* of *Sweden* had detached him with theſe Troops, to be poſted on the Banks of that River, at a Place covered with a large Moraſs, where the King deſigned to attempt the Paſſage. The Czar being informed of this in Time, order'd Prince *Galliczin* to march with eight Battalions and three Squadrons of Prince *Menzikoff*'s Horſe-Guards, but the Ways were ſo bad, that the Latter

latter were forced to follow the Infantry on foot, and although the Moraſs was covered with Faſcines, yet the Soldiers were oftentimes so plunged that it was not with Eaſe that they could draw themſelves out again. Prince *Galliczin* ſurmounting this Difficulty, arrived at the Banks of the River, behind which the Enemy had poſted themſelves to Advantage. He paſſed the River, being favoured by a thick Fog, that prevented their being diſcovered by the Enemy till they were juſt upon them. They kept firm, and the Skirmiſh was ſharp on both Sides, till the Fog being diſſipated ſhew'd the *Swedes* the Loſs they had ſuſtained, and that they were environed on all Sides, which obliged them to retreat fighting; the *Ruſſians* following, took from them ſix Colours and two Standards. The Czar was ſo well ſatisfy'd with what Prince *Galliczin* had done, that he gave him at that Time the Order of St. *Andrew*. The *Ruſſians* had about ſix hundred Men killed and a thouſand wounded, but the Enemy loſt a far greater Number. This Action was the more advantageous to the Czar, as the Enemy had ſome of their beſt Regiments defeated, and as, in the Situation they were, the leaſt Loſs could not but be very conſiderable to them. When the other *Swediſh* Troops ſaw theſe Regiments, which were looked upon as the beſt in their Army, return in ſuch Diſorder, they began to think, they were not invincible, as they had before imagined; and that they themſelves had learnt the *Ruſſians* the Art of War to their own Coſt. 1708

1708 A few Days after, the *Coſſacks* and *Ruſſian Calmucks* ſupported by ſeven thouſand Dragoons, fell upon the Baggage of the left Wing of the *Swedes*, over which they obtained ſome ſlight Advantage: Two *Aides de Camp* were killed, fighting near the King's Perſon, and he himſelf had a Horſe ſhot under him; and while one of his Equeries was preſenting him with another, both the Equery and the Horſe were ſhot on the Spot. Many of his Officers who came to his Relief were killed or taken Priſoners, and only five left near him, when, fighting on Foot and half ſpent with Fatigue and the Slaughter he had made with his own Hands, he was diſengaged from the Numbers that fell upon him, by Colonel *Dardoff*, who broke through the *Calmucks* to reſcue him. Maugre all theſe Obſtacles, *Charles* XII. advanced almoſt as far as *Smolenſko*, lying in the great Road to the Capital of *Muſcovy*, where he hoped to meet with as many Adherents and as much Proviſion as in *Poland*; but being deceived in theſe, he found his Deſign, at preſent, impracticable of marching directly to *Moſcow*, as he intended, and thought at firſt no Difficulty to perform, as may be ſuppoſed by the Anſwer he ſent to the Czar, who, to prevent his Country's being made the Seat of War, that Country for the Improvement and Glory of which he had done ſuch Wonders, had before this, ſent Propoſals of Peace to *Charles*, by a *Poliſh* Gentleman, and received this haughty Anſwer; *That he would treat with his Brother* Peter *at Moſcow.*

Finding

Finding, I ſay, more Difficulty in this Un- 1708
ertaking than he imagined, he turned, on a
dden, towards the *Ukrain*, where he thought
e ſhould be able to ſupport his Troops by
e Aſſiſtance of *Mazeppa*, Hettman of the
ſſacks, who had entered into a private Trea-
with him, and deſigned to revolt from the
zar, to revenge himſelf on him for an Af-
ont he put upon him at his Table, for having
ppoſed a Propoſal made by his Czariſh Ma-
ty to bring the *Coſſacks* under more Sub-
ction; but *Mazeppa* telling him, a Project
that Kind could not poſſibly be executed,
threw himſelf into ſuch a Paſſion, that he
lled him Traitor, and threaten'd to have
m impaled alive: *Mazeppa* reſented this
ſtrongly, that he engaged himſelf with the
ing of *Sweden*, and was to have brought
er thirty thouſand Men to him. *Biſtniſki*,
e Hettman's Favourite, was at this Time
th the King of *Sweden*, and had aſſured him
at the People of the *Ukrain* were ſo much
ſcontented with the Czar, that they would
dily afford any Aſſiſtance to oppoſe him,
d would look upon him as their Deli-
rer if he would help them to ſhake off his
oke.

The King of *Sweden* marches into *Ukrania*.

In the Mean Time the Czar, who knew
thing of this intended Revolt of the Hett-
an *Mazeppa*, was informed that the King
Sweden had left a Body of his Forces un-
r the Command of General *Craſſau* with
aniſlaus in *Poland*, to reduce the whole King-
m to his Obedience; and had ordered, as
before ſaid, *Leuwenhaupt* to leave *Livonia*
d *Courland*, and join his own Army with

a

1708 a very conſiderable Number of Forces. His Czariſh Majeſty thought it abſolutely neceſſary to prevent this Conjunction, if poſſible, and believing that *Leuwenhaupt*'s Troops were not above eight or nine thouſand Men, he put himſelf at the Head of his Guards, conſiſting of ſeven thouſand Men, whom, for the greater Expedition, he cauſed to mount on Horſeback, and with ſome Regiments of Dragoons marched in Perſon to meet him. The Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff*, and the Reſt of the Generals were ordered to *Ukrania*, to obſtruct the Progreſs of the King of *Sweden*, and hinder him from penetrating any farther into that Country; but not to hazard a Battle, before the Czar himſelf ſhould come to join them with the Forces he had with him.

Leuwenhaupt had now paſſed the *Boryſthenes*, and was continuing his March about three Leagues beyond *Mohilow*, whither his Czariſh Majeſty went with Prince *Menzikoff* and General *Goltz*, and came to an Action with him, on the 7th of *October*, in which one thouſand five hundred *Muſcovites* were killed and very few of the *Swedes*. The Latter would, in all Appearance, have gained a complete Victory, had it not been for the Preſence of the Czar, who, when he ſaw his Troops begin to fall back, ran to the *Coſſacks* and *Calmucks*, poſted in the Rear of the Army, and ordered them to fire on all thoſe who ſhould offer to run away, and not to ſpare even his own Perſon, if he ſhould be ſo cowardly. In this Manner above fifty *Muſcovites* were killed, and by this Means he ſtop'd his Army, which was already in great

reat Confuſion. General *Leuwenhaupt*, ſee- 1708
ng the *Muſcovites*, who were repulſed and
roken, begin to rally, thought fit to continue
is March to join the King according to his
Orders: But this was of too much Conſequence
the Czar, to be ſuffered, if it were poſſible
prevent it.

The next Day his Czariſh Majeſty had
gain Sight of the Enemy on the Banks of the
ttle River *Pronia*; and the Enemy made
if they would oppoſe his Paſſage, but no
ooner were ſeven Field-Pieces brought up to
nnonade them, than they ſtruck off towards
e Village of *Lezno*.

Towards the Evening the Czar gave Or-
rs to his Army to hold themſelves ready
march the next Day to attack the Enemy.
bout four in the Morning the Army began
march, and about nine, at ſome Diſtance
om *Lezno*, met the Enemy, who had ſent
me Parties before for Intelligence.

Leuwenhaupt was no ſooner informed of
e March and Approach of the *Ruſſians*, than
drew up his Army in Order of Battle, and
ade all poſſible Diſpoſitions to give them a
od Reception. To that End he cauſed
o Battalions to advance one thouſand Paces
fore his Camp, to diſpute their Paſſage
rough a ſmall Moraſs, by which they were
liged to come at him.

Upon this, his Czariſh Majeſty gave Order The Battle
his Highneſs Prince *Menzikoff*, to com- of *Lezno*.
and Colonel *Cambel*, who had the Van
ard, to cauſe his Regiments of Dragoons
diſmount and attack the Enemy's two Ba-
ions, who made ſo quick Fire upon the
Ruſſians,

1708 *Ruſſians*, that they had hardly Time to form themſelves into Order of Battle. Colonel *Cambel* obſerving how active the Enemy were, cauſed five Squadrons, who had diſmounted, to advance, to give Opportunity to the Reſt of his Troops to put themſelves into a Poſture to follow them, and theſe diſmounted Dragoons having ſtood the Enemy's Fire for ſome Time, his Czariſh Majeſty cauſed them to be ſupported by four Battalions of his Guards and two of *Ingria*, who pouring in their Shot upon the two forementioned Battalions, killed above half of them, gained the Paſſage, and ſo facilitated the *Muſcovites* drawing up in Battalia before the Enemy's Front.

General *Leuweuhaupt* perceiving his Van-Guard was beaten, reſolved to prevent the *Ruſſians*, and cauſed his Army to move up to meet them in Battalia. Then his Czariſh Majeſty, obſerving that the Enemy's Line extended wider than his, ordered his Highneſs Prince *Menzikoff* to cauſe four Regiments of Dragoons to alight, and they were immediately placed on their left Wing, with two Regiments of Horſe to cover their Flank, under the Command of General *Pflug*, and their Right was commanded by the Princes *Galliczin* and *Darmſtadt*, whoſe Flank was covered by two Regiments of Dragoons of his Highneſs Prince *Menzikoff*'s Guards; and theſe Diſpoſitions being made by about eleven a Clock, the Signal for attacking the Enemy was given by a general Diſcharge of all the Artillery: The Enemy began to advance towards them with great Fierceneſs and Reſolution

olution; and the Fight being hot and ob- 1708
inate on both Sides for above an Hour and Half, the Victory hung in Suſpence.

During the terrible Fire which was made very where his Czariſh Majeſty appeared in he Places of moſt Danger, to animate, by is Valour and Preſence, all the Officers and oldiers; and obſerving that the Left ſuf- red much, he cauſed it to be reinforced y Prince *Menzikoff*'s Regiment of Guards.

The Enemy obſerving how well the *Muſ- ovites* acquitted themſelves under the Eye f their Monarch, begun to give Ground, et drew off in Order of Battle.

Then the *Muſcovites* redoubled their Ef- orts, to improve that Advantage: The Ene- y being driven back to their Waggons and aggage, Action was for ſome time forborn n both Sides. About three a Clock the Can- on of the *Ruſſians* coming up they began to lay again.

Things ſtanding thus, his Czariſh Majeſty eing informed that General *Baur* was with- n half a League of him, with four thouſand Men, thought fit to wait a little for his Arrival.

About four a Clock general *Baur* came p with his Body, and was obliged to endure he Fire of the Enemy's Artillery before he ould join the Right, where he was to poſt imſelf. From this Junction his Czariſh Ma- eſty began to entertain Hopes that all would nd well; and order'd that neither the Right or the Left ſhould renew the Fight one with- ut the other: But the left Wing having ſtood

1708 a good while without attacking, the Impatience of all the Officers and Soldiers ſuperſeded that Order. The Right Wing renewed the Attack likewiſe with the utmoſt Vigour.

The Enemy ſeeing themſelves repulſed, cauſed two Battalions and ten Squadrons of their Reſerve to advance and charge the Right of the *Ruſſians* in Flank; but they were ſo well received, and afterwards ſo cloſely purſued, that, of the two Battalions, not above fifty Men eſcaped. Upon this Advantage, the Left and the Centre puſhed forwards amongſt the Enemy's Waggons, breaking all their left Wing. On their Right *Leuwenhaupt*, rallying his Troops, faced the *Muſcovites* who were among their Waggons and cauſed ſuch a Fire to be made on their Battalions and Squadrons, as obliged them to retire; but the Centre and left Wing advanced at the ſame Time againſt the Enemy, who were obliged to face to the Right about, to make Head againſt them. The Charge was renewed with greater Fury than before, both by the Horſe and Foot; and their Fire, which the Enemy anſwered duly, did not ceaſe till it was dark Night, when the *Muſcovites* could no longer diſtinguiſh their own Men from their Enemies.

In the Night, his Czariſh Majeſty, conſidering the Difficulty of diſlodging the Enemy from behind their Waggons, forbid the Officers on Pain of being caſhiered, and the Soldiers of being hanged, to quit their Ranks to riſle the Dead: So the Army kept all Night under Arms, watching the Enemy. In the Mean Time the Trophies of the Day were

were preſented to his Majeſty, conſiſting of forty ſeven Colours and ten Standards; and ſixteen Cannons which they had gain'd, were added to their Train of Artillery. 1708

Thus they paſſed the Night, which was very cold; and towards the Morning they ſaw the Enemy kindle Fires about their Waggons. His Czariſh Majeſty ordered that Fires ſhould be made in the Front of his right Line, and that his Men ſhould hold themſelves in a Readineſs againſt Day-break: Which being come they marched towards the Enemy's Waggons, expecting to meet no leſs Reſiſtance than before: But they found that *Leuwenhaupt* had made uſe of that Stratagem to cover his Flight, abandoning all his wounded to the Diſcretion of the *Muſcovites*, as well as the ſeven thouſand Waggon, well ſtored with Proviſions.

General *Pflug* was immediately ordered with one thouſand Grenadiers on Horeback, and two thouſand Dragoons to purſue and harraſs the flying Enemy. He had not marched above half a League, when he found the Remains of the Enemy in a Wood; and falling upon them, he made a ſlaughter among them for the Space of a League and half, to *Propouſk*; where the Reſt of the Run-a-ways, to the Number of three thouſand retired into the Church-yard.

The General advancing to force them, they made a Signal that they were deſirous to capitulate; and he ſent a Lieutenant Colonel with ſix Grenadiers to receive their Offers of Capitulation: But moſt of the *Swediſh* Soldiers being drunk with Brandy would

1708 not agree to their Officers Propoſitions, and many of them firing kill'd two of the *Ruſſian* Grenadiers. The Lieutenant Colonel, ſeeing their Hardineſs, retir'd, and General *Pflug* reſolved not to ſpare them; the *Muſcovite* Grenadiers and Dragoons enter'd the Church-Yard, and, Sword in Hand, killed all that reſiſted. During this Execution, Part of them fled towards the River *Soza*. General *Mikuſch* purſued that Party two Hours, and ſaw Count *Leuwenhaupt* ſwimming through that River among his Men; whereupon he ſwam it with his Detachment, and coming to the other Side moſt of the *Swediſh* Officers begg'd Mercy, and he gave them Quarter, but cauſed the Soldiers to be put to the Sword, and then rejoined General *Pflug* with all the Officers and Booty.

Leuwenhaupt paſſed the *Soza*, and fled with about four thouſand Men, all that were ſaved from the Wreck of the Day. General *Renchild*, met him with eight thouſand Dragoons, and had juſt joined him when General *Touwerden*, ſent by Prince *Menzikoff* to purſue him, had fallen upon his Rear Guard, who made Head againſt him, and obliged him to retire. The King of *Sweden* was then at *Starodub* on the *Dezna*. His Czariſh Majeſty, after returning Thanks to Heaven for ſo complete a Victory, gave Orders to re-eſtabliſh thoſe Regiments which had ſuffered the moſt, eſpecially thoſe of *Preobrazinſky* and *Semionowſki*, and repoſed himſelf for ſome Time at *Zizirt*, leaving to the Velt-Mareſchals *Czeremetoff*, and *Menzikoff* the Command of his Great Army.

T

The King of *Sweden* had nothing left 1708
ow but to join *Mazeppa:* I have before
cquainted the Reader with the Reaſon of
hat *Coſſack*'s being reſolved to deſert the
Czar; on the other Hand he was charmed
ith the many great Actions of *Charles* XII.
hom he looked upon as another *Alexander*;
nd though, by preſerving his Faith to the
Czar, he might have ſhared in the Glory of
onquering him, yet that Conſideration was
f little Value when weighed againſt his Re-
enge for the Affront given him by *Peter*,
nd his Ambition of becoming the real So-
ereign of his Country. To bring the whole
ation, that is the Army, into his Deſign,
began with exaggerating all that they ſuf-
red from the *Ruſſian* Miniſters, who treated
em as Slaves, he praiſed their own Actions
d Magnanimity, and endeavoured to ſhew
em the Happineſs of a free and indepen-
nt Government; and laſtly told them what
ey might expect from that glorious young
ero, who was coming to deliver them from
e inſupportable Burthen they groaned un-
r.

The particular Account of *Mazeppa*'s Revolt.

To give ſome Appearance of Juſtice to
ir Revolt, they agreed to ſend Remon-
ances to the Czar againſt his Miniſters;
d for the Execution of this dangerous Com-
ſſion, they named *Warnarowſki* the Het-
n's Nephew. The Czar by this Time,
intercepted Letters and other Ways, was
rmed of the Conduct of *Mazeppa*; he
w alſo that his Favourite *Biſtnizky* was
h the King of *Sweden*. At another Time,
n ſuch Information, the Czar would have

1708 ſeized on *Mazeppa*, in order to puniſh him for his Infidelity and Treaſon; but, in the preſent State of Affairs, he judged it more proper to diſguiſe his Reſentment, contenting himſelf to watch the *Coſſacks* by the Army of Prince *Menzikoff*, who, without ſending for the *Hettman* to him, to give him any Suſpicion, poſted himſelf advantageouſly between his Army and that of the *Swedes*: But when the Czar ſaw *Warnarowſki*, he could no longer bridle his juſt Anger, but inſtead of giving him Audience had him clapt up in Priſon, from whence he had ſoon after the good Fortune to eſcape.

Mazeppa, informed of what had happened to his Nephew, doubted no longer that all his Intrigues were diſcovered; and therefore, to ſave his Head, uſed his utmoſt Endeavours to join the *Swediſh* Army. As the Velt-Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* was in *Novogorod* with a very ſtrong Garriſon, the King of *Swedes* found it no eaſy Matter to paſs the *Dezna*, and *Mazeppa*, who thought all depended upon his delivering up to him *Batturin*, his Capital, the impatient Hettman made haſte to croſs that River, under Pretence of attacking a Body of *Swedes* that were on the oppoſite Banks; as ſoon as he was over, he diſcovered to the Soldiers his Deſign, to which the Officers as yet were only Privy; his Men on the Inſtant proteſted againſt any ſuch Project, and retired, nay ſome of them deliberated whether they ought not to arreſt their General, ſo that he had only Time with about two thouſand Men, that remained faithful to him, to throw himſelf into the

Swediſh

wediſh Camp at *Sezeptaki*. Two of his olonels had entered *Batturin*, with ſome ouſand Men to deliver up that City to the ing of *Sweden*, the Reſt of the *Coſſacks* went er to the Army of Prince *Menzikoff*, who mediately made himſelf Maſter of *Battu-*, which, in Reſentment of *Mazeppa*'s Trea- ery, was ordered to be burnt to the Ground. A Council of War being convoked, they ſſed Sentence on the Hettman, which his zariſh Majeſty ordered to be put in Ex- ution in the Preſence of Prince *Menzikoff*, eneral of the Army, and Count *Golofkin*, th Knights of the Order of St. *Andrew*. Herald tore the Patent of Knighthood of ſaid *Mazeppa*, and threw the Pieces on Ground; took from off a wooden Statue, ade for the Occaſion, the blue Ribbon and edal of the Order, and then threw down Statue. The Hangman came next, ty'd Halter about the Neck of the Statue, and agg'd it to the Place of Execution; where Sentence againſt him for Treaſon againſt Sovereign, his Country and his Nation, s read aloud; and he thereby declared to fallen from his Honours, Titles and Dig- ies, and to be condemned to be hanged. he Hangman tore in Pieces the Arms of his mily, broke his Scimitar, and hung the atue on a Gibbet, a great Multitude of ople attending. This done, the principal en of the *Coſſacks* repaired to the great urch; and after divine Service they aſ- bled in the Church-yard, and proceeded the Election of a new General, or Hettman, ich fell upon *John Skoropatſky*, who was declared

1708

Batturin burnt to the Ground.

Mazeppa hung in Effigie.

A new Hettman of the *Coſſacks* choſen.

1708 declared with the Acclamations of the Af-
ſembly; and a tripple Diſcharge of th
Artillery and Muſquets was made by th
Coſſacks, who were drawn up in Orde
The new General, accompanied by a gre
Number of Officers, went immediately an
proſtrated himſelf at the Feet of his Czari
Majeſty, who confirmed his Election.

About this Time an Affair happened i
London, which had like to have created
Miſunderſtanding between his Czariſh Ma-
jeſty and the Queen of Great Britain, on Ac-
count of his Ambaſſador's being arreſted i
the Street by one *Morton*, a Lace-Man i
Covent-Garden, and other Tradeſmen, wh
had a Jealouſy of his deſigning to leave th
Kingdom without paying the Debts he ha
contracted here. This Affair will be ſhew
in a clear Light by the following Le
ters.

The Czar's Ambaſſador arreſted in *London*.

M. de MATUEOF, *Ambaſſador of the Czar of* Muſcovy, *to Mr. Secretary* Boyle.

London the 22d of *July* 1708, *O. S.*

Sir,

HAVING obſerved, (ever ſince I had the Honour of being Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his Czariſh Majeſty, the Emperor of *Great-Ruſſia*, at the Court of the Queen of *Great-Britain*) the ſincere and particular Affection which her Majeſty had ſhew'd to my Maſter, and her earneſt Deſire of maintaining a good Correſpondence between the two Crowns of *Great-Ruſſia* and *Great-Britain*, alſo the Queen's Zeal for Juſtice, ſo well known throughout the Univerſe; and laſtly the ſingular Favour and Benevolence her Majeſty has been pleaſed to confer on me: I have all the Reaſon in the World to hope, that ſhe will vouchſafe to give me a Satisfaction proportionable to the unparallel'd Affront, which was put upon me Yeſterday in the Evening, in the Street call'd *Charles-Street*.

'The Matter of Fact ſpeaks of itſelf; and I ſhall only ſay, in ſhort, that the Bailiff of that City had the Raſhneſs to arreſt me in my Coach, and to carry me Priſoner to the

1708 ‘ the *Black-Raven*, a ſcandalous Houſe, ‘ without notifying to me the Reaſon; and ‘ to abuſe me, by thruſting himſelf into my ‘ Coach and ſeizing on my Perſon, after hav- ‘ ing taken away my Sword, Hat and Cane, ‘ as it were from a Malefactor; not only, ‘ contrary to the Law of Nations, but even ‘ the Right of all private Perſons. The ‘ Immunity of Ambaſſadors, and their ſa- ‘ cred Privileges, are ſufficiently known; ‘ and as for the Reſt, if the Pretence of Debts ‘ be alledg'd, it is impudently done; for ‘ I have appointed this very Day for the ‘ Time of Payment, and I am ſo far from ‘ going away without diſcharging them, that ‘ I have not as yet received any Letter of ‘ Credence, nor Paſs-port, nor other Things ‘ neceſſary for my Departure; ſo that this ‘ Snare has been laid for me purely with a ‘ Deſign to inſult the Honour of his Czariſh ‘ Majeſty, in the Perſon of his Repreſentative. ‘ Therefore, I ſolemnly proteſt againſt this ‘ Violence offer'd to the Law of the Nati- ‘ ons, and demand that all thoſe who are ‘ guilty of it be ſeverely puniſh'd.

‘ The Queen, who is ſo jealous of the Re- ‘ ſpect due to the Ambaſſadors of crown'd ‘ Heads, and has ſo glorioufly vindicated ‘ the Honour of the Earl of *Mancheſter*, her ‘ Ambaſſador at *Venice*, and caus'd a rigo- ‘ rous Puniſhment to be inflicted on the ‘ Officers of the Cuſtom-houſe, ſome of ‘ whom were ſet in the Pillory, and o- ‘ thers condemned to the Gallies, only for ‘ inſulting the Gentlemen of his Retinue, ‘ cannot but moſt juſtly revenge the Affront

‘ lately

lately put upon me, by a Corporal Puniſhment. 1708

'Count *Zobor*, who was deliver'd up to the Diſcretion of the King of *Sweden* for picking a Quarrel with his Envoy, likewiſe affords an Inſtance of the Satisfaction I require; as being deſirous of nothing with greater Earneſtneſs, than to avoid all the ill Conſequences of this Affair: For in Caſe the Criminals are conniv'd at, under any Colour whatſoever, I ſhall be obliged to take other Meaſures, and retire without Re-credentials; leaving the whole Matter to the Management of his Czariſh Majeſty, my Maſter, as the Protector of his injur'd Honour and of his abuſed Miniſter. Sir, I am, &c.

Sign'd, *A. de Matueof*,

London,

London, July 26, 1708, O.S.

Sir,

'FOraſmuch as I have not received any 'Teſtimony of Concern or Regret, 'neither on the Part of the Queen's Majeſty, 'nor from any of her Miniſters, ſince *Thurſ-* 'day laſt the twenty ſecond Inſtant, when 'I ſent to you, in Writing, my Complaints 'about the wicked Attempt made upon my 'Character; and in Regard, that no Reſent- 'ment has been in any wiſe ſhew'd, upon 'Occaſion of the Indignity which the Honour 'of his Czariſh Majeſty, my Maſter, has ſuf- 'fer'd after an unheard of Manner: I find 'my ſelf oblig'd more than ever to preſs for 'my Departure; and you cannot take it ill, 'that I entreat you to get a Paſs-port for me 'as ſoon as poſſible, and without Delay, to the 'End, that I may forthwith go out of this 'Kingdom. I am Sir, *&c.*

Signed, *A. de Matueof.*

A Copy

A Copy of the Anſwer to the former, from Whitehall *the 27th of* July, 1708.

Sir,

ACcordingly as I had the Honour to tell your Excellency the firſt Time I was with you, after the great Affront that was put upon you; I have uſed my utmoſt Endeavours, with all the Zeal I profeſs for your Excellency's Perſon and Character, to find out the moſt effectual Means for cauſing a due Reparation to be made. As ſoon as I arrived at *Windſor*, I informed the Queen of the Outrage committed againſt your Excellency, and her Majeſty ordered me to aſſure you, that ſhe is extreamly concerned upon Account of that enormous Procedure, and highly diſpleaſed with her Subjects, who were the Authors of it. And foraſmuch as the Queen has all the Reſpect imaginable for his Czariſh Majeſty, whoſe Friendſhip and good Correſpondence have been at all Times, and ever will be, moſt dear and precious to her, and in Regard, that ſhe has a very particular Eſteem for your Exellency's Perſon and Merit: She will omit nothing that lies in her Power, to give an ample Satisfaction for the extraordinary Affront which has been put upon your Excellency, and to ſhew her own Reſentments. On *Sunday*

laſt

1708 ‘ laſt an extraordinary Aſſembly of her Ma-
‘ jeſty's Privy-Council was call'd at *Windſor*,
‘ and ſeven of the principal Accomplices in
‘ that deſperate Attempt, were taken up and
‘ committed to Priſon; and the Council is
‘ to meet again about that Affair, as ſoon
‘ as poſſible, which will be on *Thurſday* next,
‘ to treat, in the ſame Manner the Reſt who
‘ ſhall be found Guilty of that inſolent Pre-
‘ ſumption: And further, the Queen has or-
‘ dered her Attorney General to draw up an
‘ Indictment againſt all thoſe Perſons; to
‘ the End, that they may be puniſhed after
‘ the moſt ſevere and rigorous manner that
‘ can be, according to the Laws of this
‘ Realm: And I am very ſorry that your
‘ Excellency expreſſes ſo much Earneſtneſs to
‘ depart; ſince every one would be glad that
‘ you would ſtay, to ſee with what Strictneſs
‘ Endeavours will be uſed to give you Sa-
‘ tisfaction.

‘ As for my Part, I am extreamly trou-
‘ bled that the Occaſion is ſo ſad, and the
‘ Subject ſo diſagreeable, upon which I pro-
‘ feſs my ſelf devoted to your Service: But as
‘ I always took great Delight when I was
‘ otherwiſe employ'd; ſo your Excellency will
‘ permit me, even on this unfortunate Ac-
‘ count, to declare how much I am concerned
‘ for your Intereſt, and with what Affection
‘ and Eſteem I am your, *&c.*

Signed, *H. Boyle*

To his Excellency M. de Matueof,
Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his
Czariſh Majeſty.

London

London, this 27th of *July*, 1708, *O.S.*

Sir,

PUrſuant to your Word, which I obtain'd this Day, I waited from Noon, 'till half an Hour after three a Clock, for the Reſolution in Writing, about the ſolemn Complaints I brought to you the twenty ſecond Inſtant: But foraſmuch as the Buſineſs very much reſembles ſo many former Promiſes, which prov'd ineffectual in other Affairs; I ſhall leave it to your Diſcretion and only intreat you to ſend me a Paſs-port for my ſelf and Family. Sir, I expect at leaſt this Favour from your kind Diſpoſition; who am, *&c.*

Signed, *A. de Matueof.*

To Monſieur Boyle, *Miniſter and Secretary of State to her Majeſty the Queen of* Great-Britain.

A Copy

A Copy of the Anſwer to the laſt Letter, from Whitehall, *the* 29th *of* July, 1708, *O. S.*

Sir,

'I Have ſent to your Excellency this
'Morning, the Paſs-port you deſire:
'And as for the Orders concerning your
'Moveables, having writ about them ſome
'Time ago, I have ſince got further In-
'formation in the Treachery; where they
'aſſure me, that the Orders are iſſu'd out and
'that the Officers of the Cuſtom-Houſe are to
'wait on your Excellency this Morning, to
'cauſe the Equipages to be tranſported with-
'out any Moleſtation, and I hope they have
'already done it to your Excellency's Satis-
'faction.

'I alſo give my ſelf the Honour to notify
'to your Excellency, that an Extraordinary
'Meeting of the Lords of the Queen's Privy
'Council is to be held this Day at Noon, to
'enquire farther into the Circumſtances of
'that diſmal Affair: They have made a
'ſtrict Search after thoſe who were in any
'wiſe concern'd therein, and have cauſed
'ten others to be apprehended; ſo that there
'are at preſent, ſeventeen Perſons confined
'in Priſon, for being concerned in that enor-
'mous Action againſt your Excellency. And
'further, expreſs Orders have been given
'aga

again to the Attorney-General, to proſecute them with the utmoſt Rigour, and to omit nothing that may contribute towards the making to your Excellency, the moſt ſignal Reparation that can be, according to our Laws. 1708

'I have already had the Honour to aſſure your Excellency of the Queen's Sentiments touching this Outrage: But I am to repeat it again, that her Majeſty will not forbear, by all poſſible Means to ſhew the Extraordinary Indignation ſhe had conceived againſt thoſe, who have put ſo notorious an Affront upon the Ambaſſador of her good Friend and Ally, his Czariſh Majeſty, your Maſter.

'I cannot conclude without returning Thanks to your Excellency for your laſt Letter of Yeſterday; aſſuring you that my Duty, as well as Inclination, engages me to uſe my utmoſt Efforts, in order to procure the moſt ample Satisfaction for your Excellency; and that nothing affords me greater Delight, than being perſuaded, that you'll do me the Juſtice to believe, that I am, with a great deal of Reſpect and Affection, Sir, your Excellency's, *&c.*

Signed, *H. Boyle.*

To his Excellency M. de Matueof,
Ambaſſador Extraordinary of his Czariſh Majeſty.

After theſe Letters were written, the *Muſcovite* Ambaſſador retired from Court, and went to *Holland*; after which a Letter was ſent by his Czariſh Majeſty to the Queen, in *Latin*, of which the following is a Tranſlation.

After the uſual Titles.

'WE cannot forbear notifying to your
'Majeſty, with how much Trouble
'of Mind and Horror, by the humble Re
'monſtrance of *Andrew de Matueof*, our
'Ambaſſador at your Court, charged with
'ſeveral important Commiſſions, we have re
'ceiv'd an unexpected Piece of News, viz.
'That the ſaid Ambaſſador, after having ob
'tain'd an Audience of Leave of your Ma
'jeſty at *London*, the Place of your Reſidence
'out of premeditated Malice, and of ſet
'Purpoſe (as it appears) was ſet upon, i
'the open Street, by ſeveral Bailiffs, wh
'received their Commiſſion from a certa
'Viſcount, or Sheriff, and acted like Rob
'bers, againſt the publick Laws of Nation
'with an unheard of and unparrellel'd Barb
'rity: For by diſperſing his Servants, vi
'lently breaking his Coach, taking awa
'his Sword, Cane and Hat, and tearin
'H

'his Cloaths, put upon him ſuch a notori- 1708
'ous Affront, as no civilized Perſon would
'preſume to offer to a foreign Miniſter of
'his Character, nor even to a Commoner,
'unleſs he would run the Riſque of being
'moſt ſeverely puniſhed: And what moſt
'of all enhances the Heinouſneſs of the Fact,
'while our ſaid Ambaſſador, crying out
'for Help againſt the Outrage and Robbery,
'had got together ſome Perſons, who intend-
'ed to reſcue him out of the Hands of the
'Pillagers; and when they, for that Purpoſe,
'had ſtopp'd the Coach, and being deſirous
'to know the Cauſe, brought him into the
'next Victualling-Houſe; the audacious
'Miſcreants produc'd a Warrant from the
'Magiſtrate to detain the ſaid Ambaſſador
'for the Sum of fifty Pounds Sterling, due
'from him to certain Merchants; and when
'the People, who ran together, began to
'ſeperate again upon the Diſcovery of the
'Matter, they forthwith hurry'd him into a
'Hackney-Coach taken by Force, and de-
'livered him up to be confined in a certain
'infamous Houſe, call'd the *Black Raven*.
'And although our ſaid Ambaſſador had no-
'tify'd this unheard of and flagitious Outrage
'to the Secretary of State; nevertheleſs he
'could not be found, and Secretary *Walpole*
'only came to the ſaid Houſe, not to ſet
'him at Liberty (as it moſt evidently ap-
'pears) but to be an Eye Witneſs of this
'barbarous Uſage, the like to which was
'never yet ſeen under the Sun. Neither did
'he offer any Aſſiſtance to our Ambaſſador,

1708 ‘ as a Perſon ſkill'd in the publick Law of
‘ Nations, which protects the, Character
‘ of an Ambaſſador, from all Manner of
‘ Inſults, but went away: So that our
‘ ſaid Ambaſſador being deſtitute of all Help,
‘ and forſaken, was forc'd to redeem him-
‘ ſelf from the Houſe of Bondage, and after
‘ a long Space of Time to procure his
‘ Liberty.

‘ Foraſmuch then as our Majeſty is appa-
‘ rently aſſaulted by this wicked Attempt,
‘ and Indignity put upon the Perſon of our
‘ Ambaſſador, ſuch as was never practiſed,
‘ nor even heard of in the whole World,
‘ much leſs among civilized People, not only
‘ profaning, but quite ſubverting the Law
‘ of Nations: Therefore, hoping that your
‘ Royal Majeſty will have a due Regard to
‘ the grievous Affront offer'd to us in the
‘ Perſon of our Ambaſſador, together with
‘ the Infringement of the Law of Nations oc-
‘ caſioned primarily by the Sheriff, as the
‘ Author of the whole Miſchief, in as much
‘ as the ſaid Sheriff countenanc'd ſo audacious
‘ an Attempt, and look'd upon the detain-
‘ ing of our Ambaſſador as a Trifle, and ſe-
‘ condarily by the Bailiffs, who preſumed to
‘ abuſe our ſaid Ambaſſador in the open
‘ Street, after the above-mention'd Manner;
‘ and laſtly by the Merchants, who occa-
‘ ſioned his Confinement (as is evident from
‘ their malevolent Inſtigation in order to
‘ overthrow the ancient Friendſhip, eſtabliſh'd
‘ with us and our Empire) wherefore we
‘ being perſuaded, that your Majeſty will
‘ eſteem

1708

'eſteem thoſe Perſons no otherwiſe than 'as the moſt profligate of Pillagers and Vi-'olators of the Law of Nations, proportio-'nably to their Guilt, we entreat your Ma-'jeſty to conſent, that for an Example to 'others, a diligent Search be made after the 'Reſt of the Accomplices of the Crime, 'and that a capital Puniſhment, according to 'the Rigour of the Law, be inflicted on them 'all, or at leaſt ſuch an one as is adequate to 'the Nature of the Affront which every par-'ticular Perſon put upon the Ambaſſa-'dor.

'The ſame Ambaſſador, by Virtue of 'the Inſtructions given him on this Sub-'ject, will more largely explain our Re-'queſt to your Majeſty; which has been al-'ready declared by our Miniſters to your 'Majeſty's Reſident in our Court. On 'thoſe Conſiderations we have Reaſon to 'hope from your Majeſty's Juſtice ſuch a 'Satisfaction for this intolerable Outrage; 'and the rather, in Regard that your Ma-'jeſty's Honour and the Reputation of all 'your Subjects of *Great Britain* will, by 'this Means, become famous throughout 'the whole World; and we ſhall be cer-'tainly aſſur'd of the Continuance of your 'Royal Friendſhip, and all Effects of a 'contrary Opinion will be entirely remov'd; 'and leſt, upon Failure of a Satisfaction 'worthy of and equivalent to the injur'd 'Honour, we be compell'd to obtain it by 'Way of Repriſal, which indeed would 'be very irkſome to us, upon Account of

1708 ‘ that particular Eſteem we have for your
‘ Majeſty's Friendſhip. Finally, we wiſh
‘ your Majeſty Health and a proſperous
‘ Reign.

Given at our Camp near the Village of Sowolewo *the* 17*th Day of* September, *O. S. in the Year of our Lord* 1708, *and the* 27*th of our Reign, by our affectionate Brother.*

Signed by His Czariſh Majeſty Peter; *underneath,* Count Golowin, Peter Scapfirof, *Secretary of the Privy Council.*

An Account of the farther Proceedings in this Affair, and how it was determined, will be found in the ſecond Volume of this Hiſtory. I ſhall now return to the *Ukrain*, where the King of *Sweden* was at a Diſtance from all Places, from whence he could hope for Relief, except from *Staniſlaus* in *Poland*, but that Prince found too much Employment there, and knew too well the Hazard it would be to attempt to march into the *Ukrain*, when the *Muſcovites* could ſo eaſily ſtop his Paſſage, to be able to give him any Aſſiſtance. In ſhort, all things now conſpired to ruin the King of *Sweden*'s Army. The Winter, which was a very remarkable one even in *England* for the Severity of the Cold, was ſo ſharp in thoſe Parts that above two thouſand of the *Swediſh* Soldiers periſhed merely by the Extremity of the Weather. The greateſt Part of the Troops were without Boots, Shoes or Cloaths, and very often all of them wanted Bread. 1708

The Condition of the King of *Sweden* in *Ukrania*.

Notwithſtanding this Abatement of *Charles*'s Strength, the Czar, at the Deſire of ſome of the *Swediſh* Priſoners, releaſed an Officer of a Regiment, upon his Parole to endeavour once more to prevail upon him to agree to a Cartel for exchanging Priſoners, which was what he had obſtinately refuſed, during the whole War. The Counts *Piper* and *Hermelin*, the *Swediſh* Miniſters, conſidering the declining Condition of their Maſter's Affairs, charged the *Swediſh* Officer, when he returned, to the Czar, to inſinuate, that if proper Propoſals of Peace were offered at that Time, 1709

1709 the King of *Sweden* might liſten to them, which when his Czariſh Majeſty was told, he ſent the ſame Officer back again, with a Letter from Count *Golowin*, his Miniſter for foreign Affairs, to Count *Piper*, with Propoſals for an Accommodation on very eaſy and moderate Terms, which were only that his Czariſh Majeſty ſhould keep *Peterſburgh* with *Ingria*, as Part of his Hereditary Dominions; and offered, at the ſame Time, to give an Equivalent for *Narva*: But *Charles* XII. whoſe Army was now reduced to eighteen thouſand Men, abſolutely refuſed to treat; but renewed his Intentions of penetrating as far as *Moſcow*; and went, with this View, at the latter End of *May*, and laid Siege to *Pultowa*, a Town upon the River *Vorſklat*, lying on the Eaſtern Borders of *Ukrania*. He was in great Hopes of ſupplying the Wants of his Army by the Conqueſt of this Place, where the Czar had laid up great Quantities of Proviſions; but neither the Valour of the *Swedes*, nor the Intelligence that the Traitor *Mazeppa* had in the Town, could give him Succeſs. Nor could he prevent Prince *Menzikoff* from throwing Succours into the Place, notwithſtanding all his Precaution; which made the Garriſon near ten thouſand ſtrong. With the Difficulties of the Undertaking the Courage and Reſolution of the King of *Sweden* increaſed; he preſſed the Siege warmly, and had already taken the Courtine, when he himſelf received a Wound in his Heel; and immediately after was told, that the Czar was coming up with

King of *Sweden* beſieges *Pultowa*.

The King of *Sweden* wounded in his Heel.

with an Army, at leaſt double the Number of his own, conſiſting of freſh Troops well cloathed and fed, and now thoroughly experienced in the Art of War. 1709

The Wound which the King of *Sweden* had received prevented his acting himſelf with the ſame Vigour that was uſual to him, he found himſelf incloſed between the *Boryſthenes* and the River of *Pultowa*, hemmed in by a large Army, and under a Neceſſity of making his Way through the Enemy, or periſhing by Hunger. In this Extremity he ſent for the Velt-Mareſchald *Renchild* into his Tent in the Night, and then with great Serenity and Calmneſs gave him Orders to attack the Czar the next Morning. *Renchild*, though ſomewhat ſurprized at the Reſolution the King had taken, made no Reply, he knew it was in Vain to diſpute with him, ſo went away in order to obey his Commands, and the King himſelf ſlept till Break of Day.

The Battle of *Pultowa*.

On the 27th of *June* 1709, very early in the Morning the Action between the two Armies began; about twenty five thouſand *Swedes*, came out of their Trenches, and marched directly againſt the Czar's Army, which were then beginning to form their Camp. The Generals *Renchild*, *Leuwenhaupt*, *Field*, *Schlippenbach*, *Hoorn*, *Sparre*, *Hamilton*, the Prince of *Wirtemberg*, related to the King, and others who had moſt of them been at the Battle of *Narva*, put their Subalterns and Soldiers in Mind of that Day, when eight thouſand *Swedes* had

1709 had overcome a hundred thouſand *Muſcovites* in their Intrenchments. The King, on Account of his Wound, was obliged to be carried in a Litter at the Head of his Foot. The *Swediſh* Horſe fell upon their Enemy's Squadrons with their wanted Fury; and the *Muſcovites* fell back in ſome Diſorder. The Czar himſelf, running to rally them, had his Hat ſhot through, and Prince *Menzikoff* had no leſs than three Horſes killed under him. Upon this *Charles* made no doubt but the Battle would be gained, eſpecially if General *Creuts*, whom he had detatched with five thouſand Men and impatiently expected, had fallen upon the Enemy's Flank; but *Creuts* went out of the Way and marched off. The Czar, who had thought himſelf loſt, had now Time to rally his Horſe, with which he fell upon the King's Cavalry in his Turn, and that not being ſupported by *Creuts*'s Detachment, was broken, and *Schlippenbach* taken in the Engagement. The *Ruſſians*, opening from their Lines, advanced to attack the *Swediſh* Infantry, ſeventy two Pieces of Cannon playing upon them at the ſame Time, whoſe Artillery was only four indifferent Mortar Pieces, the *Swedes* having left the Reſt in their Camp, with about three thouſand Men. The Czar likewiſe, with an extraordinary Preſence of Mind, detached Prince *Menzikoff* to poſt himſelf between *Pultowa* and the *Swedes*; by which Means he cut off all Communication between the Troops remaining in the Camp, and the Reſt of the *Swediſh* Army, and *Menzikoff* after

Rewards meeting with the three thouſand Men which were a *Corps de Reſerve*, he ſurrounded and cut them in Pieces. 1709

When the *Muſcovite* Foot were come out of their Lines, and a Diſpoſition was made for a general Engagement, the Czar was in the Center of his Army, he had yet no higher Title than Major General, and ſerved under General *Czeremetoff*; but on this Occaſion he went on a fine *Turkiſh* Horſe from Rank to Rank among his Men, as their Sovereign, to encourage, and promiſe them Rewards.

Charles XII. on his Side, by the Aſſiſtance of General *Renchild*, put his Army in the beſt Diſpoſition he could: He endeavoured to mount his Horſe, but finding himſelf unable, got into his Litter again. The Battle was renewed about nine of the Clock, and almoſt at the beginning of it, the King of *Sweden*'s Litter was ſhatter'd to Pieces with a Cannon Ball, and he himſelf overturned: When the *Swedes* ſaw their King fall, they immediately gave Way, and all were put to the Sword. A ſingle Line of ten thouſand *Muſcovites* now routed the *Swediſh* Army, ſo much were Matters alter'd; and this one Action loſt the undoubted *Charles* XII. the Fruits of nine glorious Campaigns, and the Title of *Invincible*.

He would, if he had been able, have rallied ſome of his Regiments; but the *Muſcovites* purſued them too cloſely with their Pikes, Swords, and Bayonets. The Generals *Renchild*, *Hamilton* and *Stakelberg* were taken Priſoners already, with the Prince of *Wirtemberg*.

1709 *Wirtemberg*. All was in Confuſion, the Camp was forced; Count *Piper*, and moſt of the Officers of the Chancery had quitted it, and knew not what was become of their King, but wandered about till they were all taken Priſoners.

e very ſame Day the Battle was fought his Czariſh Majeſty wrote the following Account of it himſelf to the General Velt-Mareſchal Goltz.

Monſieur, the General, Velt-Mareſchal Lieutenant.

I Acquaint you by the Preſents, with the great Victory which I have very nexpectedly obtained by the Bleſſing of God, and the unſpeakable Bravery of my Troops, with very little Loſs on my Side, n the following Manner: The Enemy ttacked early in the Morning, with all heir Forces, both Horſe and Foot, our Cavalry, which behaved themſelves ſo ell, that the Enemy's were repulſed with reat Loſs. They drew up again in Or-er of Battle before our Army; whereupon e cauſed our Infantry to march out of heir Intrenchments, and drew up our orces in Order of Battle, and poſted our Horſe on the Wings of the Foot, which eing perceived by the Enemy, they did he like, and having attacked us, they ere ſo well received by our Troops, that ey were obliged to quit the Field, and ur Troops took many Standards, Colours,

' and

1709

‘ and Cannon, and among the Priſoners ther
‘ are the General Velt-Mareſchal *Renchild*, be
‘ ſides four other Generals, *viz Schlippenba*
‘ *Stakelbergh*, *Hamilton*, and *Roſen*, the
‘ Miniſter of State, Count *Piper*, and th
‘ two Secretaries of State *Hermelin*, a
‘ *Cederhielm*, and ſome thouſands of Soldi
‘ and Officers; of which we will cauſe th
‘ Particulars to be ſent to you very ſpeedil
‘ becauſe the Shortneſs of the Time does n
‘ permit to do it at preſent. To ſay all in
‘ Word, the Enemy's whole Army has h
‘ the Fate of *Phaeton*. We do not kno
‘ yet what is become of the Perſon of t
‘ King of *Sweden*, or whether he is livi
‘ or with our Fathers deceaſed. We ha
‘ commanded our Lieutenants General *Gal*
‘ *zin* and *Baur* to purſue the flying Ene
‘ with our Cavalry. We wiſh you, with th
‘ our Victory, all Proſperity.

Pultowa, *June*, 27, 1709.

Signed, *Pe*

P. S. *The Prince of* Wirtembergh, *Relation of the King of* Sweden, *brought this moment Priſoner.*

When the Czar was told, that the King of *Sweden*'s Litter was found, all broken to Pieces in the Field of Battle, he expreſſed an extraordinary Concern for the Fate of that Prince, who he thought was ſlain, and whoſe Bravery he always admired, and ordered that his Body ſhould be ſought for among the Dead. 1709

Charles XII. though no Way able to defend himſelf, was yet unwilling to fly, till perſuaded by *Mullern*, his Chancellor, to croſs the *Boryſthenes*, and go to *Turky*, that he might eſcape falling into the Hands of his Enemy, and where he might perhaps get Aſſiſtance to renew the War.

Charles XII. ſent to treat of Peace.

But before he liſten'd to this Advice, he was willing, for the firſt Time, to try what might be effected by Negotiation; and therefore in the Interim between his own Defeat and the Surrender of the remaining Part of his Forces at *Perewoloczna*, whither Prince *Menzikoff* was poſted after them, he ſent Major-General *Meyerfeldt* to his Czariſh Majeſty, to let him know, that he would accept of the Peace which he had ſeveral Times offered him; and if that was refuſed, he deſired to go freely out of his Country, and to retire into *Poland*. The Czar, ſurprized at this Language, anſwered, that the King of *Sweden* had thought too late of coming into the propoſed Treaty of Peace, ſeveral Articles of which were now to be altered, as the Face of Affairs was greatly altered: And that, as he had penetrated into his Country, without conſidering the Conſequences, it was his Buſineſs at preſent to think which

1709 which Way he ſhould get out of it; but that, far from ſetting them at Liberty, he ſhould forthwith ſend to take the Birds that were caught in his Net.

A Trumpet was charged with this Anſwer, but Major-General *Meyerfeldt* was put under arreſt, not only for coming without a Paſsport, but as he was before taken Priſoner at the Battle of *Caliſh*, and enlarged only on Condition that the King of *Sweden* ſhould releaſe a *Ruſſian* General, which was not comply'd with.

Charles XII. finding that this pretended Moderation had no Effect on the Czar, prepared to follow the Advice of his Chancellor *Mullern*; he was obliged, on Account of his Wound, to go in a Coach that had belonged to General *Meyerfeldt* drawn by twelve Horſes, and his People that had eſcaped followed him, ſome on Foot, ſome on Horſeback, and others in little Waggons, which had been brought over the River for the Sick and wounded. Having wandered about, and faſted ſo long that they were in Danger of periſhing for Want of Water and Proviſions, they at laſt arrived on the northern Side of the Bog, about a League from *Cracow*, from whence the King ſent General *Poniatoſky* with Secretary *Clinkonſtrom*, to the Baſhaw of that Place, to make his Compliments, and deſire Leave to paſs through the *Ottoman* Territories under his Government. The Baſhaw, with great Civility, and very opportunely, made him an Offer of Refreſhments, and gave Orders that all the Boats that could be met with ſhou

be got together for the King's and his People's Paſſage. There not being a ſufficient Number of Boats to carry them all, about five hundred Men were left on that Side the River, who were ſoon after taken Priſoners by General *Walkowiſky*, before the Return of the Boats, and even in Sight of the King of *Sweden*, juſt landed on the other Side. The Czar had ſent this General in Purſuit of the *Swedes*, and, having now learnt what was become of the King, did not much doubt of his being brought Priſoner to him, with the Reſt; for he was pleaſed to ſay to the *Swediſh* Generals who were his Priſoners, that *he wanted his Brother* Charles *to keep them Company*; *but he had ſent* Walkowiſky *to fetch him*. However he got ſafe to *Bender* in the *Turkiſh* Dominions, where he was well received and hoſpitably treated. 1709

The King of *Sweden* gets to *Bender*.

As ſoon as Prince *Menzikoff* came within ſight of *Perewoloczna*, where General *Leuwenhaupt* was encamped with the *Swediſh* Troops that had eſcaped the Battle of *Pultowa*, he ſummoned him to lay down his Arms, or expect no Quarter. The General ſeeing no poſſible Means of retreating, and having the King's Orders not to drive Things to the laſt Extremity in the Condition his Affairs were at that Time, ſent Major General *Creutz*, Colonel *Duker*, Lieutenant Colonel *Krausfetter*, and Adjutant-General *Douglas*, to Prince *Menzikoff* to endeavour to obtain from him ſome advantageous Terms, and eſpecially to take Care of the Number of ſick and Wounded that were with him. Theſe

1709 Officers executed the Commiſſion they were charged with ſo well, that the *Ruſſian* General concluded with them the following *Capitulation.*

Firſt, All the *Swediſh* Troops, without Exception, who are commanded by Count *Lewenhaupt*, as well Generals and Officers as Soldiers, ſhall, with their Servants, yield themſelves Priſoners of War to his Czariſh Majeſty.

Second, All private Soldiers, Troopers, Dragoons, and Muſqueteers, ſhall lay down their Arms, and remain Priſoners of War till their Exchange or Ranſom; but they ſhall keep their Mounting, and all that they have, except their Arms and Ammunition. And all their Horſes, except thoſe belonging to the Officers, ſhall be delivered to his Czariſh Majeſty.

Third, All the General Officers, and other Officers, ſhall keep their Baggage and Equipages, and their Perſons ſhall be releaſed without Ranſom or Exchange, as ſoon as Peace ſhall be made between his Czariſh Majeſty and the King of *Sweden*. In the mean Time, they ſhall be honourably uſed, and be permitted to go, for a While, to their own Country on their Parole.

Fourth, The *Swediſh* Artillery, all the Ammunition, Colours, Standards, and Inſtruments of Muſick, ſhall be delivered to his Czariſh Majeſty; as ſhall likewiſe the military Cheſt (or Camp-Treaſure) of the King of *Sweden*, in the State it now is.

Fifth

Fifth, The *Zaporogians* and other Rebels ow among the Troops of *Sweden*, ſhall be mediately deliver'd to his Czariſh Ma- ſty. 1709

Sixth, For the Security and Confirmation this Agreement, the forementioned Articles all be ſigned by the Generals commanding e Army of his Czariſh Majeſty, and that the King of *Sweden*; and a duplicate ſhall made of this Capitulation.

Done in the Camp of Perewoloczna, 30*th of* June, *O. S.* 1709.

Signed,

Alexander *Prince of* Menzikoff.
The Count of Lewenhaupt.

ADDITION.

All the Generals and Officers ſhall not y retain their Baggage, but likewiſe their vants; and the Commiſſaries, Auditors, retaries, Chaplains, and Surgeons, ſhall ewiſe be permitted to keep their Baggage Servants as the Officers.

When his Czariſh Majeſty was informed o
the King of *Sweden*'s having paſſed th
Boryſthenes, with *Mazeppa* and a few others
he wrote another Letter to General *Goltz*
then in the *Volhinia*, where he command
ed twenty thouſand Men, which his Majeſt
had ſent to ſupport the Crown Army
threatened by King *Staniſlaus*, and Gen
ral *Craſſaw*, at the Head of twelve thou
ſand *Swedes*, who were pillaging *Pola*
a ſecond Time. Wherein he ſays,

'WE have already given you A
'vice of the happy Victory whi
'we obtained over our Enemies, on t
'27th of *June*, *O. S.* and we join here
'Relation by which you may learn in wh
'Manner our Troops have dealt with t
'Remainder of the Enemy's Army, a
'forced them to yield at Diſcretion, and
'which you will ſee what a complete a
'unheard of Victory it has pleaſed the A
'mighty to give us. As the King of *Swe*
'has eſcaped with a ſmall Number of
'People, and as I apprehend, that he
'ma

nade his Retreat towards the *Volhinia*, you re, without any Loſs of Time, to order ome regular Troops to march and meet im, and endeavour to take him Priſoner, efore he has joined the Forces he has yet n *Poland*. 1709

Sign'd,

PETER.

1709 At the ſame Time that the Czar ſent this Order to General *Goltz*, the King of *Sweden* had diſpatch'd another to General *Craſſaw*, wherein, after informing him of his Diſaſter, he commanded him to leave *Poland*, and ſave his Troops in the beſt Manner he could.

The Czar being informed by Prince *Menzikoff* of the good Succeſs he had at *Perewoloczna*, where he had all his Enemies in his Power without ſtricking a Blow, went himſelf to that Place, where he arrived at the very Inſtant that the beforementioned Capitulation was executed. The Fate of ſo many unhappy Men touched him very ſenſibly, and he more than once expreſſed his Diſapprobation of the Conduct of a Prince who could ſacrifice in ſuch a Manner to his Ambition, ſo many faithful Subjects of whom he ought to have been the Father and Protector.

The greateſt Part of the *Swediſh* Priſoners were diſperſed in the Czar's Dominions, and great Numbers ſent to *Siberia*, which Country, a wild and barren Place before, received great Improvements from their inhabiting there, and ſetting up divers Trades and Manufactures for their Support, as is mentioned in the former Part of this Work.

His Czariſh Majeſty entertained the *Swediſh* Generals with great Civility, and treating ſome of them at his own Table with that Affability that was ſo natural to him; he drank a Health *to his Maſters in the Art of War*; *Renchild* aſked who thoſe were

that his Majeſty was pleaſed to honour with ſo great a Title? 'It is you yourſelves, Gen-' tlemen, the *Swediſh* Generals, replied the Czar, 'Then, ſaid *Renchild*, is not your 'Majeſty a little ungrateful to treat your 'Maſters ſo ſeverely? Upon which his Ma-eſty ordered all their Swords to be returned o them, and to *Renchild* he gave one from is own Side, on the Account I am going to elate: His Majeſty had deſired to know hat Number of Men he thought the King of *weden* could have brought into the Field, nd upon *Renchild*'s telling him, about nine-een thouſand *Swedes*, and ten or eleven thou-and *Coſſacks*; how was it poſſible, ſaid he, hat a Prince ſo prudent as the King of *Sweden*, ould venture himſelf with ſuch a Handful of en in a ſtrange Country, and eſpecially ch a one as this? To which, *Renchild* an-wered, that he and the other Generals were ot always conſulted about the Operations the War, but thought themſelves obliged faithful Subjects to obey their King with-t any Contradiction: This Expreſſion of uty pleaſed the Czar ſo much, that taking s Sword from his own Side, he preſented it *Renchild*, deſiring him to preſerve it as a oken of the Eſteem he had for him for s Fidelity to his Prince.

His Czariſh Majeſty likewiſe ſhew'd a eat Regard for Count *Piper*, and that none the Priſoners of Diſtinction might want any ing, he divided them among his Generals; *nchild* fell to the Lot of *Czeremetoff*; Count *per* was truſted to the Care of Count *Go-*

1709 *loſſkin*; the Prince of *Wirtemberg* to Prince *Menzikoff*; General *Stakelberg* to General *Ronne*, and in like Manner all the Reſt were diſpoſed of.

His Majeſty having taken this Care of his Enemies, thought next how he ſhould reward the Valour and good Conduct of his own Officers; on which Account he made ſeveral very conſiderable Promotions: Prince *Menzikoff* was made Velt-Mareſchal General, Count *Golofſkin* Grand Chancellor, *Ronne* Chief General, Baron *Schapiroff* Vice-Chancellor; the Princes *Repnin* and *Gregory Dolgoruki* had the blew Ribbon of the Order of St. *Andrew*; all the other Officers were advanced in Proportion to their Rank and Services, and his Majeſty ordered proper Rewards to all the Soldiers. Among all theſe Promotions he did not forget himſelf; it has been already obſerved, that this Monarch was reſolved to paſs gradually through all the Poſts both in his Army and Navy, and would only be preferred as his Merit gave him Pretenſions; and alledging at this Time, as Proofs of his Valour, that he had taken a *Swediſh* General Priſoner in the Heat of the Engagement, and had a Ball ſhot through his Hat, he was made a Major General. The rebel *Coſſacks* came to him to make their Submiſſion, and he was pleaſed to grant them his Pardon, on Condition that they laid down their Arms, and that Quarter ſhould be given to no one of them found under Arms in that Campaign: At the ſame Time he promiſed a Reward of ten thouſand

Roubles

Roubles, to whoever ſhould bring in old *Mazeppa* dead or alive. 1709

It is eaſy to imagine how this important News was received at *Moſcow*. The *Czarowitz*, who was then in that City, ordered Feaſts and publick Rejoicings, in which all the foreign Miniſters and all the People had Part; and in Hopes that his Czariſh Majeſty, who was then looked upon as the Defender and Preſerver of the Liberty of the North, would ſoon viſit his Capital, thirty triumphal Arches were prepared and erected in the Streets, through which it was ſuppoſed he would paſs; but Affairs of great Moment called him elſewhere.

His Czariſh Majeſty took Care, as ſoon as poſſible, to acquaint the Emperor of *Germany*, the King of *Pruſſia*, King *Auguſtus*, and the States of *Holland*, with this great Succeſs of his Arms; and he diſpatched likewiſe a Captain of his Guards to the Duke of *Marlborough*.

The following is the Memorial that the Sieur Matueof, *his Ambaſſador at the* Hague, *preſented to the Preſident of the Aſſembly of the* States-General, *on the ſeventeenth of* Auguſt, *after this Memorable Action.*

High and moſt mighty Lords,

'AS the *Moſt High* has always ſhewn himſelf a mighty Defender of the Cauſe of Juſtice, and reveng'd himſelf upon Ambitious Aggreſſors, who ſet no Bounds to their malicious Attempts, by protecting the former, and confounding the Latter; ſo 'tis evident, That the great Alteration which has lately happened in the Affairs of the Northern War, was wrought by the ſame divine Providence; inaſmuch as the haughty Troops of *Sweden*, whoſe Career none durſt oppoſe, having ravaged *Poland*, exhauſted *Saxony*, and now threatened the utter Subverſion of the Empire of *Great Ruſſia*, have receiv-ed a total Overthrow. Having in Vain beſieged the Town of *Pultowa*, in *Ukrania*,

'*krania*, they marched on the $\frac{27\text{th of }June}{8\text{th of }July}$ 1709
'laſt, with great Diligence, againſt his
'moſt ſacred Czariſh Majeſty, and fell
'upon his Army with that Fury, as if
'they had a Mind to kill with their very
'Looks; but with a Succeſs in no wiſe
'anſwerable to their tow'ring Hopes: For
'the two Armies had not long engaged
'before the *Swedes* were defeated, put to
'Flight and puſhed to the adjacent Foreſt,
'ſuffering thus the Puniſhment due to their
'wicked Deſign, by the moſt dreadful
'Slaughter which enſued, as well from the
'Swords, as Cannon, of the Victors; nor
'durſt the Enemy attempt to rally: So
'that, even though the Almighty who (as
'a juſt Vengeance upon their repeated Cru-
'elties) deliver'd the Remains of their fu-
'gitive Troops into the Hands of his Cza-
'riſh Majeſty, at *Perewoloczna* upon the
'Banks of the *Boryſthenes* the $\frac{30}{11}$th of
'the ſame Month, had not vouchſafed that
'Addition, the Victory had, neverthe-
'leſs, been compleat and perfect. Where-
'fore, as his moſt ſacred Czariſh Majeſty
'has nothing ſo much at Heart, but he muſt
'communicate the ſame to his true and
'ſincere Friends, your High Mightineſſes,
'he immediately ſent expreſs Captain *Mi-
'chael Oſtroharden*, who was an Eye Wit-
'neſs both of the Fight, and of the Ene-
'mies Surrender, commanding me, his
'Ambaſſador, who have received a par-
'ticular Account of all that is above

'written

1709 ‘ written, to notify to your High Mighti-
‘ neſſes, in his Name, and as a Pledge
‘ of his hearty Affection, theſe his Cza-
‘ riſh Majeſty's Fatigues, and the Vic-
‘ tory obtain'd under his auſpicious
‘ Conduct.

‘ That I may not, therefore, be want-
‘ ing, in my Duty, I moſt humbly pre-
‘ ſent your High Mightineſſes with theſe
‘ Relations, by Virtue of the Orders
‘ I have receiv'd; aſſuring your High
‘ Mightineſſes of his Czariſh Majeſty's
‘ Inclination, not only to cultivate his
‘ ancient, ſtrict, and faithful Friendſhip
‘ with your High Mightineſſes, but to
‘ make your High Mightineſſes Partak-
‘ ers of the Advantages, that, by God's
‘ Bleſſing, may be expected from the en-
‘ ſuing Tranquility; his Czariſh Majeſty
‘ being very inſenſible of a Good, which
‘ cannot be communicated to his Friends;
‘ and not in the leaſt doubting, but that,
‘ as his Czariſh Majeſty congratulates your
‘ High Mightineſſes upon all your Suc-
‘ ceſſes, ſo your High Mightineſſes reci-
‘ procally and ſincerely rejoice at his Cza-
‘ riſh Majeſty's Victories.

‘ For the Reſt, as it has been my con-
‘ ſtant Study, for the Space of almoſt ten
‘ Years, to deſerve well of your High
‘ Mightineſſes, by maintaining and im-
‘ proving the Friendſhip there is between
‘ His Czariſh Majeſty, and your High
‘ Mightineſſes; So I ſhall always conti-
‘ nue

'nue to make it my Endeavour; who, 1709
'heartily wiſhing your High Mightineſſes
'all manner of Proſperities, remain

High and moſt Mighty Lords,

Your Servant at every Command.

A. de Matueof.

Hague, Aug. $\frac{17}{28}$ 1709.

I think

1709

I think I cannot more properly conclude the *First Volume* of this Work than at this Period, which placed the Czar in a quite different Light, from what he has hitherto appeared in, by this glorious Victory over ſo powerful an Enemy, who was now almoſt entirely vanquiſhed; which likewiſe ſhews the great Improvements, his indefatigable Labour and wiſe Counſels had made in his military Affairs, and which laid open the Way to his future Conqueſts: For he was already become Conqueror of one of the greateſt Heroes the World had known.

The End of the FIRST VOLUME.

INDEX,

INDEX,

TO THE

FIRST VOLUME

OF THE

LIFE of PETER the GREAT.

A.

Aberdeen, Mr. *Ferghar-son*, an ingenious Mathematician bred there, taken into the Czar's Service, *p.* 105
Achmet II. Emperor of the *Turks*, Uncle of *Muſta-pha* II. 70
Admiraltitſki Precauſe, Cap-tain *Perry* ſerved therein 147
Adrianople, an Envoy comes thither from *Poland* to propoſe a Peace 70
Agreeche, the Czar goes thither to meet M. *Iſ-brant* to receive an Ac-count of his Journey to *China* 67
Alexis Michaelowitz, *Peter*'s Father, his coming to the Throne 11
——his Death, *ibid.*
Alexis Petrowitz, ſee *Cza-rewitz.*
Alt-Ranſtadt, the Treaty there, and hard Terms of *Charles* XII. impoſed on the King of *Poland* 255, 256
Amſterdam, the Czar arrives there 92
——and makes many Viſits to Perſons in that City 93
——embarks

—embarks there for *England* 97
Amur, the River, a Fort built thereon by the Subjects of the Czar 64
Andrew, St. that Order of Knighthood, first instituted 118
—given to the Hettman *Mazeppa* 240
Ankerſtiern, the *Swediſh* Vice-Admiral, repulſed by the *Muſcovites* at *Cronſlot* 228
— makes a ſecond Attempt 241
Anne Joannowna, one of the Daughters of the Czar *John*, preſent Empreſs of *Ruſſia* 73
Anthony, St. his miraculous Voyage on a Mill-ſtone. 121
Apraxin, Lord, Captain *Perry*'s Memorial delivered to him 140
— retakes *Aſtracan* from the Rebels 250
Arch-Angel, a City of *Ruſſia*, 5
—the City of *Hambourg* carry'd on a great Trade to that Town 91
—ſeveral Ship-builders and others ſent thither by the Czar 105
Areſkine, Dr. chief Phyſician to the *Czar*, director to the new Diſpenſary ſet up at *Moſcow* 286
Argun, the Head of that River, bounds the Countries of *China* and *Ruſſia* 64
Arnfeldt, ſent to interrupt the Czar's new Works at *Petersburgh* and *Cronſlot* 226
Arteek, the Forces of *Moſcow* quartered there in their Expedition against the *Crim* 23
Aſtracan, a City and Province of *Ruſſia* 5
—Some of the *Strelitzes* baniſhed thither 11
—a Rebellion in that Province and the Governor cut to pieces 25
Auguſtus choſe King of *Poland* 8
— the City of *Dantzick* declares for him ibid.
—is aſſured of 60,000 Men, from the Czar, to ſupport his juſt Pretenſions to the Crown 8
—has an Interview with the Czar 11
—has a ſecond Interview with the Czar at *Birſen* 17
—promiſes the Czar fifty thouſand *German* Troops which he undertakes to hire for his Service 17
—is compelled by his ſecret Enemies to hold a general Diet at *Warſaw* 18
—is charged with being the Author of all the Troubles in *Lithuania* and all the Ills that have befallen the State of *Poland* ibid.
—calls a Diet of the Senate by which his Authority is much diminiſhed 18
—ſends the Counteſs *Koningſmar* his Ambaſſadreſs to *Charles* XII. and afterwards ſends Chamberlain *Wiczefeld*

but both unſucceſsfully. *ibid.*
—is deſerted by moſt of the Subjects of *Poland* 183
—the Cardinal Primate his ſecret Enemy 184
—brings a Number of *Saxon* Troops into *Poland* 187
—aſſembles his Forces at *Cracow* *ibid.*
—gives Battle to *Charles* XII. on the Plain of *Cliſſau* 188
—behaves bravely. 189
—is beaten *ibid.*
—his Followers, are much encouraged by a falſe Report of the King of *Sweden*'s Death 190
—*Charles* XII. firm in his Reſolution of depoſing him 192
—is depoſed, and rendered uncapable of wearing the Crown of *Poland* 211
—the Czar writes to the Cardinal Primate, and the Senators of *Poland*, complaining of this Injuſtice 212 to 223
—aſſembles a great Council at *Sendomir*, wherein *Staniſlaus*, newly elected King of *Poland*, is declared a Traitor and Rebel to his Country 224
—the Czar comes to ſupport his Intereſt and brings a hundred thouſand Men into the Heart of *Poland* 233
—the Czar publiſhes a Manifeſto ſetting forth his Reaſons for taking his Part 234 to 239
—the *Hettman* enters into *Black Ruſſia* with 50 or 60,000 *Coſſacks* to join his Party 240
—goes to *Grodno* 248
—inſtitutes the Order of the *White-Eagle* 249
—takes upon him, at the Czar's Requeſt, the Command of his Army and makes him and Prince *Menzikoff* Colonels *ibid.*
—the good underſtanding between him and the Czar diminiſhes *ibid.*
—orders *Patkul* to be arreſted in *Saxony* *ibid.*
—holds a grand Council of War with the *Ruſſian* Generals at *Grodno* 252
—driven to great Diſtreſs, has nothing left but *Cracow* 253
—his Misfortunes are completed by the Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt* 255 256
—endeavours to evade fighting the *Swedes* at *Caliſh* 257
—gains an unhappy Victory there *ibid.*
—meets the King of *Sweden* in Count *Piper*'s Tent 258
—is forced to write a congratulatory Letter to *Staniſlaus* on his Advancement to the Throne of *Poland* 259
—renounces the Crown of *Poland* and his Name is eraſed out of the publick Prayers. 261

—the Czar is much displeased with him, and writes to several Potentates reproaching him with what he call'd, at that Time, Cowardise and Treachery 272 to 281
Auski, the Troops of *Novogorod* quartered there 23
Azoph, situated at the Mouth of the *Don*, besieged by the Czar 69, 71
—the Czar goes against it a second Time 75
—taken 76
— the *Tartars* Design to surprize it 95, 96
—a second Design formed of surprizing that Town 292

B

Bacon, Lord, his Reason for the Putrefaction of living Bodies by Cold 3
Basilowitz, See *John*.
Baturin, the Residence of the *Hettmans*, or Chiefs of the *Cossacks* 26
—*Mazeppa* designs to deliver it up to the King of *Sweden* 310
— is burnt to the Ground 311
Baur, General, the Forces under him take *Marienbourg* 195
—takes *Catharine*, afterwards Empress of *Russia*, Prisoner, and provides for her 197, 198
— resigns her to Prince *Menzikoff* *ibid.* 199
—left with a Body of *Russian* Troops in *Courland* 245
— joins the Czar with his Forces at the Battle of *Lezno* 305
Bautske, in *Courland*, surrenders to the Czar 244
Bell, the great Bell of *Moscow* 9
Belluga, an extraordinary Kind of Fish, found in the River *Oby* 69
Bender, in *Turky*, the King of *Sweden* gets safe thither after the Battle of *Pultowa*. 337
Berezine, the River, the King of *Sweden* passes it notwithstanding General *Goltz* and the *Russians* were encamped on the Banks of it to dispute his Passage 295
Besser, M. the Elector of *Brandenbourg*'s Master of the Ceremonies, conducts the Czar into *Koningsberg* 85
Bielsk, the Capital of *Polachia*, the King of *Sweden* comes thither 251
Biorneo, burnt by the *Russians* 295
Birsen, a Town in *Lithuania*, the Czar and King *Augustus* have an Interview there 178
Bisnitski, the Hettman of the *Cossacks* Favourite, perswades the King of *Sweden*, that the People of *Ukrania* would revolt to him 301
Black-Sea and *Caspian*, Communication making between

between them and the *Don* and *Wolga* 96
—the Czar's Fleet remains Miſtreſs of the *Black-Sea* 291
Bog, the River, the King of *Sweden* croſſes it in his Way to *Bender*. 336
Bondgiac, in *Crim Tartary* 29, 30
Bonnaretz, a wonderful ſort of Fruit that grows in ſome Parts of *Ruſſia* 4
Borgo, in *Nyland*, taken by the Czar, and burnt to the Ground 291
Boryſthenes, the River, the *Muſcovites* retreat to the Banks of it 293
—the King of *Sweden* reſolves to paſs it 297
Boyars, the Name given to the *Ruſſian* Noblemen 7
Boyle, Mr. Secretary of State to Queen *Anne*, M. *de Matueof*, the Czar's Ambaſſador, writes two Letters to him concerning his Arreſt in *London* 313, 316
—his Anſwer 317, 318
—a third Letter to him from M. *Matueof* 319
—his Anſwer 320, 321
Brandenbourg, Elector of, the Czar comes into his Dominions 85
—his Plenipotentiary viſits the Czar at the *Hague* 94
—his Envoy and Reſident attend the Funeral of M. *Le Fort* 117
Brandy, in great Requeſt among the *Muſcovites* 20
Breckell, Colonel, employed in making a Sluice for the intended Communication between the *Don* and *Volga* 140
—— miſcarries in it, and makes his Eſcape out of *Ruſſia* 141
Bruce, Major General, *Robert*, commands in the Fortreſs of *Peterſburgh* 243
——puts the *Swediſh* Admiral to flight, who makes an Attempt againſt that Place *ibid.*
Bruſnitſa, a *Muſcovite* Fruit 4
Bruyn, M. *Le*, his Account of ſome particular Fruits about *Moſcow* 4, 5
Bulgar, a City of *Ruſſia* 5
Burials of the Dead among the *Ruſſians*, the Manner of them 130, 131
Burnet, Biſhop, his Character of the Czar *Peter* 99, 100
——miſtaken in his Judgment of him 104

C.

Cabacs, Houſes where ſtrong Liquors are ſold in *Moſcow*, the great Number of them 10
Caliſh, the Battle there 257
Calmucks 1
Cambel, Colonel, his Behaviour at the Battle of *Lezno*. 304
Camiſhinſka, a ſmall River, from whence the Communication

munication was to be made between the *Don* and the *Wolga* 103
Canterbury, the Archbiſhop of, the Czar pays him a Viſit at his Palace at *Lambeth* 99
Carle-Port, one of the Gates of *Riga* 84
Carlowitz, the Congreſs of, M. *Woſrifeſtyn* the Czar's Plenipotentiary there 111
——a Truce concluded there with the *Turks* 118, 119
——*William*, King of *England*, orders his Ambaſſador to take care of the Czar's Affairs there *ibid.*
Carmarthen, the Marquiſs of, the Czar much delighted with his Company 98, 99
——he recommends Captain *Perry* to the Czar 102
——the Czar beſtows a handſome Gratuity upon him for his Converſation 104
Caſan, a City and Province of *Ruſſia* 5
——formerly governed by a diſtinct Prince under the Title of King 10
Caſpian-Sea, one of the Boundaries of *Ruſſia* 2
Cataigorod, the Name of one of the Diviſions of the City of *Moſcow* 6
Catharine, Princeſs, one of the half Siſters of *Peter* I. 12
deſigned by *Couvanſki* to be married to his Son 17
Catharine, the Empreſs, her Birth and Riſe 195, to 203
Caviere, made by the People of *Aſtracan* 63
Challavolnicks, Collectors of Taxes in *Ruſſia* 135
Cham of the *Crim-Tartars*, a mere Slave to the *Ottoman Porte* 22
Charles XI. King of *Sweden*, his Buſto on one of the Gates of *Riga* 84
——by his Will put off the Majority of *Charles* XII. to the Age of eighteen 97
——his Uſage of *Patkul* 261, 262
Charles XII. King of *Sweden*, his Majority declared at fifteen, by the States of *Sweden*, contrary to his Father's Will, but agreeably to the antient Laws of that Kingdom 9
——three powerful Princes fall upon him at once 11
——lands at *Pernau* in the Gulph of *Riga* 15
——marches directly to *Narva*, then beſieged by the Czar 15
——attacks the *Ruſſians* 15
——fights the memorable Battle of *Narva*, *ibid.* 15
——receives a ſlight Wound in his Shoulder *ibid.*
——gives wonderful Proofs of his Courage and Conduct 15
——comes into *Livonia* and paſſes the *Duna* by a Stratagem, in Spite of the Saxon Army 15
——obtains a complete Victory

tory over the Duke of *Courland* 180
— takes *Mittaw* and the reſt of the Towns in *Courland* *ibid.*
—refuſes to ſee the Counteſs of *Koningſmar*, ſent to him by King *Auguſtus* 182
—treats the Embaſſy of the Republick of *Poland* with little Reſpect 183
—his implacable Temper *ibid.*
—in the great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, declares that he makes War againſt *Auguſtus* and the *Saxons*, but would protect the Republick of *Poland* 186
—comes to *Warſaw* 187
—declares he will not make Peace till the *Poles* elect a new King 188
—obtains a compete Victory over *Auguſtus*, in the Battle of *Cliſſau.* 189
—purſues him to *Cracow*, burſts open the Gates, and takes the Caſtle by Aſſault *ibid.*
—his Horſe falling under him, breaks his Thigh, and is reported to be dead *ibid.*
—recovers; calls an aſſembly at *Warſaw*, and takes a firm Reſolution of dethroning *Auguſtus* 191 192
—recommends *James Sobieſki* to be elected King of *Poland* 223
—puts himſelf in Motion to make a Winter Campaign 251
——paſſes the *Bog* *ibid.*
——goes towards *Grodno*; but does not think proper to attack it *ibid.* 252
——paſſes the *Niemen* *ibid.*
——enters *Saxony* 255
——impoſes hard Conditions of Peace on King *Auguſtus* *ibid.* 256
——meets *Auguſtus* in Count *Piper*'s Quarters and obliges him to write to *Staniſlaus* to congratulate him on his Acceſſion to the Crown of *Poland* 258
——condemns and executes *Patkul* 262
——having augmented his Army, and enriched his military Cheſt with the Spoils of *Saxony*, endeavours to bring the Czar to an Engagement 284
—— enters *Grodno* at the South-Gate, the Czar's Forces having quitted it juſt before at the North 288
——goes to intercept the *Ruſſian* Army in their march, but is balked by the Czar's taking another Rout 289
——paſſes the River *Berezine* 293
—— arrives at *Holowzin* 294
—— the Action there 295
—— is maſter of the Field, and ſaid to have ſhewn more Skill, and have been expoſed to more Danger in this Battle than in any other 296
—— paſſes the *Boryſthenes*, and goes into the Czar's

own Country 297
——advances as far as *Smolenſko*; but finding his Deſign of marching directly to *Moſcow* impracticable turns towards the *Ukrain* 300, 301
——beſieges *Pultowa* 328
——is wounded in his Heel *ibid.*
——is beaten *ibid.*
——Flies to *Bender* in *Turky* 337
Chatra, or the Tent of Juſtice in the Camp of the *Coſſacks* 24
Cherremittau, a *Ruſſian* General 29, 31
China. M. *Iſbrant*, a *Daniſh* Gentleman, ſent thither by the Czar's *John* and *Peter* to ſettle Articles of Commerce 65
Chineſe Tartary, one of the Boundaries of *Ruſſia* 1
——*Wall*, a Deſcription of it 66
Clinkonſtrom, Secretary to the King of *Sweden*, ſent to a *Turkiſh* Baſhaw to deſire to paſs through the Dominions under his Command 336
Cliſſau, the Battle fought there between the Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland* 188, 189
Compachicks, the Cavalry of the *Coſſacks* 25
Condraſchka Bolawin, a Chief of the *Don-Coſſacks*, forms a Deſign of ſurprizing *Azoph* and delivering it to the *Turks* 292
—— being like to be taken, ſhoots himſelf with a Piſtol *ibid.*
Conti, Prince of, the Czar eſpouſes *Auguſtus*'s Intereſt againſt him 94
——a ſecond Time Candidate for the Crown of *Poland* 224
Copecks, a *Ruſſian* Coin, the Value of it 23
Coſmopoli, the Parents of *Menzikoff*, Vaſſals of that Monaſtery 59
Coſſacks, 23
——chuſe a new Hetman 25
—— *Donſki*, ſome of them in a Plot againſt the Czar 82
Coſteniſta, a Fruit growing near *Moſcow* 4
Courland, Duke of, commands the *Saxon* Army, the King of *Poland* being ill 179
Couvanſki, Preſident of the *Strelitzes*, engaged in a Rebellion againſt *Peter* I. 15
——his Cruelty and Ambition *ibid.*
——his Puniſhment 18
Cracow, King *Auguſtus* aſſembles his Forces there 187
——the Citizens there ſhut their Gates againſt *Charles* XII. 189
——lay'd under Contribution for their Raſhneſs *ibid.*
Craſſau, Major-General, Troops under him 284
—— left with a Body of Troops in *Poland* with King *Staniſlaus* 301
Creuts, General, goes out of the Way, and diſappoints the King of *Sweden* at a critical Juncture 330

Crim-Tartars, the Diſgraceful Conditions they formerly impoſed on the Czars of *Muſcovy* 22
Crim, an Expedition of the *Ruſſians* thither 21
— a Deſcription of the Country 22
Cronſlot, built 225
Croſs, Miſs, the Actreſs, admitted into the Czar's Company 101
Cuban-Tartary 1
Cum-by, Emperor of *China*, gives Audience to the *Ruſſian* Envoy 67
Czargorod, a Part of the City of *Moſcow* 6
Czarewitz, *Alexis*, his Birth 56
— left under the Care of three Lords during his Father's Abſence 83
Czeremetoff, marches with eighteen or twenty thouſand Men into *Lithuania* 228
— attacks the *Swedes* 229
— is beaten 231
— and wounded *ibid.*
— ordered to *Ukrania* to ſtop the Progreſs of the King of *Sweden* 302

D.

Dankleman, *M.* ſent to compliment the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors from the Elector of *Brandenbourg* 85
Dantzick, that City deſcribed 89, 90
— King *Auguſtus* comes thither in his Way to join the Czar 248
Dardoff, Colonel, by his Bravery, reſcues the King of *Sweden*, his Maſter, from a Number of the Enemy fallen upon him 300
Denhoff, Count, Sword-Bearer of the Crown of *Poland*, ſpeaks firſt in the Aſſembly of *Leopold* 269
Denmark, King of, declares War with the King of *Sweden* 119
— is reduced to ſue for Peace 152
Deptford, a Houſe provided for the Czar there 101
Dezna, the Hettman *Mazeppa* croſſes that River 310
Diacks, *Ruſſian* Secretaries 133
Dietrickſtein, Count *de*, grand Equerry to the Emperor of *Germany*, preſent at the Interview between his Maſter and the Czar 105
Diet, General, held at *Warſaw* 181
— at *Lublin* 282, 283
Dimitrouki, a Colonel of the *Coſſacks*, offers to kill the Hettman 24
Dolga, *Kourka*, one of the *Ruſſian* Generals in the *Crim* 29
Dolgoruki, Prince, ſent with twenty thouſand Men againſt the Rebel *Coſſacks* 292
Dominidiack or *Ruſſian* Secretary of State 31
Don, the River, a Communication making between that and the *Wolga* 96, 140
Donſki-Coſſacks 71, 82
— a Sedition among them 292

Dorpt, taken by the Czar 224
Douglas, one of that Family, by his Bravery, obtained particular Privileges for the *Scots* at *Dantzick* 90
Dreſden, King of *Poland* leaves that City to meet the Czar 248
Duke, Great, the antient Title of the Sovereigns of *Ruſſia* 10
Duna, the River, the City of *Riga* built at the Mouth of it. 84
Dutch, very deſirous to give the Czar a favourable Opinion of their Country. 92

E.

Eaſter, the Celebration of that Feſtival among the *Ruſſians*. 12
Emilian, his little Skill in the Art of War 31
Engliſh Dreſſes worn in *Ruſſia* 172, 173.
——one half of the Czar's firſt Regiment of Guards dreſſed in the *Engliſh* Faſhion 204
Enſilden, Madam *de*, a *Saxon* Lady engaged to Count *Patkul* 264
Ereſtferet, in *Livonia*, the *Ruſſian* General advances ſo far 192
Eſmoyan, a *Muſcovite* Boyar, delivered as a Hoſtage of Peace to the Cham of *Tartary* 33
Evelyn, Mr. his Houſe at *Deptford* fitted up for the Czar 101
Euxine, or Black-Sea 2

F.

Favorita, one of the Emperor of *Germany*'s Houſes, the Czar entertained there 105
Feodore Abrahamowitz, the Czar *Peter* marries his Daughter 35
Ferghariſon, Mr. an ingenious Mathematician, goes from *England* to *Ruſſia*, 105
——employed in teaching the Mathematicks and Aſtronomy 139
——kept in *Ruſſia* againſt his Conſent *ibid.* 149, 150
Finland, the Czar's Fleet makes a Deſcent there 291
Fiſka, the diminutive Name for *Feodor* or *Theodore* 42
Fontenelle, M. what he ſays of the Czar *Peter*'s early Inclination to military Exerciſes 12
——his Obſervation on the Motives which induced the Czar to take more Pains in learning the Art of Ship-building, *&c.* than the Reſt of his Companions at that Work 93
Fort, M. Le, his Birth and Education 51
——goes to *Moſcow* *ibid.*
——taken Notice of by the Czar 52
—— taken into the Czar's Service 53
——becomes his chief Favourite *ibid.*

—his extraordinary Diligence in cloathing a Company of Guards to be reviewed by his Czarish Majesty *ibid.* 54
—his Advice to the Czar with Respect to his Revenues 56, 57
—the first who built a Palace of cut Stone in *Moscow* *ibid.*
—his Kindness to the *Russians*, and great Care of his Master's Interest 58, 59
—*Menzikoff* enlisted in his Company of Soldiers, and is instructed by him in the Art Military 60
—sent Chief in the grand Embassy to *Holland* 83
—makes his publick Entry at the *Hague* 93, 94
—makes a Speech to the States General *ibid.*
—returns to *Moscow* 111
—his Death 115
—and pompous Funeral 116, 117, 118
France, the Court of, much offended at the Czar's espousing the Interest of *Augustus*, in Opposition to the Prince of *Conti* 89
—her Ambassador at the *Hague*, pays no Respect to the Grand Embassy 94
Franconis, *M.* a Merchant of *Amsterdam*, Master to M. *Le Fort* 51
Fravenstad, the Battle there 253
Frederick IV. Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, married to a Daughter of *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden* 97
—killed at the Battle of *Cliffau* 189

G.

Galliczin, Prince *Basil*, taken into Favour by the Princess *Sophia* 14
—his Character *ibid.*
—made Grand Chancellor 20
—appointed Generalissimo in an Expedition to the *Crim* 21, 22
—fails in it, and causes the Blame to be thrown on the Hettman of the *Cossacks*, whom he deposes 24
—returns to *Moscow*, where, by his own Liberality, and the Favour of the Princess, he appeases the murmuring of the People, and assumes as much Authority as ever 27
—goes on a second Expedition to the *Crim* 29
—treats of Peace with the *Cham*, and is deceived by him 33, 34
—pretends to have beaten the *Tartars* 35
—his Enemies bring him into Discredit with *Peter* 36
—the Princess *Sophia* restores him to Favour *ibid.*
—enters into a Conspiracy with the Princess against the Life of *Peter* 37
—is sent for by *Peter*, on the Discovery of the Plot, but

but excuſes his non-Attendance 39
—— goes afterwards to the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, to make his Submiſſion; but is ſent back with all his Followers, and confined to his Houſe 42
——condemned to Baniſhment, with his Son and all his Friends 44
——his Sentence *ibid*, 45
—— his Palace ſeized with all his Riches *ibid.*
Galliczin, Prince *Borice*, ſaves the Czar *Peter* at the Time of *Couvanſki*'s Rebellion 16
——made the Favourite of *Peter* 27
——ſent, by the Czar, from *Obrogenſko* to enquire into the Truth of the Plot concerted between the Princeſs *Sophia*, his Couſin Prince *Galliczin*, and *Thekelavitau* 38
—— the *Naraſkins* endeavour to deſtroy his Intereſt with *Peter* 48
——he retires to his Country Seat *ibid.*
——is ſent for by the Czar and greatly careſſed by him 49
——is turned out of the Office of great Chamberlain *ibid.*
—— expreſſes his Reſentment very raſhly 50
——is diſgraced *ibid.*
——reſtored to Favour 83
——one of the three left to manage the Government in the Czar's Abſence *ibid.*
—— the Troops under his Command have a bloody Rencontre with ſix *Swediſh* Regiments in their Attempt to croſs the *Czarnanapata* 298
——inveſted with the Order of St. *Andrew* 299
Gemaurthoff, the Battle there 230, 231
German Slaboda 210
German Soldiers, employed in *Muſcovy* 19
——a good Body of Troops formed out of them and ſome of the old *Strelitzes* 152
Georgia, one of the Boundaries of *Ruſſia* 1
Gluck, M. Miniſter of *Marienbourg*, takes *Catharine*, afterwards Empreſs, into his Service 196
—— his kind Treatment of her *ibid.*
—— gives his Conſent to her Marriage with a *Swediſh* Serjeant 197
Gollowin, Count, General and Governor of *Siberia*, ſent Ambaſſador extraordinary to the *States-General* 83
—— makes a Speech at his Audience in *Holland* 94
——and *Menzikoff* manage a Treaty with *Engliſh* Merchants for the Importation of Tobacco into *Ruſſia* 104
—— returns with the Czar to *Moſcow* 111
Goltz, the *Ruſſian* General, ordered to go with fifteen thouſand Men to *Volhinia* 290
—en-

—encamped on the River *Berezine* 293
— his Behaviour in the Action of *Holowzin* 295, 296
Gordon, General, carries on the Siege of *Azoph* 76
—an Army of twelve thousand Men under his Command, quartered in the Suburbs of *Moscow* to keep the City in awe during the Czar's Absence on his Travels 84
—ordered to march against a large Body of *Strelitzes* who had raised an Insurrection 109
—his Endeavours to bring them to Reason of no Effect, till he had killed two or three thousand of them *ibid.* 110
Greek Church, the Religion of the *Russians* 120
Grodno, King *Augustus* comes thither 248
— a Grand Council of War held there with the *Russian* Generals 252
— the Czar goes thither 288
— quits it at one Gate while *Charles* XII. comes in at another *ibid.*
Guillenkroon, Colonel 293
Gunterſdorf, Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland* meet at Count *Piper*'s Quarters there 258
Gunterſdorf-House, the Place where the *Russian* Ambassadors lodged at *Vienna* 106
Gustavus Adolphus formerly took *Ingria* from the *Muscovites* 119
— conquered *Livonia* at the Age of eighteen 156
Gyllenſteirn, Captain, wounded in the Action of *Holowzin*, *Charles* XII. lends him his own Horse, and fights on Foot himself 296

H.

Hague, the Grand Embassy of *Russia* make their Entry there 93
Hambourg, the Czar stays a few Days there 91
Hamilton, General, taken Prisoner after the Battle of *Pultowa* 331
Heathcote, Mr. afterwards Sir *Gilbert*, his Conversation with the Czar 104
Helvoetſluys, the Czar embarks there for *England* 98
Hermelin, Count, a *Swedish* Minister, his Desire to have his Master make Peace with the Czar 327
— taken Prisoner at *Pultowa* 334
Hertsfelt, Colonel, sent to observe the Motions of the *Russians*, before the Battle of *Gemaurthoff* 230
Hettman of the *Cossacks* 23
——deposed 24
——new one chose 25
——another chose 311
Hieronimo, the degraded Patriarch of *Constantinople*, disposes of the patriarchal See to the Czar of *Muscovy* 126
Holland, the Czar comes thither 91

——whilſt there receives the News of his Army's having beat the *Turks* and *Tartars* 95
——the Czar leaves that Country 98
——returns thither 105
Holowzin, a Town on the River *Wabitz* 294
——the Action there 295, 296
Holſtein-Gottorp, Duke of, marry'd to a Daughter of *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden* 97
Hungary, the *Turks* beaten there 96, 97

I.

Jacob, an Engineer, his Treachery to the *Ruſſians* 71
——broke alive upon the Wheel 76, 77
Jagelon, the Houſe of the Dukes of *Lithuania* 14
Jakatof, a Part of the City of *Veronis* ſo called 113
James and *John*, ſee *Sobieski*
Janizaries, among the *Turks*, what 6
Jena, an Univerſity of *Thuringen*, an account printed there of the Czarina *Catharine*'s Huſband 199
Jeremak Timofeiewitz, a Pyrate, conquers *Siberia*, and puts it under the Power of the Czars of *Muſcovy* 61, 62
——is drowned in the River *Irtis* *ibid.*
——*Jereſlaw*, a Town of *Ruſſia* 5
Jeruſalem, Monaſtery 169
——church in *Moſcow* 127
Imhoff, Baron, one of King *Auguſtus*'s Plenipotentiaries at the Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt* 255
Ingria, the Czar has hopes of recovering that Province 119
——*Cronſlot* built about a Mile from the Coaſt of that Country 225
Interregnum of *Poland* publiſhed. 285
John Baſilowitz, the Tyrant puts out the Eyes of an Architect 10
——the great Grandfather of *Peter* marry'd to a near Relation of his 11
John Alexowitz, one of Peter's Brothers, ſet aſide by his elder Brother *Theodore*, to make Way for *Peter* to the Throne 12
——is proclaimed joint with *Peter* 13
——takes the Part of his Siſter *Sophia*, and forbids the *Strelitzes* to attend on *Peter* 30
——is reconciled to his Brother *Peter* 41
——has little Concern in the Government 42
——his Death 72
Jonſa, the River, near *Moſcow* 2
Iſbrant, *M.* a *Daniſh* Gentleman, ſent by the Czar *John* and *Peter* to confirm a Peace negotiated with the Emperor *China*
——ta

——takes leave of the Czars 66
——makes his publick Entry into *Pekin* 67
——returns to *Moscow* *ibid.*
Italy, the Czar *Peter* ſends ſome young People thither to be inſtructed, and qualify'd for his Service 139
Jubilee, Grand, celebrated at *Moscow* 137
Iwan Welike, a high Tower in *Moscow* ſo called 9
Iwanogorod 225

K.

Kairka upon the *Boryſthenes* 29
Kalanſcheck, the River, the *Cham* of *Tartary* encamped near it 30
Kerchekeſa 23
Kniphoff, a Part of *Koningſberg* ſo named 85
——the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors lodged there 86
Knoring, Colonel, with his Regiment at *Mittaw* 228
Knout, a Puniſhment among the *Ruſſians*, what 42, 43
Knoutaveit-Maſter or common Hangman. 43
Konigſtin Caſtle, *Patkul* Priſoner there 262
Koningſberg deſcribed 85
——the Grand Embaſſy of *Ruſſia* make their Entry into that City *ibid.*
Koningſmar, the Counteſs of 182, 276
Kamiſton upon the *Nieper* 25
Kraſtenakouſt 23

L.

Ladoga, the Lake, one of the largeſt in *Europe* 5
——St. *Anthony*'s miraculous Paſſage over it 121
Laſta, one of the Rivers from whence the Communication was to be made between the *Don* and the *Volga* 103
Lama, the River, an amphibious Creature, called a *Behemoth* found about it 64
Lambeth, the Czar goes to viſit the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* there 99
Lavale, the *Swediſh* Engineer, endeavours, in vain, to diſſuade Admiral *Ankerſtiern* from attacking *Cronſlot* 241
Leipſick, the Princes *James* and *Conſtantine Sobieſki* ſurprized and carried Priſoners thither, by *Auguſtus* 23
Leopold, in *Poland*, an Aſſembly held there 268
——the Czar arrives there 270
Leopold, Emperor of *Germany*, Czar has an Audience of him 105
Leſcinſky, ſee *Staniſlaus*.
Lezno, the Action and Czar's Victory there, over the *Swedes* 303 to 308

Leuwenhaupt, General, at the Head of ſeven or eight thouſand Men in *Courland* 228
——the Czar endeavours to drive him away but he, penetrating his Deſigns, ſeeks a Poſt not eaſy to be forced 229
——comes to an Engagement with the *Ruſſians* 230, 231
—— puts Gariſons into *Mittaw* and *Bautſke* 232
—— in Motion to meet the King of *Sweden*, his Maſter, in *Lithuania* 288
——leaves *Courland* 297
——has an advantageous Engagement with the Czar about three Leagues from *Mohilow* 302
——engaged by him again in the Battle of *Leznо*, 303
——put to flight 307, 308
—— having eſcaped at the Battle of *Pultowa*, ſurrenders to Prince *Menzikoff* at *Perewoloczna* 337
Lindtſchioldt, *Swediſh* General, killed in the Battle of *Gemaurthoff* 230
Lithuania, the Great Dutchy, the Czar ſends Troops to the Frontiers of it to keep it in the Intereſt of *Auguſtus* 89
—— ten thouſand *Strelitzes* ſent to quarter on the Confines of that Dutchy by the Czar 108
—— twenty thouſand Men ſent thither by the Czar 187
—— the Czar received into the Capital of that Dutchy 239
—— is abſolute Maſter of the Country 245
—— his Troops retreat from thence 254
Livonia, that Province in a bad Condition 78
—— *Riga* the Key to the whole Country 84
——King of *Sweden* comes thither 179
Lobnitz, one Part of the City of *Koningſberg* ſo called 85
Lofreilis, Prince, the Czar's Uncle 203
London, the Czar comes thither 98
—— the Czar's Ambaſſador arreſted there 312
Loſcher, Colonel 230
Lublin, *Auguſtus* aſſembles all the Orders of the Kingdom of *Poland* there 193
—— a Diet ſummoned to meet there 265
—— which meets accordingly 8

M.

Marienbourg, *Auguſtus* aſſembles the States of *Poland* there 19
——taken by the Czar 19
Marlborough, Duke of, the Czar diſpatches a Captain of his Guards to him with an Account of the Victory at *Pultowa* 34
Marle, the River, 23, 2

Mary, one of the Princeſſes, *Peter*'s half Siſters 12
Matueof, M. *de*, the Czar's Ambaſſador arreſted in *London* 312
—— His Letter to Secretary *Boyle* on that Occaſion 313, 314, 315
—— his ſecond Letter to the ſame 316
—— his third Letter 319
—— Ambaſſador in *Holland*, his Memorial to the *States-General* 346, 347, 348, 349
Mazeppa, choſe *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks* 25
An Account of his coming into *Ukrania* *ibid.* 26
—joins the Army of Prince *Galliczin*, and goes againſt the *Crim-Tartars* 29
—is brought into *Moſcow* with 500 Officers to favour a Plot of Princeſs *Sophia* and *Galliczin* 37
—enters into a private Treaty with the King of *Sweden* 301
—The Occaſion of his Reſentment againſt the Czar *ibid.*
—uſes his Endeavours to join the *Swediſh* Army 310
—is hanged in Effigie 311
Miſlaw, the Palatinate of, the great Scarcity of Proviſions there 297
Menſius, General, a *Scotch* Man, Governor to the Czar *Peter* 11
Menzikoff, Prince *Alexander*, his riſe and Character 59, 60
—ill treated by the Czar's firſt Wife 64
—— is refuſed to be ſhewn the Fortifications at *Riga* 84
—— Manages a Treaty with *Engliſh* Merchants for the Importation of Tobacco into *Ruſſia* 104
—— made a Colonel in the Czar's Army then commanded by the King of *Poland* 249
—— Generaliſſimo of the *Ruſſian* Army, brings 30,000 Men to join the Forces of *Auguſtus* 256
—— with other Generals at *Mohilow* 291
—— at the Battle of *Lezno* 303, 304, 305
—— throws Succours into *Pultowa*, beſieged by the King of *Sweden* 328
—— has three Horſes killed under him in the Battle of *Pultowa* 330
—— poſts after the *Swedes* to *Perewoloczna* 335
—— ſummons General *Leuwenhaupt* to lay down his Arms, or expect no Quarter 337
—— ſigns a Treaty of Capitulation with that General 339
—— made Velt Mareſchal General by the Czar 344
Meydel, Major-General, in *Carelia* 241, 243
Meyerfeldt, General, approaches *Caliſh* with ten thouſand Men 257
—— forces *Auguſtus* and the *Ruſſians* to give him Battle *ibid.*
—— is

——is taken Prisoner *ibid.*
——sent to the Czar from *Charles* XII. to let him know that he would accept of Peace 335
——is put under an Arrest 336
Michael Theodorowitz, Grandfather to *Peter* I. 11
Michael, St. the Church of, most of the Dukes and Czars of *Muscovy* buried there 72
Michaelhoff, *Peter*, the Czar enrolls himself by that Name in the Ship-Carpenters Yard at *Amsterdam* 92
Mikusch, General, pursues a Party of *Swedes* to the *Soza* 308
Minski, the Palatinate of, the Czar orders his Troops to rendezvous there 289
Mitchel, Admiral, sent to *Portsmouth* by King *William*'s Order to shew his Fleet to the Czar 102
Mittaw, the Capital of *Courland* taken by the King of *Sweden* 180
Mohilow, the Czar's Generals there 291
Morsa, a Fish so called 5
Morton, a Lace-Man in *Covent-Garden*, with other Tradesmen, arrest the Czar's Ambassador in *London* 312
Moscow, a Description of that City 5
—— the frequent Fires there 7
——the many Churches 8
——the Great Bell 9
——the first Palace of [illegible] Stone there
——M. *Isbrant* sets out [illegible] thence to *China*
——the Czar returns thith[er] from the Siege of *Ar[ov]*
——twelve thousand M[en] quartered about the Su[b]urbs of that City dur[ing] the Czar's Absence on [his] Travels
—— Czar returns thith[er]
——Libels against the C[zar] dropt about the Stre[ets] there
——the Nobility and P[er]sons of Distinction w[ere] unwilling to leave th[eir] City to go to inha[bit] *Petersburgh*
——the Czar goes thith[er] where he had not b[een] in two Years
——the royal Dispens[ary] built there *ibid.* 286, 2[87]
——public Rejoicings th[ere] for the Victory of Pu[l]*owa*
Motraye, Monsieur *de* [M.] what he says of the Bir[th] of *Menzikoff*
—— of the Institution [of] the Order of St. *Andr[ew]*
——of the *Panitza* of t[he] *Russians*
——his Account of the Bir[th] and Rise of the Empr[ess] *Catharine* 195. to 2[00]
—— contradicts what [M.] *de Voltaire* says of Gen[eral] *Renchild*'s Cruelty at [the] Battle of *Travenstadt* 2[87]
——end[s]

—endeavours to paliate the King of *Sweden*'s hard Treatment of *Patkul* 265, 266
Mullern, the King of *Sweden*'s Chancellor perſuades him to croſs the *Boryſthenes* 335
Muſcovites, their Miſtake in the Time of the Creation of the World 2
—Drunkenneſs their reigning Vice 7
—their Manner of naming their Children 56
—great Enemies to all Innovatious 80
—their Religion 120
—formerly very illiterate 121
—and conſequently Superſtitions *ibid.*
—loved to build Churches *ibid.*
—their Marriages 128, 129
—Manner of Wooing *ibid.*
—Burial of their dead 130
—have a great Veneration for Holy Water 131
—their Beards ſhaved 169
—their Dreſs reformed 171
—the Puniſhment of their Women for murdering their Huſbands 174
—their antient Dreſſes 175
—more of them Priſoners in *Sweden* than there were *Swedes* in *Muſcovy* 268
Muſcovy, a ſhort Account of the Country its Bounds 1
—its Extent 2
—its Name *ibid.*
—the Sharpneſs of its Air 3
—the Products of the Land *ibid.*
—the great Plenty of wild Game 5
—an extraordinary kind of Hares there *ibid.*
—Learning very little underſtood there formerly 50
—all Foreigners forbad to come into it *ibid.*
Muſtapha II. Emperor of the *Turks*, his Character 70

N.

Naraſkin, *Natalia Carilowna*, the Emperor *Peter*'s Mother 11
Naraſkins, their Intrigues at Court 48, 49, 50
Narva, beſieged by the Czar 151
—the King of *Sweden* marches thither 153
—the famous Battle near that Town 154, 155, 156, 157
—taken by the Czar 224
Nepten, the *Ruſſians* Camp there 228
Neva, the River, runs out of the Lake *Ladoga* 193
—divides itſelf into ſeveral Branches forming little Iſlands where *Peterſburgh* is built 206
Nicholas, St. in great Veneration with the *Ruſſians* 121
Nicholas, St. a Town in *Ruſſia* 5

Nie-Schantz in *Ingria* taken by the Czar 206
——demoliſhed for the Materials to be uſed in building *Peterſburgh* 243
Notebourg, taken by the Czar 193
Nova Zembla 2
Novogorod, one of the chief Towns of *Ruſſia* 5
——St. *Anthony* ſails thither on a Mill-Stone 121
Noy, Mr. one of the *Engliſh* Ship-Builders who went over to *Ruſſia* with the Czar, obtains Leave from the preſent Empreſs to return to his own Country. 150

O.

OBrogenſko, one of the Country Houſes of the Czar 37
——*Peter* in great Danger there 38
Oby the River runs quite through the Kingdom of *Siberia* 63
Occa, a River in *Ruſſia*, into which the River *Moſcua* falls 6
Octptima, the Sieur, goes on a ſecret Errand from King *Auguſtus* to *Charles* XII. 276
Oder, the *Saxon* Troops on the Banks of it 252
Oglivi, the *Ruſſian* General, recommends the Czar and *Menzikoff* to the King of *Poland* to fill up two vacant Poſts in the Army 249
Onega, the Lake near *Po-land* 5
Oreſcheck 19
Oſt-Friſe, the Countryman of, the Character the Czar appeared in at a Maſquerade at the Emperor of *Germany*'s Palace called the Favorita 10
Oſtrobarden, Captain Michael, ſent by the Czar to his Ambaſſador in *Holland*, with an Account of the Victory obtained at *Pultowa*. 34
Ottokeſa Federowna the Czar *Peter*'s firſt Wife 3
Oxford, the Czar viſits the Univerſity 9

P.

PAget, Lord, Ambaſſador at the *Porte* 11
Palm-Sunday, the Proceſſion on that Day in *Muſcovy* 12
Palus Meotis
——partly encompaſſes the *Crim* 2
Panitza 15
Patkul, arreſted at *Dresden* 25
—— his unfortunate Story 261 to 26
Patriarch of *Ruſſia*, a Subject formerly to the out of his Country without Leave of the Czar him 1
——his great State 12
Patriarchal Dignity, its Rise in *Ruſſia* 11
——aboliſhed 12
Pckerſky, the Monaſtery of in *Kiow* 1

reſlaw, a City of *Ruſſia* 5
riſlawſky-Lake, the Czar diverts himſelf with ſailing thereon 68
erry, Captain, his Account of the Fires ſo frequent in *Moſcow* 7, 8
—enters into the Czar's Service 102
—his Memorial 140 to 148
ter the *Great*, his Birth 11
—his early Inclination to military Exerciſes 12
—is appointed Succeſſor to the Throne by his elder Brother *Theodore* 14
— is proclaimed Czar alone *ibid.*
—jointly with his Brother *John* 15
—is married 35
— in great Danger from a Conſpiracy of his Siſter 37, 38
—being ſafe in the *Troitſky-Monaſtery*, writes to all the Boyars to attend him 39
—returns to *Moſcow* 46
—reconciled to his Brother *John* *ibid.*
— has all the Government in his own Hands 47
—gives no great Preſages at firſt of becoming what he was afterwards 48
—ſhews great Kindneſs to his Favourite Prince *Eorice Galliczin* *ibid.* 49
— takes upon him the Poſt of a Drummer 55
—gives orders for building the firſt Veſſels that were in *Ruſſia* 68
—for others to be built, and equipt at *Veronis* 69
—beſieges *Azoph* 70
—becomes ſole Monarch of *Ruſſia*, on the Death of his Brother *John* 75
—goes a ſecond Time againſt *Azoph* 76
—takes and ſinks ſeveral Veſſels *ibid.*
—takes the Town *ibid.*
—gives notice to all the Princes of Chriſtendom of the Succeſs of his Arms 77
—reſolves to build a Fleet 78
—the Method he took to defray the Expence of it 79
—obliges the young Nobility to travel *ibid.*
— ſeizes and puniſhes the Chiefs in a Conſpiracy againſt his Life 82
—begins his Travels 83
— ſettles the Government for the Time of his Abſence *ibid.*
—comes to *Riga* 84
— much incenſed at the Governor's refuſing to ſhew him the Fortifications of that Town *ibid.*
— what he ſaid to his favourites thereupon *ibid.*
— comes to *Koningſberg* 85
— has great Reſpect paid him in that City 88
— receives Advice in his Way thither that *Auguſtus*, Elector of *Saxony*, was choſen

chosen King of *Poland* *ibid.*
—— assures that Prince that he will support him in his just Pretensions to the Crown, against the Prince of *Conti* 89
——arrives at *Dantzick* *ibid.*
——comes to *Holland* 91
—— enters himself among the Ship-Carpenters, at *Amsterdam* 92
——comes into *England* 98
——goes to view the Tower of *London*, the two Houses of Parliament, &c. 101
—— is lodged at *Deptford*, where he frequently conversed with the Ship-Builders, and sometimes worked with their Tools *ibid.*
——goes to *Portsmouth* 102
——treats with Merchants in *London* concerning the Importation of *Tobacco* into *Russia* 104
——leaves *England* 105
——goes to *Vienna* *ibid.*
—— receives an Account there of a Rebellion in his own Country 110
——returns to *Moscow* 111
—— establishes his Guards 112
—— makes the *English* his chief Ship-builders 114
——settles his Navy 115
—— is hastened to *Moscow* on hearing of the Death of his great Favourite M. *Le Fort* *ibid.*
——attends his funeral Pomp 116
—— institutes the Order of St. *Andrew* 118
——makes a Truce with the *Turks* *ibid.*
——declares War with the King of *Sweden* 119
—— begins to reform the Religion and Manners of his People, and even their Dress 120
——reformes the Abuses in his Revenues 135
—— alters the Commencement of the Year 137
——sets up Schools 139
——uses very rigorous means to keep Men of Science, and Artificers in his Country *ibid.*
——sets down before *Narva* 151, 152
——has then no higher Post than that of a Lieutenant *ibid.*
——goes to *Pleskow* to forward some Recruits 153
—— in the mean time his Army of an hundred thousand Men is beat by the King of *Sweden* with eight thousand 154
——is not at all dispirited by this Misfortune *ibid.* 157
——raises fresh Recruits, and brings more foreign Officers into his Service *ibid.*
—— writes to the King of *England* 158 to 161
——his Letters to the States of *Holland* 162 to 169
——orders the *Muscovites* to shave their Beards *ibid.*
—— reforms the *Russian* Dress 171
—— shews his Regard for the Ladies 172

—alters the Manner of Wooing 173
—is moved with Pity at the ſad Spectacle of Women put to Death for the Murder of their Huſbands, and contrives how to make Men and their Wives live more happily together 174
—his Anſwer to thoſe who complained of the Alterations he made in their antient Cuſtoms 175
—retrenches the Equipages of the Boyars, &c. 177
—has an Interview with King *Auguſtus* 178
—marches at the Head of his Army, and takes *Notebourg*, the Capital of *Ingermania* 193
—makes a publick Entry into *Moſcow* 204
—builds *Peterſburgh* 207, 208, 209
—his Letter to the Cardinal Primate and Senators of *Poland* 212, to 223
—takes *Dorpt* and *Narva* 224
—builds *Cronſlot* 225
—reviews his Troops, and marches at the Head of his Army into *Lithuania* 228
—writes to the Magiſtracy of *Dantzick* and Republick of *Poland* 234 to 239
—becomes Maſter of all *Courland* 245
—meets King *Auguſtus* near *Grodno* 248
—is made a Colonel in his own Army 249
—is at the Head of twenty thouſand Men at *Smolenſko*, and obliged by the preſent Poſture of Affairs to think of the Defence of his own Dominions 254
—takes *Wybourg* 267
—comes to *Leopold* 270
—writes from his Camp at *Zolkiew*, to ſeveral Potentates complaining of King *Auguſtus* 271 to 282
—writes to the Council at the Aſſembly at *Lublin*, to exhort them to Unanimity *ibid.*
—and at the ſame Time to the Primate and chief Miniſters of the Crown of *Poland* 283
—goes to *Moſcow* 285
—receives Advice, that the King of *Sweden* had re-entered *Lithuania* 287
—goes to *Grodno* 288
—quits the Town to the King of *Sweden* *ibid.*
—orders ſeveral Bodies of Troops to rendezvous in the Palatinate of *Minſki* 289
—obliges the King of *Sweden* twice to change the Rout he intended to take *ibid.*
—paſſes the *Boryſthenes*, and conſiderably augments and relieves his Army 291
—taken Ill and goes to *Smolenſko* *ibid.*
— the State of his Fleet *ibid.*
—recovers and is obliged to go to *Moſcow* to appeaſe a new

new Sedition among the *Don Coſſacks* 292
——goes to prevent *Leuwenhaupt*'s joining the King of *Sweden* with his Forces 301 302
——comes to an Action with that General wherein he has the worſt *ibid.* 303
——engages him again and puts him to flight *ibid.* to 307
——is informed of the Revolt of *Mazeppa* 309
——conceals his Reſentment at firſt 110
—— orders *Warnarowſki*, the Hettman *Mazeppa*'s Nephew to be impriſoned *ibid.*
——puts the Sentence in Execution againſt *Mazeppa* 311
——his Ambaſſador arreſted in *London* 312
——is attacked by the King of *Sweden* at *Pultowa* 329
——has his Hat ſhot through 330
——ſhews great Preſence of Mind in the Battle *ibid.* 331
—— had at that Time the Title of Major-general *ibid.*
——beats the King of *Sweden*'s Army and forces him to fly *ibid.* 332
—— gives an Account of his Victory to the General Velt-Mareſchal *Goltz* 333 334
—— expreſſes great Concern for the Fate of the King of *Sweden*, after the Battle 335
——writes a ſecond Letter to *Goltz* to acquaint him with the Surrender of the *Swediſh* Troops at *Perewaloczna* 340, 341
——entertains the *Swediſh* Generals, his Priſoners, with great Civility 342
——preſents General *Renchild* with a Sword from his own Side, to ſhew the Eſteem he had for him on Account of his Fidelity to his Prince 343
——ſhews likewiſe a great Regard to Count *Piper*, and divides all the Priſoners among his Generals *ibid.* 344
——acquaints the Emperor of *Germany*, the King of *Pruſſia*, &c. with the Succeſs of his Arms 345
Peſchick a Town in *Ruſſia* 203
Peterſburgh built 207
—— the *Swedes* make an Attempt againſt 243
Petzora, a Province in the North of *Muſcovy* 5
Pflug, General, 294, 307
Pfingſten, one of the Plenipotentiaries at the Treaty of *Altranſtadt* 255
Piper, Count, Emiſſaries continually paſſing between the Cardinal Primate and him 186
——taken Priſoner 332
Piragi Podovi, Paſtry Ware ſold at *Moſcow* 59
Piſtazy, or Secretary of State among the *Coſſacks* 25

Pleſkow, a City of *Ruſſia* 5
—the Czar goes thither to haſten the March of forty thouſand Recruits 153
Podolia, the Palatinate of, *Mazeppa* born there 25
Poland, one of the Confines of *Ruſſia* on the Weſt 2
Polanders took the City of *Moſcow*, *Anno* 1611 6
Poles, propoſe a Peace with *Ruſſia*, and give up their Pretenſions to the *Ukrain* and *Smolenſko* 21
Polignac, the Abbe *de*, Ambaſſador of *France* in *Poland* 185
Polkowniks, Colonels ſo called among the *Caſſacks* 23
Pomeſtenoy Chetfird, the Office for regiſtering Lands beſtowed by the Czar 133
Poſnania, *Staniſlaus* Palatine of 282
Poſolſki Chetfird, or Office of foreign Affairs 132
Praag upon the *Viſtula* 248
Precauſe, or Court of Juſtice in *Ruſſia* 8
Pretheſte, the Church of, in *Moſcow* 127
Precop, 29, 30
—the *Muſcovites* ſit down before it 32
Precops, the Czars oblige themſelves to make War upon them, to prevent their making Incurſions into *Poland* 21
Procorofſky, Lord *Peter*, one of the three Perſons intruſted with the Government of *Ruſſia* during the Czar's Abſence 83
Propouſk 307
Provinces their Government in *Ruſſia* 132
Pultowa, beſieged by the King of *Sweden* 328
—the Battle fought there 329
—the Czar's Letter to General *Goltz* with an Account of his extraordinary Victory, dated from thence 334

Q.

Queſtion, a Puniſhment among the *Ruſſians* 44

R

Radjouſky, Cardinal, Primate of *Poland*, his Character 184, 185, 186
Rebinder, the *Swediſh* General at the Battle of *Narva* 154, 155
Renchild, the *Swediſh* General at the Battle of *Fravenſtad* 253
—comes with *Staniſlaus* into *Poland* at the Head of ſixteen thouſand Men 283
—receives Orders to attack the Czar at *Pultowa* 329
—is taken Priſoner 331
—greatly admired by the Czar for his Fidelity to his Prince 343
Repnin, General, allows honourable Terms of Capitulation

tulation to the Caſtle of *Mittaw* 244
——inveſted with the Order of St. *Andrew* 345
Reſan, a City of *Ruſſia*. 5
——the Metropolitan of, appointed to take upon him the Adminiſtration of Eccleſiaſtical Affairs 127
——created a Biſhop on purpoſe to take away the Mitre from another 128
Retuſari, the Czar builds *Cronſlot* there 225
—— *Arnfeldt*, the *Swediſh* General ravages that whole Iſle 226
Ridder, Colonel *de*, a *German*, commands the firſt Regiment of the Czar's Guards 204
Riga, the Czar comes to that Town 84
——beſieged by the King of *Poland* 152
Romanodoſkowſki, General, in a Conſpiracy againſt the Czar 111
Romanoff, the Name of the preſent Imperial Family of *Ruſſia* 11
Romanorrick, a *Ruſſian* General in the *Ukrain* ſent to ſecure the Hettman's Son 25
Ronne, General on the Frontiers of *Courland*. 244
Roozen, the *Swediſh* General, has a ſharp Ren contre with Prince *Galliczin*, diſputing the Paſſage of the *Czarnanapata* 298
Roſen, Colonel, ſaid, by ſome, to be the Father of the Empreſs *Catharine* 195
Roſeradny-Chetſird. 132
Roſſi, or *Ruſſi*, the ancient People of *Ruſſia* ſo called 2
Roſſia, ſignifying *Diſperſion*, in the *Sclavonian* Language, the firſt Name given to the *Ruſſians* 2
Rouble, a *Ruſſian* Coin, its Value 23
Rouplauſki 23
Rubbinghen, the *Swediſh* General, ſhews great Bravery in the Battle of *Narva* 155
Runghen, a Village, where it is ſaid the Czarina *Catharine* was born 195
Ruſſian Women, ſaid to love their Huſbands the better for beating them 130
Ruſſians think it a great Crime to eat a Pigeon, becauſe the Holy Ghoſt is painted in the Figure of a Dove 132
——formerly ignorant of the Uſe of Figures. 138

S.

Saboor, the great Church at *Moſcow* 9
Samare, the River 25
Samuelerrick, *John*, Hettman of the *Coſſacks* depoſed 25
Sardouchiks, the Infantry of the *Coſſacks* ibid.
Sarmatia Europea, and *Aſiatica*, *Muſcovy* Part of them 1
Saxony, King *Auguſtus* gets together an Army of twenty thouſand Men then 24
—King

—King of *Sweden* enters that Country and lays it under heavy Contributions 255
—he exerciſes an abſolute Power there 256
—largely enriched his Military Cheſt with the Spoils of that Country 284
Scaliger, Julius, what he ſays of the *Zoophyton*, or Animal Plant 4
Schoffiroff, made Vice-Chancellor of *Ruſſia* 344
Schien, General 29, 84, 95
Schlippenbach, General at the Battle of *Pultowa* 329
—taken Priſoner 330
Scotland, one of the Suburbs of *Dantzick* ſo named 90
Scourweein, Son of a Whore, in the Language of the *Coſſacks* 24
Sediaſſa, the Name of one of the Princeſſes the Czar *Peter*'s half Siſters. 12
Serebrenkoi, a River in *Siberia* 62
Serene 25
Sezeptaki, the *Swediſh* Camp there 311
Siberia, a Deſcription of that Province 61
—how firſt conquered *ibid.*
—the Meaning of its Name 62
—the rich Furs of that Country 64
—the Inhabitants at War with the People of *Great Tartary* 28
Skerodum, one of the Diviſions and Walls of the City of *Moſcow* 6
Skoropatſki, John, choſen Hettman of the *Coſſacks* 311
Smolenſko, one of the principal Towns of *Ruſſia* 5
Snow, on the Ground, in *Ruſſia* generally 9 Months of the Year 3
Sobieſky, John, King of *Poland* 184
—*James* his Son, Cardinal *Radjouſky* endeavoured to place him on the Throne of his Father 185
—is recommended by the King of *Sweden*, as a Candidate for the Crown of *Poland* 223
—he and his Brother Prince *Conſtantine* ſeized by *Auguſtus* near *Breſlaw* in *Sileſia* *ibid.*
— *Alexander*, Prince, refuſes to ſtand Candidate for the Crown of *Poland*, while his eldeſt Brother lived 224
Soldatee 152
Sont, the Coſſacks of 31
Sophia, Princeſs, the Czar *Peter*'s half Siſter 12
—contrives Means to get out of the Monaſtery where ſhe was placed *ibid.*
—her Art to inſinuate herſelf into the good Opinion of her Brother *Theodore* and the Grandees 13
—her Choice of a Favourite 14
—reſolves to ſet the Crown upon the Head of her Brother *John* *ibid.*
—raiſes an Inſurrection by the Aſſiſtance of *Couvanſki*,

vanſki, Preſident of the *Strelitzes* 15
——the Method ſhe took to puniſh his Inſolence and Treaſon 18
——orders publick Rejoicings on the pretended Succeſs of her Favourite Prince *Galliczin* in the *Crim* 35
——diſpleas'd at the Marriage of her Brother *Peter* *ibid.*
——enters into another Conſpiracy againſt his Life 37
——— is diſcovered in it 39
——endeavours to make her Peace with him by the Interceſſion of her Aunts 40
——and by the Interceſſion of the Patriarch, but does not ſucceed 41
——attempts to wait upon him herſelf, but is forbid *ibid.*
——is confined to the Monaſtery of *Dewitz.* 45
——an End of her Regency 46
Sparre, General, at the Battle of *Pultowa* 329
Spithead, the *Engliſh* Fleet put out to Sea there, to entertain the Czar with a mock Fight 102
Stakelberg, General, taken Priſoner in the Battle of *Pultowa* 331
Staniſlaus Leſcinſky, Palatine of *Poſnania*, elected King of *Poland* 224
——declared a Rebel by the Council of *Sendomir* *ibid.*
——his Anſwer to the King *Auguſtus*'s Letter to congratulate him on aſcending the Throne of *Poland* 260
——comes into *Poland* 283
——left in peaceable Poſſeſſion of almoſt all *Poland*, by the Czar's retreating from thence 285
Starenberg, Count, gives a magnificent Collation to the Czar at *Vienna* 105
Starodub, the King of *Sweden* there 308
Stenau, General, falls on the *Sweediſh* Horſe with great Bravery 179
Strelitza, *Slaboda*, one Part of the City of *Moſcow* 6
Strelitzes, what 6
——their Preſident 14
——their Rage and Tumult on the Execution of *Cowanſki* 18
——their Submiſſion to the Czars *John* and *Peter* 19
——ſix hundred of them in a Plot againſt the Life of *Peter* 38
——two of that Number diſcover the Reſt *ibid.*
——two of them are beheaded, and five more have their Tongues cut out, and are ſent to *Siberia* 45
——eighteen thouſand of them attend the Czar at his Entry into *Moſcow* 48
——ſome of thoſe who were ſuſpected ſent to the Frontiers of *Turky* 8
——knowing they had loſt the Czar's Favour, about ten thouſand of them joi

in a Conſpiracy againſt him 108
— two thouſand of them executed at *Moſcow* 111
—their name ordered to be aboliſhed, and changed into that of *Soldatee* 112
Stroginof, a very rich *Ruſs* Merchant in *Siberia* 61
Suilech Murza, a Hoſtage of the *Tartars*, ſent to Prince *Galliczin* 33
Sylveſter, Abbot, in a Plot againſt *Peter* with the Princeſs *Sophia* 41
—deſigned to be made Patriarch if the Plot had ſucceeded *ibid.*
Szebitz, the Czar forms a Magazine there 290

T.

Tarlo, Count, *Swediſh* General, taken Priſoner at the Battle of *Caliſh* 257
Tartary, Great, or *Chineſe*, *Cuban* and Leſs, Boundaries of *Ruſſia* 1
Tartars, *Eaſtern*, under the Protection of the Emperor of *China* 64
Tartars of the *Crim*, under the Dominion of the *Turks* 22
—the *Muſcovites* ſend an Army againſt them 23
—pretend to treat of Peace but deceive the *Ruſſian* General 33, 34
—they commit many cruel Ravages in the King of *Poland*'s Dominions 69
—the Czar declares War againſt them *ibid.*
—they form a Deſign of ſurprizing *Azoph*, but are diſappointed 95, 96
Tetrearchies, or *Chetfirds*, 132
Thekelavitau, *Theodore*, Preſident of the *Strelitzes*, made uſe of, by the Princeſs *Sophia*, as a principal Inſtrument in a Plot againſt *Peter* 37
—is ſeized 42
— has the Knout given him 43
—beheaded 45
Theodore, *Michaelowitz*, the Czar *Peter*'s elder Brother 12
——his Death 14
— a Report induſtriouſly ſpread of his being poiſoned 15
——in his Reign had encouraged Magnificence in Apparel and Equipages 55
Thieſſe, the Grand Signior's Armies encamped on the Sides of that River 97
Thorna d'Oliva 30
Tolbuck, Colonel, poſted on the Iſland of *Retuſari* 227
Travendal, the Treaty of 152
Trausfetter, Colonel, ſent to *Menzikoff*, by General *Leuwenhaupt* at *Perewoloczna*, to obtain Terms from him for the *Swedes* 337
Troitſky, or Trinity Monaſtery 16
—*Peter* ſecured there in the Time

Time of *Couvanſki*'s Rebellion *ibid.*
Peter flies for Safety thither from the Conſpiracy of *Thekelavitau* 38, 39, 40, 41, 42
Turks, the *Muſcovites* declare War againſt them 21
——ſeveral of their Ships taken and ſunk by the Czar 76
——The Czar obtains a Victory over them 95
——beaten in *Hungary* 96, 97
——the Czar makes a Truce with them 118, 119
Turnips, an extraordinary Sort found among the *Samoieds* 4, 5
Twerſky, one of the Gates of *Moſcow* ſo called 205

U.

VAlenſki, the Boyar, left with 5 or 6 thouſand Men at the River *Samare* 35
Valenſtein, Count *de*, Grand Chamberlain to the Emperor of *Germany*, preſent at the Interview between that Prince and the Czar 105
Vander-Krays, Vice-admiral of the *Ruſſian* Fleet 227
Venetians, employed to build Ships in *Ruſſia* 75
——conclude an Alliance with the Czar 78
Veronis, the City deſcribed 113
——the Czar ſettles his Navy there 115
Vielmozny, moſt puiſſant, the Language of the *Coſſacks* 24
Vienna, the Czar goes to that Court 105
——leaves it 110
Vilna, the Capital of *Lithuania* 239
Ukrania, the *Poles* give up their Pretenſions to that Country 21
Mazeppa, brought thither on a wild Horſe, and made Prince of the Country 26
——King of *Sweden* marches into that Country 301
——his ſad Condition there 327
Volcoff, the River, 181
Voltaire, Monſieur *de*, his Account of the Hettman *Mazeppa* 25
——what he ſays was the Cauſe of the Czar's ill Uſage of his firſt Wife 65
——contradicted in a Particular he relates of the King of *Sweden* at the Battle of *Narva* 15
—— his Character of the Cardinal *Radjouſky*, Primate of *Poland* 184, 18
——what he ſays on the Czar's building *Peterſburgh* 20
—— his Reflection on the Cruelty of General *Renſchild* 25
——his Account of *Patkul* and his Execution 263
Vorkſlat, *Pultowa* on the River 32
Utrecht, the Czar goes thither

W.

Wachtmeester, Admiral, commands the *Swediſh* Fleet 291
Walkowiſky, General, takes ſeveral *Swedes* Priſoners near the River *Bog* 337
Warmerlandt, *Radjowſki*, Biſhop of it 184
Warnorowſki, the Hettman *Mazeppa*'s Nephew 309
Warſaw, *Charles* XII. comes to that City 187
—calls an Aſſembly there 191
Whiſton, Burgomaſter, at *Amſterdam*, the Czar often viſits him 93
Wieſnowiſky, Prince, grand General of the Crown of *Poland*, ordered to remain at *Grodno* 252
—one of the Aſſembly of *Leopold* 269
Wilia, the River in *Courland* 240
William III. King of *England*, the Czar has an Audience of him 94
—entertains the Czar at his own Expence in *England* 98
—ſends Admiral *Mitchel*, to ſhew him the Fleet at *Spithead* 102
—gives him leave to take any of his Subjects into his Service, and preſents him with a fine Yacht 105
—Mediator at the Treaty of *Carlowitz* 119
—his Letter to the Czar, to diſſuade him from a War with *Sweden* 158, to 161
Wirtemberg, Prince, at the Battle of *Pultowa* 329
—taken Priſoner 331
Wolga, that River well ſtored with the Fiſh called *Belluga*, and *Sturgeon* 63
—and *Tanais*, a Project for uniting thoſe Rivers 81
—an Account of the Communication to be made between them 103
—Captain *Perry* employed therein 140
Wolodimer, one of the chief Towns of *Ruſſia* 5
Wologda, a Town of *Ruſſia* 5
Woſrifeſtyn, M. Privy-Counſellor and Secretary of State, ſent one of the Czar's Ambaſſadors Extraordinary to the States of *Holland* 83
—left at *Vienna* to aſſiſt as the Czar's Plenipotentiary at the Congreſs of *Carlowitz* 111
Woſtromirſky, a *Ruſſian* Lieutenant General paſſes, the *Oder* with *Shullembourg* 253
Wrangel, a *Swediſh* Major-General, killed in the Battle of *Gemaurthoff* 231
Wrenimienck, or temporary Miniſter of State in *Ruſſia* 20
Wybourg, beſieged 267
—relieved *ibid.*

X.

XI *Hoamli*, Emperor of *China*, first built the *Chineſe* Wall 66, 67

Y.

Yarus, the River 37.
York-Buildings, in *London*, a Houſe provided there for the Czar 98

Z.

Zoporogians, 339
Zelona Dolina 30
Zenta, the Loſs of the Battle there, a great Blow to the *Turks* 96
Zoophyton, or *Animal Plant* 4

MVSEVM BRITANNICVM


BRITISH
MUSEUM

X.

XI *Hoamli*, Emperor of *China*, first built the *Chineſe* Wall 66, 67

Y.

YArus, the River 37
York-Buildings, in *London*, a Houſe provided there for the Czar 98

Z.

ZOporogians, 339
Zelona Dolina 30
Zenta, the Loſs of the Battle there, a great Blow to the *Turks* 96
Zoophyton, or *Animal Plant* 4

MVSEVM BRITANNICVM


BRITISH
MUSEUM